BEGINNERS' FRENCH GRAMMAR

E. W. OLMSTED AND E. H. SIRICH

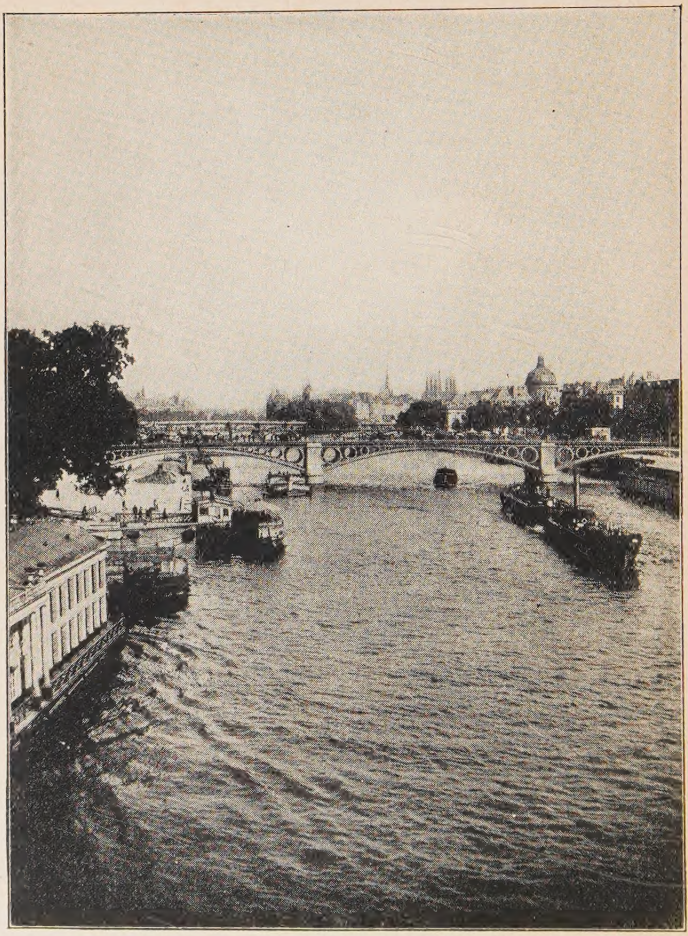
95" Belongs to Zuelma Flamenco

45 Belongs to:
Fuerna flamenco.

6 45 4

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/bwb_C0-AQJ-542



La Seine

BEGINNERS' FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

EVERETT WARD OLMSTED, PH.D., LITT.D.

AND

EDWARD HINMAN SIRICH, PH.D.

NEW YORK

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1926
BY
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

PRINTED IN THE
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

To

B.H.O. AND M.W.S.

PREFACE

The essential points in this grammar are:

1. Ample exercise material consisting of topics which treat of such occupations and amusements as are common to the youth of both France and America, and which avoid the hackneyed guide-book method.

2. A series of review exercises, found in the Appendix, serving as review material for every ten lessons.

3. Short vocabularies, containing all the words used in the exercises.

4. A simple and consecutive presentation of grammar rules, with a view to keeping the various grammatical topics in close relationship with one another.

The constant aim which the authors have had in mind is that this book should be suitable for beginners in French in either high schools or colleges.

The authors wish to express their appreciation and to convey their thanks for their aid in the preparation of this book to Dr. Francis B. Barton and Mademoiselle Marguérite Guinotte of the department of Romance Languages, of the University of Minnesota.

E. W. O.
E. H. S.

Minneapolis, Minn.
Jan. 4, 1926.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

PAGE

Alphabet vii
Phonetic Symbols viii
Syllables xv
Linking xvii
Elision xviii
Punctuation xix
Phonetic Symbols (*For Reference*) xxii
Classroom Expressions xxvii
Abbreviations 2

PART I

LESSONS

LESSON

I. Definite Article — General Rules 3
Donner (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*) 4
Pronouns of Address — Remarks on Verbs . . . 5
II. Indefinite Article 8
Finir (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*) 8
III. Negative 12
Vendre (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*) 12
IV. **Avoir** (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*) 15
Voilà and **Il y a** 16
Past Indefinite 16
Past Participle 17
V. **Être** (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*) . 20
Interrogative Forms 20
Idiomatic Present Indicative 22
VI. Adjectives 25
VII. Partitive Construction 30
Adverbs of Quantity 31
General Noun 32

LESSON		PAGE
VIII.	Partitive Construction (*Continued*)	34
	Aller (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*)	34
IX.	**Vouloir** (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*)	38
	Days of the Week	38
	Possessive Adjectives	39
X.	**Faire** (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*)	42
	Demonstrative Adjective	42
XI.	Expressions with **Avoir** and **Faire**	45
XII.	Months	49
	Y and **Là**	49
XIII.	Nouns	52
	Voir (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*)	53
XIV.	Comparison of Adjectives	56
	A with an Infinitive	57
	Pouvoir (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind.*)	58
XV.	Adverbs	61
	De with an Infinitive	62
	Savoir (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve.*)	62
XVI.	Imperfect Tense	65
XVII.	**Avoir** and **Être** as Auxiliaries	70
	Agreement of Past Participle	70
XVIII.	Conjunctive Personal Pronouns	74
XIX.	Reflexive Verbs	77
	Agreement of Past Participle (*Continued*)	77
	Un and **Autre**	78
XX.	Negatives	81
XXI.	Passive Voice	85
	Prepositions: **à, de, pour, sans, par, en, après**	86
XXII.	Conjunctive Personal Pronouns (*Continued*)	89
	Pronominal Adverbs: **en** and **y**	90
XXIII.	Future Tense	92
XXIV.	Future Tense (*Continued*)	96
XXV.	Disjunctive Personal Pronouns	99
XXVI.	Conjunctive Personal Pronouns (*Continued*)	103
	Connaître (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve., Impf., Fut.*)	104

LESSON		PAGE
XXVII.	**Dire** (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve., Impf., Fut.*)	107
	COUNTRIES AND CITIES	107
XXVIII.	**Écrire** AND **lire** (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Past., Pres. Ind., Imptve., Impf., Fut.*)	111
XXIX.	NUMERALS	114
	Venir (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Imptve., Impf., Fut.*)	114
XXX.	EXPRESSIONS OF TIME	118
	Falloir (*Pres. Ind., Impf., Fut., Past Indef.*)	119
XXXI.	DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	122
XXXII.	**Pleuvoir** (*Inf., Pres. Part., Past Part., Pres. Ind., Impf., Fut., Past Indef.*)	126
	INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS	126
XXXIII.	POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS	130
XXXIV.	PAST DEFINITE	134
XXXV.	**Ce** AND **Il** AS SUBJECT OF **Être**	136
XXXVI.	CONDITIONAL TENSE AND SENTENCES	140
XXXVII.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	144
XXXVIII.	SYNOPSIS OF REGULAR VERBS	150
	FORMATION OF TENSES	150
XXIX.	ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES IN VERBS	154
	PRES. SUBJ. OF **aller, faire, pouvoir**	154
XL.	ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES IN VERBS (*continued*)	158
XLI.	RELATIVE PRONOUNS	161
XLII.	RELATIVE PRONOUNS (*continued*)	165
	VERBAL IDIOMS: **penser à, de; faire** with Inf.	166
XLIII.	NUMERALS, CARDINAL	170
	PRES. SUBJ. OF **dire, voir, savoir**	172
XLIV.	NUMERALS, ORDINAL	175
XLV.	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	179
XLVI.	COMPOUND TENSES (*Summary*)	184
	IDIOMATIC TENSE USAGES	184
XLVII.	SYNOPSES OF **devoir, pouvoir, savoir**	189
	SPECIAL USES	190
XLVIII.	PREPOSITIONS: **depuis, pour, pendant, en, dans**	193
	SYNOPSES OF **connaître, tenir, venir**	194
XLIX.	INDEFINITE PRONOUNS	198
	SYNOPSES OF **mettre, prendre**	199
L.	SUBJUNCTIVE: INDEPENDENT CLAUSES, NOUN CLAUSES	202

LESSON PAGE

LI. Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses, Adjective Clauses 208
LII. Subjunctive: Adverbial Clauses 212
Synopsis of **dormir** 213
LIII. Imperfect Subjunctive 216
LIV. Indefinite Relatives 222
Faire with an Infinitive 223
LV. Objects of Transitive Verbs 226

APPENDIX

Epistolary Usage 233
Review Exercises 236
Regular Verbs 251
Avoir and **Être** 253
Compound Tenses 255
Orthographic Changes 257
Irregular Verbs 258
Reference List of Irregular Verbs 280
Use of Infinitive 283
Phonetic Texts 290

French-English Vocabulary 293
English-French Vocabulary 321
Index 349

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
La Seine	*Frontispiece*
La Fontaine Médicis en Hiver	26
Un Parc à Aix-les-Bains	36
Un Cinéma	40
Notre Dame	96
Le Facteur	100
Le Château d'Amboise	108
Le Château de Chenonceaux	112
Un Match de Tennis à Cannes	120
La Sorbonne	122
Jardin et Palais du Luxembourg	124
Les Travaux de la Ferme	130
La Rue de Rivoli	136
Sports d'Hiver aux Pyrénées	142
Le Marché aux Légumes à Nice	176
Le Café de la Paix	186
Étalage de Marchandises	190
La Place de l'Opéra	204
Le Tramway Électrique — Boulevard St. Michel	206
Le Paquebot 'Paris' de la Compagnie Générale Transatlantique	214
Le Port du Havr	216
Le Théâtre Français	224
Tours	230

CREDITS FOR ILLUSTRATIONS

Compagnie Générale Transatlantique: "Le Paquebot 'Paris'."

French Government Tourist Information Office, N. Y.: "Sports d'Hiver aux Pyrénées."

Ewing Galloway, N. Y.: "Un Cinéma"; "La Sorbonne"; "Les Travaux de la Ferme"; "La Rue de Rivoli"; "Le Marché aux Légumes à Nice"; "Étalage de Marchandises"; "Le Tramway Électrique — Boulevard St. Michel"; "Le Port du Havre."

Ewing Galloway, Photo by De Cou: "Un Parc à Aix-les-Bains"; "Le Café de la Paix."

Burton Holmes: "Le Théâtre Français."

Keystone View Co., Inc., N. Y.: "La Fontaine Médicis en Hiver"; "Un Match de Tennis à Cannes."

Publishers Photo Service, N. Y.: "Notre Dame"; "Le Facteur"; "La Place de l'Opéra."

INTRODUCTION

§§ 1–2

FRENCH PRONUNCIATION

Alphabet

1. The letters of the French alphabet are the same as those of the English alphabet. They are, with their French names:

a	a [a]	**j**	ji [ʒi]	**s**	esse [ɛs]
b	bé [be]	**k**	ka [ka]	**t**	té [te]
c	cé [se]	**l**	elle [ɛl]	**u**	u [y]
d	dé [de]	**m**	emme [ɛm]	**v**	vé [ve]
e	é [e]	**n**	enne [ɛn]	**w**	double vé [dubl ve]
f	effe [ɛf]	**o**	o [o]	**x**	iks [iks]
g	gé [ʒe]	**p**	pé [pe]	**y**	i grec [i grɛk]
h	ache [aʃ]	**q**	ku [ky]	**z**	zède [zɛd]
i	i [i]	**r**	erre [ɛr]		

NOTE. — The beginner may ignore the French names of the letters until he has mastered the phonetic symbols. Cf. § 5.

1. The names of the letters of the alphabet are masculine, except **f, h, l, m, n, r, s.**

Orthographic Signs

2. The following orthographic signs are used in French:

1. The acute accent ´ [1] (**accent aigu** [aksɑ̃t egy]): **é.**

2. The grave accent ` (**accent grave** [aksɑ̃ graːv]): **à, è, ù.**

3. The circumflex accent ^ (**accent circonflexe** [aksɑ̃ sirkɔ̃flɛks]): **â, ê, î, ô, û.**

4. The cedilla ¸ (**cédille** [sediːj]), placed under a **c** to give it a soft sound before **a, o, u: ça,** etc.

5. The dieresis ¨ (**tréma** [trema]), placed over a vowel to separate it from a preceding vowel: **naïf.**

6. The apostrophe ’ (**apostrophe** [apɔstrɔf]), denoting the omission of a final vowel before an initial vowel: **l’ami, s’il.**

[1] These accents do not serve to indicate stress of voice.

Phonetic Symbols

3. The French language, like the English, is not always phonetic in its spelling, and for this reason students are often troubled by the contradictions that appear between the written and spoken forms of the same words. However, since it has been discovered that any language may be written phonetically, and since the International Phonetic Association has devised a phonetic alphabet that has been well-nigh universally adopted, the learning, not only of French pronunciation, but of that of all foreign languages, has been greatly simplified.

The phonetic symbols employed in this grammar are those of the International Phonetic Association. These symbols have been based, for the most part, on international usage; that is to say, whenever it has been possible to represent a given sound by a letter used by the majority of the peoples employing the Latin alphabet, that letter has been adopted. Some of the symbols naturally seem strange to an English speaking person, as, for example, the [j], which has been chosen to indicate the sound of *y* in *yet* and which, though contrary to English, French, and Spanish, is in accord with German, Italian, Dutch, and Scandinavian usage. Some symbols have had to be invented, in order to represent sounds not satisfactorily indicated by any existing letters. But the difficulty of memorizing the symbols is not great, and once mastered they are of inestimable value in the acquisition of a sure and accurate pronunciation. They are particularly necessary to one learning a foreign language without a teacher.

4. The beginner in French should master first of all the phonetic symbols, keeping in mind the fact that there is rarely an exact equivalent in English for the French sounds, and that the French vowels and consonants are both uttered with much greater precision and tenseness than are the corresponding letters in English. The tongue and lips are consequently much more active in forming them.

5. Table of Phonetic Symbols

Vowels

English [1]	French [2]
ɑ = *a* in *father*.	**â, a** (*in some positions*): **âme** [ɑːm], **pas** [pɑ].
a = *a* in *at* (*usually not so flat*).	**à, a** (*in most positions*): **là** [la], **dame** [dam].
ɛ = *e* in *let* or (*when long*) in *there*.	**è, ê, e** (*in some positions*), **ei, ai** (*usually*): **père** [pɛːr], **tête** [tɛːt], **tel** [tɛl], **reine** [rɛːn], **vrai** [vrɛ].
e = a sound between the *a* in *hate* and the *e* in *he*.	**é, e** (*before silent final consonants*), **ai** (*final in verbs*): **dé** [de], **nez** [ne], **serai** [səre].
i = *e* in *he*.	**î, i, y, île** [il], **il** [il], **y** [i].
ɔ = a sound between the *u* in *fur* and the *o* in *for*.	**o** (*phonetically closed* [3]): **cor** [kɔːr], **école** [ekɔl].
o = *o* in *go*.	**ô, o** (*phonetically open* [4]): **tôt** [to], **nos** [no].
u = *oo* in *boot*.	**oû, où, ou: goût** [gu], **où** [u], **ou** [u].
œ = a sound somewhat like *o* in *love*.	**eu** (*phonetically closed*): **peur** [pœːr].
ə = *e* in *the* (*rapidly pronounced*).	**e** (*in an open syl.*): **petit** [pəti], **le** [lə].
ø = a sound between the *u* in *puff* and *i* in *if*.	**eu** (*phonetically open*): **peu** [pø], **veux** [vø].
y = German *ü*.	**û, u: dû** [dy], **du** [dy].

Nasal Vowels

ɑ̃ = *o* + *n* (*unfinished*) in *on*.	**an, en** (*or* **−m** *in either case*): **grand** [grɑ̃], **temps** [tɑ̃].
ɛ̃ = *a* + *n* (*unfinished*) in *an*.	**in, yn, ain, ein** (*or* **−m** *in any case*): **pin** [pɛ̃], **faim** [fɛ̃], **sein** [sɛ̃].
ɔ̃ = *aw* + *n* (*unfinished*) in *lawn*.	**on** (*or* **−m**): **bon** [bɔ̃], **nom** [nɔ̃].
œ̃ = *u* + *n* (*unfinished*) *in bun*.	**un** (*or* **−m**): **un** [œ̃], **parfum** [parfœ̃].

ː is the sign of length.

[1] The English vowel sounds used as equivalents for the phonetic symbols will give an approximate idea of the French vowel sounds, but the teacher should illustrate them orally, giving what modifications may be necessary.

[2] For a more complete list of French equivalents, cf. § 33.

[3] That is to say, followed by a consonantal sound.

[4] That is to say, not followed by a consonantal sound.

1. In general, French vowel sounds, whether long or short, preserve their quality throughout. In pronouncing them one should avoid the drawl of the English vowels, which so often changes their character and causes them to end with a glide or vanishing sound other than that with which they began, i.e., English *o* = [o + u], English *e* = [i + j].

2. The sound [e] has no exact equivalent in English. The corners of the mouth must be drawn back tensely and the tongue raised as for the sound [i], while one utters the *a* of *hate* as sharply as possible, without relaxing the lips or tongue.

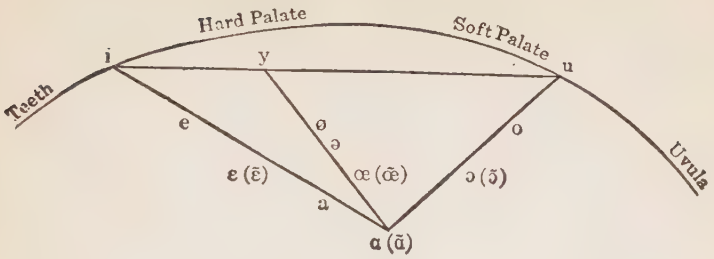
3. The sound [ɔ] has no exact equivalent in English. The tongue must be drawn back slightly and the lips rounded, while one utters a sound between the *u* of *fur* and the *o* of *for*.

4. Care must be taken not to confound the sounds [œ] and [ø], the second of which is thrown forward in the mouth when pronounced, causing the lips to protrude and contract, forming a small round opening. Compare these sounds in **heureux** [œrø].

5. No equivalent for the sound [y] can be found in English. Those who are familiar with the German *ü*, which it resembles, will have no difficulty in forming this sound. Others may succeed in uttering it by contracting the lips as for [u] and then, without relaxing them at all, by trying to say [i].

6. In order to pronounce the nasal vowel sounds, the air must be allowed to escape freely through both nose and mouth. The tongue must be kept down, not allowing its tip to rise and touch the roof of the mouth, as it does when the *n* sound in English is completed. The lips must likewise be kept apart, even if the nasal vowel be spelled with an **m** (**parfum** [parfœ̃]).

PHONETIC TRIANGLE



6. Table of Phonetic Symbols

Consonants

	English	French [1]
b =	*b* in *bed*.	**b**: **beau** [bo].
d =	*d* in *den*.	**d**: **dame** [dam].
f =	*f* in *fat*.	**f**: **fort** [fɔːr].
g =	*g* in *go*.	**g** (*before* **a, o, u**): **gare** [gaːr].
k =	*c* in *cat*.	**c** (*before* **a, o, u**): **car** [kar].
l =	*l* in *look*.	**l**: **lac** [lak].
m =	*m* in *me*.	**m**: **me** [mə].
n =	*n* in *no*.	**n**: **ne** [nə].
p =	*p* in *put*.	**p**: **pot** [po].
r =	English *r* trilled or uvular.	**r**: **ri** [ri].
s =	*s* in *so*.	**s** (*initial*), **c** (*before* **e, i, y**): **si** [si], **ce** [sə].
t =	*t* in *tin*.	**t**: **tu** [ty].
v =	*v* in *vim*.	**v**: **vice** [vis].
z =	*z* in *zeal*	**z, s** (*between vowels*): **zéro** [zero], **rose** [roːz].
ʃ =	*sh* in *show*.	**ch**: **chaise** [ʃɛːz].
ʒ =	*s* in *pleasure*.	**j, g** (*before* **e, i, y**): **je** [ʒə], **gîte** [ʒit].
ɲ =	*ni* in *onion*.	**gn**: **agneau** [aɲo].

Semi-vowels

j =	*y* in *yet*.	**y, i** (*before vowels*): **yeux** [jø], **bien** [bjɛ̃].
ɥ =	a sound like that of the French letter **u** or German *ü* consonantly pronounced.	**u** (*before vowels*): **lui** [lɥi].
w =	*w* in *we*.	**ou** (*before vowels*): **oui** [wi].

[1] For a more complete list of French equivalents, cf. § 34.

1. The only consonantal symbols unfamiliar to a beginner are [ʃ, ʒ, ɲ, j, ɥ], and these are easily learned.

2. There is a tendency to advance the tongue in forming most consonantal sounds in French. This is particularly true for **d, l, n, t,** when the tip of the tongue is advanced until it touches the back of the upper front teeth.

de [də], **le** [lə], **ne** [nə], **te** [tə]

3. The **r** may be trilled, but the better and more common pronunciation is that of a uvular *r*. It is made by elevating the root of the tongue and causing the uvula to vibrate.

orange [ɔrɑ̃:ʒ], **rond** [rõ]

4. The semi-vowel sounds [j] and [w] must be pronounced more briefly and narrowly than the corresponding English consonants, *y* and *w*. The [j] sound when final must be very lightly pronounced. A vowel sound before it should be somewhat prolonged.

bien [bjɛ̃], **fille** [fi:j], **oui** [wi]

5. The sound of [ɥ] is one of the most difficult to acquire. Avoid the sound of the English *w*. Master first the sound of the French vowel **u** [y], then learn to use that as a consonantal sound before vowels.

lui [lɥi], **nuage** [nɥa:ʒ]

7. H is regularly silent in French, whether aspirate or mute. The difference between an aspirate and a mute **h** is that the former prevents either elision (cf. § 31) or linking (**liaison** [cf. § 19]), and the latter allows both.

There are about four hundred words beginning with an aspirate **h**. These are sometimes indicated in dictionaries by reversed commas, thus:

ʻhache [aʃ], **ʻhibou** [ibu], etc.

8. X, though a single letter, generally represents a combination of consonantal sounds. It is usually pronounced [ks] (**fixe** [fiks], **luxe** [lyks], **excepté** [eksɛpte]); in the prefix **ex** + a vowel it is pronounced [gz] (**exercice** [egzɛrsis], **examen** [egzamẽ]); but in the prefix **ex** + hard **c, f, p, q,** or **t** by some persons it is pronounced [s] (**exclamation** [ɛsklamɑsjɔ̃]).

Silent Consonants

9. Only one letter is usually pronounced of double consonants (**casser** [kase], **aller** [ale]). In certain words, however, both consonants are pronounced (**acquerrai** [akɛrre], **courrai** [kurre], **annales** [annal]).

10. Consonants are sometimes silent in medial groups, as, for example:

m in **automne** [otɔn] and in **damner** [dane] and derivatives
p in **lpt** (**sculpter** [skylte] and derivatives), in **pt** (**baptême** [batɛːm]), in **mpt** (**compter** [kɔ̃te], **dompter** [dɔ̃te], etc.)
th in **asthme** [asm], **isthme** [ism]

11. Sometimes one of a final group of consonants is silent, e.g.:

l in **fils** [fis] **p** in **sept** [sɛt]

12. Final consonants are generally silent in French, whether single or in groups.

les [le], **pots** [po], **grand** [grɑ̃], **trop** [trɔ]

Exceptions (for reference)

(*a*) The principal exceptions are in proper names, especially foreign ones: **Alfred** [alfrɛd], **Cid** [sid], **Gil Blas** [ʒil blɑːs], **Reims** [rɛ̃ːs], **Christ** [krist] — But: **Jésus-Christ** [ʒezy krì], — **Ernest** [ɛrnɛst], etc.; in **club** [klyb], **sud** [syd], **cap** [kap], **cinq** [sɛ̃ːk], **coq** [kɔk], **fils** [fis], **hélas** [elɑːs], **jadis** [ʒɑdis], **lis** [liːs], **mars** [mɑrs], **mœurs** [mœrs], **ours** [urs], **sens** [sɑ̃s] (except in **bon sens** [bɔ̃ sɑ̃] and **sens commun** [sɑ̃ kɔmœ̃]), **tous** [tuːs] (*as pronoun*), **bis** [biːs], **omnibus** [ɔmnibyːs], **dot** [dɔt], **net** [nɛt], **huit** [ɥit], **préfix** [prefiks], **est** [ɛst], **ouest** [wɛst], **correct** [kɔrɛkt] (*and some others in* **ct**), **abrupt** [abrypt], **rapt** [rapt], and many others.

(*b*) In groups consisting of **r** + consonant(s), **r** alone is usually pronounced.

vert [vɛːr], **corps** [kɔːr], **cerf** [sɛːr]

13. Final **c, f, l, r** are usually pronounced.

avec [avɛk], **chef** [ʃɛf], **tel** [tɛl], **cher** [ʃɛːr]

Exceptions (for reference)

(*a*) **C** is silent after a nasal vowel (**banc** [bɑ̃]), and in certain words, e.g., **broc** [bro], **estomac** [ɛstɔma], **tabac** [taba], etc.

(*b*) **F** is silent in **clef** [kle], **cerf** [sɛːr], **nerf** [nɛːr], **chef-d'œuvre** [ʃɛ d œːvr], in the plurals **bœufs** [bø], **œufs** [ø], etc.

(*c*) **L** is silent in **fils** [fis], **pouls** [pu], and a few other words.

(*d*) **R** is generally silent in words of more than one syllable ending in **–er(s)** (**aimer** [ɛme], **acier** [asje], **volontiers** [vɔlɔ̃tje]), in **monsieur** [məsjø]; but is pronounced by exception in **amer** [amɛːr], **cuiller** [kyjɛːr], **enfer** [ɑ̃fɛːr], **hiver** [ivɛːr], and a few other words.

Note. — In monosyllables **–er** is pronounced.

cher [ʃɛːr], **fier** [fjɛːr], **hier** [jɛːr]

14. Final consonantal sounds are more completely uttered than in English, to such an extent, indeed, that they often seem to end in a sort of [ə] sound. This is particularly true after the voiced stops **b, d, g.**

robe [rɔb], **aide** [ɛːd], **vague** [vag]

15. **L** and **r** are whispered after a consonant in the endings **–le, –re.**

table [tabl̥], **chèvre** [ʃɛːvr̥]

16. Syllables

1. Vowels are the essential part of any syllable.

A single vowel, or any combination of vowels, except two contiguous independent vowels, may form a syllable.

à, ou, beau. But: **ha-ïr, né-e**

2. A single consonant (except **x**) between vowels begins a syllable.

a-mi, é-vi-té, bu-reau

Note. — Consonantal combinations representing single sounds (**ch, ph, th, gn,** etc.) are treated like single consonants.

a-che-ter, té-lé-pho-ne, a-thé-e, a-gneau

3. Two consonants of which the second is **l** or **r** (except **ll, rr, rl, lr**) begin likewise a syllable.

ta-bleau, au-tre

4. Other combinations of consonants are divided so as to give to the preceding syllable whatever consonants cannot (according to the foregoing rules) begin a syllable.

el-le, in-té-res-sant, com-bler

5. Any of these rules may be set aside when derivation so requires.

mal-heur, in-spi-rer

6. Syllables are open, when they end in a vowel, and closed, when they end in a consonant. If the consonant is silent, they may be considered as *phonetically* open. They may be regarded as *phonetically* closed when followed by a consonantal sound, even when the consonant belongs to a succeeding syllable (e.g., **école** [ekɔl]).

17. Tonic Accent

1. The stress of voice on individual syllables, which is so strong in English, is correspondingly weak in French, each syllable being uttered with great clearness, but with approximately the same stress, except for a very slight additional stress falling on the last fully pronounced syllable of a word.

2. In connected discourse the words are run together in stress groups, with every syllable of approximately the same force, except the last syllable [1] of the group, which receives a slight emphasis. The accent upon such syllables is usually a rising one before commas or slight pauses, and a falling one at the end of sentences.

[1] Meaning *fully pronounced* syllable.

Linking

18. In uttering a series of words in French, it is customary to break them up into stress groups, in which the syllable becomes the unit rather than the word. For this reason a consonant that is regularly silent at the end of a word is often pronounced upon a following vowel (mute **h** not preventing), as if it were the initial consonant of a new syllable. This is called the **liaison** [ljɛzɔ̃], or linking (of words).

NOTE. — Though final consonants making the liaison are pronounced as if they were the initial consonants of succeeding syllables, they are commonly printed in phonetic script with the words of which they form part.

Venez ici,	**mes enfants,**	**nos amis**	**sont arrivés**
[vənez isi	mez ɑ̃fɑ̃	noz ami	sɔ̃t arive]

19. Liaison is more frequent in formal diction than in colloquial speech, although certain liaisons are always made.

20. Liaison occurs, in general, between words of close syntactical relation: pronoun and verb, adjective and noun, preposition and its object, adverb and word modified, etc.

21. An aspirate **h** prevents the liaison, while a mute **h** does not.

les ‘hiboux [le ibu], **les hommes** [lez ɔm]

22. Onze, ‘eleven,’ and **oui,** ‘yes,’ do not allow the liaison.

les onze [le ɔ̃ːz], **les oui** [le wi]

23. The following consonants change their normal sound in making the liaison: **d** = [t], **f** = [v] (in **neuf,** ‘nine’), **g** = [k], **x** = [z], **s** = [z].

un grand homme [œ̃ grɑ̃t ɔm], **neuf ans** [nœv ɑ̃], **un sang impur** [œ̃ sɑ̃k ɛ̃pyːr], **dix ans** [diz ɑ̃], **les hommes** [lez ɔm].

24. The **t** of **et,** 'and,' and the final **m** never make the liaison.

mère et enfant [mɛːr e ɑ̃fɑ̃], **un nom important** [œ̃ nɔ̃ ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃]

25. Nasal **n,** when linked, usually retains a part of its nasal character, though it is pronounced upon the following vowel as an initial **n.**

mon ami [mɔ̃n ami]

26. **P** rarely makes the liaison, except in **trop,** 'too,' and **beaucoup,** 'much.'

trop heureux [trɔp œrø]

27. Final **r,** if regularly silent, is not linked in ordinary speech, but may be so pronounced in more formal utterance.

blâmer à tort [blɑme (*or* blɑmɛr) a tɔːr]

NOTE. — When such an **r** is linked, a preceding [e] sound becomes [ɛ].

28. Silent final consonants after **r** are rarely linked, except the plural **s,** **t** of **fort,** 'very,' and **t** of verbs before a pronoun.

à tort et à travers [a tɔːr e a travɛːr]
BUT: **fort aimable** [fɔːrt ɛmabl]
dort-il [dɔːrt il]

29. Not all silent final consonants can be linked. A good dictionary should be consulted when in doubt.

Elision

30. The letters **a, e, i** of certain words are sometimes entirely omitted and their place taken by an apostrophe. This is called elision. It occurs before an initial vowel (or **h** mute) in the following cases:

1. **a** in the article **la** and in the pronoun **la** before a verb, **en,** or **y.**
l'eau [lo], *f.* **Je l'ai vue** [ʒə le vy]. **Menez-l'y** [məne li].

2. **e** in **le** (*article*), **de, ne, que**; in the pronouns **ce, le, je, me, se, te,** before a verb, **en,** or **y**; in **lorsque, puisque, quoique,** before **il(s), elle(s), on, un(e)**; in **jusque** before **à** or **ici**; in **quelque** before **un(e)**; and in a few compound words, mostly with **entre.**

l'ami [lami], **d'eau** [do], **n'est** [nɛ], **qu'un** [kœ̃], **c'est** [sɛ], **l'ont** [lɔ̃], **j'ai** [ʒe], **lorsqu'il** [lɔrskil], **quoiqu'on** [kwakɔ̃], **jusqu'ici** [ʒyskisi], **quelqu'un** [kɛlkœ̃].

3. **i** only in **si** before **il(s).**

s'il(s) [sil]

Punctuation

31. The punctuation marks in French are virtually the same as in English.

1. They are called:

. **point** [pwɛ̃]
, **virgule** [virgyl]
; **point et virgule** [pwɛ̃t e virgyl]
: **deux points** [dø pwɛ̃]
? **point d'interrogation** [pwɛ̃ dɛ̃terɔgasjɔ̃]
! **point d'exclamation** [pwɛ̃ dɛksklamasjɔ̃]
- **trait d'union** [trɛ dynjɔ̃]
— **tiret (de séparation)** [tirɛ (də separasjɔ̃)]
... **points de suspension** [pwɛ̃ də syspãsjɔ̃]
« » **guillemets** [gijmɛ]
( ) **parenthèses** [parãtɛiz]
[ ] **crochets** [krɔʃɛ]
{ } **accolade** [akɔlad]
* **astérisque** [asterisk]
† **croix de renvoi** [krwa də rãvwa]

2. Their usage is practically the same as in English, save that the dash (–) serves often to indicate a change of speaker.

Capitals

32. Capital letters (***lettres majuscules***) are employed in French as in English in most cases, but small letters (***lettres minuscules***) are used, instead of capitals, to begin *proper adjectives* employed as such (or substantively for the names of languages), names of months, days of the year, I and O (the exclamation), when they do not begin a sentence.

un livre français	a French book
le français	the French (language)
(But: **un Français**)	(a Frenchman)
janvier	January
lundi	Monday
je	I
Qu'as-tu fait, ô toi que voilà . . .?	What have you done, O you who stand there . . .?

FOR REFERENCE[1]

33. Table of the Phonetic Symbols and Their French Equivalents

Vowels

Symbols		French Equivalents
1. ɑ (**ouvert,** ' open ')	= **â**	(**âge** [ɑːʒ]).
	= **a**	before final **–se, –ze** (**rase** [rɑːz], **gaze** [gɑ̃ːz]), before final pronounced **s** or **z** (**hélas** [elɑːs], **gaz** [gɑːz]), (*generally*[2]) before **–sse, –ce** (**passe** [pɑːs], **grâce** [grɑːs]), (*generally*) in **–ation, –assion, –asion** (**nation** [nɑsjɔ̃]), (*generally*) before **–ill–** (**paille** [pɑːj]), (*generally*) before silent final consonants (**pas** [pɑ]).
2. **a** (**fermé,** ' closed ')	= **â**	(**là** [la]).
	= **a**	(*in general*[2]), especially when initial (**ami** [ami]), when final (**la** [la], **déjà** [deʒa]), before phonetically final [b, d, g, l, m, n, ɲ, r] (**bague** [bag], **dame** [dam]), before **–ge, –ve** (**page** [paːʒ], **cave** [kaːv]).
	= **e**	in the adverbial ending **–emment** (**récemment** [resamɑ̃]), in **femme** [fam], and in a few other words.
3. ɛ (**ouvert**)	= **è**	(**père** [pɛːr]).
	= **ê**	(**tête** [tɛːt]).
	= **é**	(*rarely*) (**donné-je** [dɔnɛːʒ], **têter** [tɛte]).
	= **e**	in a phonetically closed syllable (**tel** [tɛl], **chercher** [ʃɛrʃe]), before final **–t, –ts** (**sujet** [syʒɛ], **mets** [mɛ]) — except the conjunction **et** [e].
	= **ei**	(**reine** [rɛːn], **pareil** [parɛːj]).
	= **ai**	(*in general*) (**vrai** [vrɛ], **aide** [ɛd]).
4. e (**fermé**)	= **é**	(**dé** [de]) — except rarely when **é** = [ɛ].
	= **e**	(*sometimes*) when initial followed by **ss** (**essayer** [eseje]), (*generally*) before silent final consonants, except **–t, –ts** (**nez** [ne], **mes**[3] [me], **aller** [ale]). But the conjunction **et** = [e].
	= **ai**	(*sometimes*) when initial (**aider** [ede], **aigu** [egy]), (*always*) when final in verbs (**serai** [səre]), in the present of **savoir** (**sais** [se], etc.), in the words **gai** [ge], **quai** [ke], **geai** [ʒe].
	= **œ**	as initial in a few words (**œsophage** [ezɔfaːʒ]).

[1] For practice in reading phonetic transcription, see texts, §§ 460–472.

[2] The exceptions to these and other general rules will be called to the students' attention as the individual cases appear.

[3] Some pronounce these monosyllables, **mes, des, tes,** etc., with an open **e** [mɛ, dɛ, tɛ, etc.].

5. **i** = **î** (**île** [il]).
= **i** (**finir** [finiːr]).
= **y** (**y** [i]).

6. ɔ (**ouvert**) = **o** (*generally*) in a phonetically closed syllable (**cor** [kɔːr], **encore** [ɑ̃kɔːr], **école** [ekɔl], **bonne** [bɔn]) — except before **–se,** in the syllables **–doss–, –gross–,** and (*generally*) before **–me, –ne.** There are many exceptions.
= **au** (*generally*) in a phonetically closed syllable (**augment** [ɔgmɑ̃]), (**mauvais** [mɔvɛ], especially before **r aurai** [ɔrɛ].
= **oi** in a few words (**oignon** [ɔɲɔ̃], **encoignure** [ɑ̃kɔɲyːr]).

7. o (**fermé**) = **ô** (**tôt**) [to].
= **o** (*generally*) in a phonetically open syllable (**no** [no], **nos** [no]), but (*often*) in a phonetically closed syllable, especially before **–se** and (*generally*) **–me, –ne** (**rose** [roːz], **tome** [toːm]), and in the syllables **–doss–, –gross–** (**dossier** [dosje], **grosse** [gros]).
= **ao** in **curaçao** [kyraso].
= **au** (*generally*) in a phonetically open syllable (**au** [o], **aux** [o]).
= **eau** (**beau** [bo]).

8. u = **oû** (**goût** [gu]).
= **où** (**où** [u]).
= **ou** (**ou** [u]).
= **aoû** in **août** [u] (*as generally pronounced*).

9. œ (**ouvert**) = **eu** in a phonetically closed syllable (**peur** [pœːr], **meuble** [mœbl]).
= **eu, ue, œ,** before **–il, –ill–** (**deuil** [dœːj], **cueille** [kœːj], **œil** [œːj]).
= **œu** before pronounced **f, r, –vre** (**bœuf** [bœf], **cœur** [kœːr], **œuvre** [œːvr]).

10. ə (**mi-ouvert,** '**half open**') = **e** when ending a syllable (**mener** [mənə]), in the monosyllables **de** [də], **je** [ʒə], **le** [lə], **me** [mə], etc., and in certain words before **s** when doubled to preserve the hard sound (**ressortir** [rəsɔrtiːr]).[1]
= **ai** in **faisant** [fəzɑ̃], and derived forms.

11. ø (**fermé**) = **eû** (**jeûne** [ʒøːn]).
= **eu** in a phonetically open syllable (**peu** pø], **veux** [vø]), before pronounced [t, tr, z] **meute** [møːt], **neutre** [nøtr], **coûteuse** [kutøːz]).
= **œu** before silent final consonants (**œufs** [ø]).

12. y = **û** (**sûr** [syːr]).
= **u** (**du** [dy]).
= **eu** and **eû** in various forms of the verb **avoir** (**eus** [y], **eûmes** [yːm]), and **eu** in **gageure** [gaʒyːr].

[1] The **e** is absolutely silent in final **–e, –es** (*not in monosyllables*), in the verb-ending **–ent** (*3rd person plural*), and in the body of a word where the combination of consonants before and after it allows of its omission (**mène, mènes, mènent** [*all* mɛn], **mademoiselle** [madmwazɛl]).

Nasal Vowels

13. Vowels preceding **n** or **m** are not usually nasal when **n** or **m** is doubled, or followed by a vowel (**anneau** [ano], **inégal** [inegal]). In a few words **en** final is pronounced [ɛn] (**hymen** [imɛn]).[1]

14. ɑ̃ = **an** (**grand** [grɑ̃]).
= **am** (**champ** [ʃɑ̃]).
= **en** (**dent** [dɑ̃]). A few words in **–en** are exceptions (**examen** [ɛgzamɛ̃], etc.), also most words (except most nouns) in **–ien** (**bien** [bjɛ̃], but not **orient** [ɔrjɑ̃]).
= **em** (**temps** [tɑ̃]).
= **ean** in **Jean** [ʒɑ̃].
= **aon** in **faon** [fɑ̃], **paon** [pɑ̃], **taon** [tɑ̃].

15. ɛ̃ = **in** (**fin** [fɛ̃]).
= **im** (**simple** [sɛ̃:pl]).
= **yn** (**syndic** [sɛ̃dɪk])
= **ym** (**lymphe** [lɛ̃:f]), but the combination **–ymn–** is pronounced [imn] (**hymne** [imn]).
= **ain** (**main** [mɛ̃]).
= **aim** (**faim** [fɛ̃]).
= **ein** (**sein** [sɛ̃]).
= **eim** (**Reims** [rɛ̃:s]).
= **en** in a very few words (**examen** [egzamɛ̃], **européen** [œrɔpeɛ̃], etc.) and (*generally*) after **i** or **y** when **en** is final or followed by **s** or **t** (**bien** [bjɛ̃], **vient** [vjɛ̃]) — but not in nouns (**orient** [ɔrjɑ̃]).

16. ɔ̃ = **on** (**bon** [bɔ̃]).
= **om** (**nom** [nɔ̃]), but the combination **–omn–** is pronounced [ɔmn] (**omnibus** [ɔmnibys]), except in **automne,** when the **m** is silent [otɔn].
= **un** in a few words (**jungle** [ʒɔ̃:gl], **punch** [pɔ̃:ʃ], etc.).

17. œ̃ = **un** (**un** [œ̃]).
= **um** (**parfum** [parfœ̃]), but in a few Latin words **–um** is pronounced [ɔm] (**album** [albɔm]).
= **eun** (**jeun** [ʒœ̃]).

: (*the sign of length*) is used after stressed vowels in general, before the sounds [v, z, ʒ, j], before **r** phonetically final, and after nasals and long [ɑ, ɛ, o, ø] (**prise** [pri:z], **âge** [ɑ:ʒ], **fille** [fi:j], **chère** [ʃɛ:r], **danse** [dɑ̃:s], **reine** [rɛ:n], **tome** [to:m]).

[1] In a few words, contrary to the rule, the vowel is nasal, even when **n** or **m** is doubled (**ennui**) [ɑ̃nɥi], **emmener** [ɑ̃mne], **immanageable** [ɛ̃mɑ̃ʒabl], etc. In a few others **–enn–**, **–emm–** are pronounced [an, am], respectively (**solennel** [sɔlanɛl], **femme** [fam], etc.).

34. Table of the Phonetic Symbols and Their French Equivalents

Consonants

SYMBOLS — FRENCH EQUIVALENTS

1. b = **b** (**bon** [bɔ̃]).
2. d = **d** (**du** [dy]).
3. f = **f** (**fer** [fɛːr]).
   = **ph** (**Joseph** [ʒozɛf]).
4. g = **g** (*hard*) before **a, o, u,** or before consonants, or (*rarely*) when final (**gai** [ge], **grand** [grɑ̃], **gnome** [gnoːm], **joug** [ʒug]).
   = **gu** before **e, i** (**gueux** [gø], **gui** [gi]), and before other vowels in certain verb-forms (**conjuguons** [kɔ̃ʒygɔ̃]); but **gu** before (**e** or **i**) in a few words is pronounced [gɥ] (**aiguille** [egɥiːj], **aiguiser** [egɥize], **arguer** [argɥe], etc.).
   = **c** in **second** [səgɔ̃, zgɔ̃] and derivatives, and in **zinc** [zɛ̃ːg].
5. k = **c** (*hard*) before **a, o, u,** or before consonants, or when final (**café** [kafe], **clair** [klɛːr], **sec** [sɛk]).
   = **q** final (**cinq** [sɛ̃ːk], **coq** [kɔk]).
   = **qu** before **e, i, y,** and (*often*) before **a, o** (que [kɔ], **qui** [ki], **quand** [kɑ̃]).
   = **k** in some foreign words (**koran** [kɔrɑ̃]).
   = **ch** in most Greek derivatives, in **–chus,** and before consonants (**écho** [eko], **Bacchus** [bakyːs], **chrétien** [kretjɛ̃]).
6. l = **l** (**leur** [lœːr]).
7. m = **m** (**mère** [mɛːr]), except when it is the sign of a nasal vowel.
8. n = **n** (**nous** [nu]), except when it is the sign of a nasal vowel.
9. p = **p** (**peau** [po]).
   = **b** before **s** or **t** (**absolu** [apsɔly], **obtener** [ɔptəniːr]).
10. r = **r** (**rare** [rɑːr]).
11. s = **s** when initial, or before or after consonants (**son** [sɔ̃], **aspiré** [aspire]) — except (*generally*) in **trans–** followed by a vowel — **transit** [trɑ̃zi], and a few other words (**presbyte** [prɛzbit]).
   = **c** before **e, i, y** (**ces** [se], **ci** [si], **cycle** [sikl]), including the second **c** of **cc** preceding **e, i, y** (**accès** [aksɛ]).
   = **ç** before **a, o, u** (**ça** [sa], **garçon** [garsɔ̃], **reçu** [rəsy]).
   = **sc** before **e, i, y** ([**scène** [sɛːn], **scie** [si]).
   = **t** (*generally*) before **i** in the endings **–tia, –tie, –tiel, –tient, –tieux, –tion** (**facétie** [fasesi], **nation** [nɑsjɔ̃]) except when **–tion** follows **s** or **x** (**question** [kɛstjɔ̃], **mixtion** [mikstjɔ̃]).
   = **x** in **six** and **dix,** when standing alone [sis, dis], in **soixante** [swasɑ̃ːt], and (*by some authorities*) in the prefix **ex** + hard **c, f, p, q,** or **t** (**excuse** [ɛskyːz], **expliquer** [ɛsplike]).
12. t = **t** (**ton** [tɔ̃]).
   = **th** (**thé** [te]).
13. v = **v** (**vice** [vis]).
   = **w** (*in general* (**wagon** [vagɔ̃]).

14. z = **z** (**zéro** [zero], **gaz** [gɑːz]).
= **s** between vowels (**rose** [roːz]), except in certain compounds (**vraisemblable** [vrɛsɑ̃blabl]).
= medial **x,** in certain numerals (**deuxième** [døzjɛm], **dix-huit** [diz ɥit], **dix-neuf** [diz nœf]).

15. ʃ = **ch** (**chaise** [ʃɛːz]).
= **sch** (*usually*) (**schisme** [ʃizm]); but in a few words **sch** is pronounced [sk] (**scholastique** [skɔlastik], etc.).

16. ʒ = **j** (**jamais** [ʒamɛ], **je** [ʒə]).
= **g** before **e, i, y** (**âge** [ɑːʒ], **gilet** [ʒilɛ], **gymnaste** [ʒimnast]), including the second **g** of **gg** preceding **e, i, y** (**suggérer** [sygʒɛre]).

17. ɲ = **gn** (**mignon** [miɲɔ̃]), except in a few words in which the **g** and **n** are pronounced separately (**gnome** [gnoːm], **stagnant** [stagnɑ̃]).

Semi-vowels

18. j = **y** before a vowel (**yeux** [jø], **il y a** [il j a]).
= **i** before a vowel (**bien** [bjɛ̃], **nation** [nɑsjɔ̃]); but **i** after a group of consonants and **i** before mute **e** have the sound [i] (**prier** [prie], **ouïe,** [wi]).
= **ll** of **–ill–** after a consonant (**famille** [famiːj], **fille** [fiːj]). The commonest exceptions are **mille** [mil], **ville** [vil], **village** [vilaːʒ], **pupille** [pypil], **tranquille** [trɑ̃kil]. When initial, **ill–** is always pronounced [il] (**illusion** [ilyzjɔ̃]).
= **–ill–** after a vowel (the vowel always retaining its proper value) (**travailler** [travaje], **pareille** [parɛːj], **grenouille** [grənuːj]).
= **–il**(**s**) after a vowel, except **o** (the vowel always retaining its proper value) (**pareil** [parɛːj], **œil** [œːj]. But: **poil** [pwal]).
Note. — Final **–il**(**s**), after a consonant, in words of more than one syllable, is usually pronounced [i] (**fusil** [fysi], **gentil** [ʒɑ̃ti]). In words of one syllable **–il**(**s**) is pronounced [il] (**mil** [mil], **ils** [il]), and, by exception, in a few words of more than one syllable (**avril** [avril], **péril** [peril]).

19. ɥ = **u** before a vowel (**nuage** [nɥaːʒ], **écuelle** [ekɥɛ], **lui** [lɥi]).

20. w = **w** in a few English words (**tramway** [tramwɛ]).
= **wh** in a few English words (**whist** [wist], **whiskey** [wiske]).
= **ou** before **a, e, i** [**ouate** [wat], **ouest** [wɛst], **oui** [wi]).
= **u** between **g** and **a** in a very few words (**lingual** [lɛ̃gwal]), and between **q** and **a** (**aquarelle** [akwarɛl]).
= **o** in **–oi–,** in which combination the **i** has sometimes the sound [a] and sometimes [ɑ] (**toi** [twa], **toit** [twɑ]), or in **–oin,** when the **in** = [ɛ̃] (**loin** [lwɛ̃]); and in **–oê–,** in a few words, in which the **ê** has the sound [ɑ] or [a] (**poêle** [pwɑːl], **poêlée** [pwale]).

35. CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Monsieur (M.) [məsjø].	Sir, Mr.
Messieurs (MM.) [mesjø].	Gentlemen, Messrs.
Madame (Mme) [madam].	Madam, Mrs.
Mesdames (Mmes) [medam].	Ladies.
Mademoiselle (Mlle) [madmwzɛl].	Miss.
Mesdemoiselles (Mlles) [medmwzɛl].	Young ladies.
Bon jour [bɔ̃ ʒuːr].	Good day, good morning.
Comment vous portez-vous [kɔmɑ̃ vu pɔrte vu]?	How do you do? (*formal*)
Comment allez-vous [kɔmɑ̃t ale vu]?	How do you do? (*informal*)
Bien, merci, et vous [bjɛ̃, mɛrsi e vu]?	Very well, thanks, and you?
Au revoir [o rəvwaːr].	Good-by, until we meet again.
À demain [a dmɛ̃].	See you to-morrow, until to-morrow.
Allez au tableau (noir) [alez o tablo (nwaːr)].	Go to the blackboard.
Asseyez-vous [aseje vu].	Sit down.
Commencez à lire, à traduire [kɔmɑ̃sez a liːr, a tradɥiːr].	Begin to read, to translate.
Conjuguez le verbe [kɔʒyge lə vɛrb].	Conjugate the verb.
Continuez la lecture [kɔ̃tinɥe la lɛktyːr].	Continue the reading.
Corrigez les fautes [kɔriʒe le foːt].	Correct the mistakes.
Écoutez [ekute].	Listen.
Écrivez le thème [ekrive lə tɛm].	Write the composition.
Faites attention [fɛtz atɑ̃sjɔ̃].	Pay attention.
Fermez la porte, le livre [fɛrme la pɔrt, lə livr].	Close the door, the book.
Lisez les phrases [lize le fraːz].	Read the sentences.
Ouvrez le livre [uvre lə livr].	Open the book.
Préparez pour demain [prepare puːr dəmɛ̃].	Prepare for to-morrow.

Prononcez le mot [prɔnɔ̃se lə mo].	Pronounce the word.
Répondez en français [repɔ̃dez ɑ̃ frɑ̃sɛ].	Answer in French.
Voulez-vous (bien) lire, traduire, *etc.* [vule vu bjɛ̃ liːr, tradɥiːr].	Will you (please) read, translate, *etc.*
Traduisez la phrase [tradɥize la frɑːz].	Translate the sentence.
Quelle est la leçon pour aujourd'hui [kɛl ɛ la ləsɔ̃ puːr oʒurdɥi]?	What is the lesson for to-day?
La leçon commence à la page . . . [la ləsɔ̃ kɔmɑ̃ːs a la paːʒ . . .].	The lesson begins on page . . .
Comprenez-vous cela [kɔ̃prəne vu s(ə)la]?	Do you understand that?
Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela [kɛs kə sɛ kə s(ə)la]?	What is that?
Cela suffit [s(ə)la syfi].	That is sufficient, will do.
C'est très bien [sɛ trɛ bjɛ̃].	It is very well.
Merci bien [mɛrsi bjɛ̃].	Thanks very much.
Il n'y a pas de quoi [il nj a pɑ d kwa].	Don't mention it.
Que veut dire le mot . . . [kə vø diːr lə mo]?	What does the word . . . mean?
Le mot . . . veut dire . . . [lə mo vø diːr].	The word . . . means . . .
Comment dit-on . . . en français [kɔmɑ̃ dit ɔ̃ ɑ̃ frɑ̃sɛ]?	How does one say . . . in French?
On dit . . . en français [ɔ̃ di . . . ɑ̃ frɑ̃sɛ].	One says . . . in French.
Comment écrivez-vous . . . [kɔmɑ̃t ekrive vu]?	How do you spell . . .?
S'il vous plaît [sil vu plɛ].	If you please.
En anglais, en français [ɑ̃n ɑ̃glɛ, ɑ̃ frɑ̃sɛ].	In English, in French.
Pardon [pardɔ̃].	I beg your pardon.
N'est-ce pas [nɛ s pɑ]?	Isn't it so? Do you not? *etc.*

Grammatical Expressions

Le nom [lə nɔ̃], the noun
Le substantif [lə sypstɑ̃tif], the noun
L'adjectif [ladʒɛktif], the adjective
L'article défini [lartikl defini], the definite article
L'article indéfini [lartikl ɛ̃defini], the indefinite article
Le pronom [lə prɔnɔ̃], the pronoun
Le verbe [lə vɛrb], the verb
L'adverbe [ladvɛrb], the adverb
La préposition [la prepozisjɔ̃], the preposition
La conjonction [la kɔ̃ʒɔ̃ksjɔ̃], the conjunction

La conjugaison [la kɔ̃ʒygɛzɔ̃], the conjugation
La première conjugaison [la prəmjɛːr kɔ̃ʒygɛzɔ̃], the first conjugation
La deuxième conjugaison [la døzjɛm kɔ̃ʒygɛzɔ̃], the second conjugation
La troisième conjugaison [la trwazjɛm kɔ̃ʒygɛzɔ̃], the third conjugation
Les temps [le tɑ̃], the tenses
  le présent [lə prezɑ̃], the present
  l'imparfait [lɛ̃parfɛ], the imperfect
  le passé défini [lə pɑse defini], the past definite
  le futur [lə fytyːr], the future
  le conditionnel [lə kɔ̃disjɔnɛl], the conditional
  le passé indéfini [lə pɑse ɛ̃defini], the past indefinite, (present) perfect

La première personne [la prəmjɛːr pɛrsɔn], the first person
La deuxième personne [la døzjɛm pɛrsɔn], the second person
La troisième personne [la trwazjɛm pɛrsɔn], the third person

Au singulier [o sɛ̃gylje], in the singular
Au pluriel [o plyrjɛl], in the plural
Au masculin [o maskylɛ̃], in the masculine
Au féminin [o feminɛ̃], in the feminine

Le sujet [lə syʒɛ], the subject
Le complément direct [lə kɔ̃plemɑ̃ dirɛkt], the direct object
Le complément indirect [lə kɔ̃plemɑ̃ ɛ̃dirɛkt], the indirect object

À l'indicatif [a lɛ̃dikatif], in the indicative
Au subjonctif [o sybʒɔ̃ktif], in the subjunctive

L'adjectif s'accorde en genre et en nombre avec le nom.
[ladʒɛktif sakɔrd ɑ̃ ʒɑ̃ːr e ɑ̃ nɔ̃ːbr avɛk lə nɔ̃.]
The adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun.
Le verbe s'accorde en nombre et en personne avec le sujet.
[lə vɛrb sakɔrd ɑ̃ nɔ̃br e ɑ̃ pɛrsɔn avek lə syʒɛ.]
The verb agrees in number and person with the subject.

NOTE

All verbs in **–er,** except **aller** and **envoyer** are regular and conjugated like **donner.**

Verbs followed by (2) are conjugated like **finir.**

Verbs followed by (3) are conjugated like **vendre.**

Other than the above, all verbs are irregular and found in the list of Irregular Verbs, § 463.

à + *inf.* denotes verbs that require **à** before a following infinitive.

de + *inf.* denotes verbs that require **de** before a following infinitive.

à or **de** after certain verbs indicate that such verbs require **à** or **de** before a noun object.

BEGINNERS' FRENCH GRAMMAR

ABBREVIATIONS

adj.	adjective	*int.*	interrogative
adv.	adverb	*irreg.*	irregular
art.	article	*interj.*	interjection
aux.	auxiliary	*lit.*	literally
cf.	compare	*M.*	masculine
cond.	conditional	*m.*	masculine
condl.	conditional	*neg.*	negative
conj.	conjunction	*obj.*	object
def.	definite	*part.*	participle
dem.	demonstrative	*pers.*	person
dir.	direct	*pers.*	personal
e.g.	for example	*pl(ur).*	plural
=	equals, equaling	+	plus
etc.	and so forth	*poss.*	possessive
excl.	exclamation	*pp.*	past participle
F.	feminine	*prep.*	preposition
f.	feminine	*pres.*	present
fut.	future	*pron.*	pronoun
impers.	impersonal	*pron.*	pronominal
impf.	imperfect	*refl.*	reflexive
impve.	imperative	*reg.*	regular
imptv.	imperative	*rel.*	relative
ind.	indicative	*sing.*	singular
indef.	indefinite	*subj.*	subject
indir.	indirect	*subj.*	subjunctive
inf.	infinitive	*trans.*	transitive

( ) denote the method of translation, or are explanatory.
[ ] denote that words are to be omitted.

PART I

LESSON I

VOCABULARY

l'élève [elɛːv], *m. or f.*, the pupil, student.
et [e], *conj.*, and.
la fenêtre [fənɛːtr], the window.
Jean [ʒɑ̃], *m.*, John.
le livre [livr], the book.
Marie [mari], *f.*, Mary.
moi [mwa], me, to me (*form used after a positive imperative*).
montrer [mɔ̃tre], to show.
la plume [plym], the pen.
la porte [pɔrt], the door.
le professeur [prɔfɛsœːr], the teacher, professor.
voici [vwasi], *adv.*, here is (are).
voilà [vwala], *adv.*, there is (are); *excl.*, there.

36. Definite Article

Singular		Plural
Before a consonant	Before a vowel or a mute **h**	Before a vowel, a mute **h** or a consonant
m., **le** [lə] *f.*, **la** [la]	**l'** [l]	*m. and f.*, **les** [le] = 'the'

They are repeated before each word they modify.

les portes et les fenêtres the doors and (the) windows

37. General Rules

All nouns in French are either masculine or feminine. The gender of each noun should be memorized.

le livre, *m.*, the book **la plume,** *f.*, the pen

38. The plural of nouns is generally made by adding **s** to the singular.

élève, pupil **élèves,** pupils

39. À [a] = 'to'

À, = 'to,' 'at,' 'in,' etc. is used before the indirect noun object of a verb. It is repeated before each object and, though frequently omitted in English, it must always be expressed in French.

Donnez la plume à Marie. Give the pen to Mary (*or* Give Mary the pen).

40. **À** combines with the definite article as follows:

à + le = au	**au professeur**	to the teacher
à l' } *do not combine*	**à l'élève**	to the pupil
à la } *do not combine*	**à la plume**	to the pen
à + les = aux	**aux élèves**	to the pupils

41. **Regular Verb — First Conjugation**

Donner, 'to give'

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
donn**er** [dɔne], 'to give'	donn**ant** [dɔnɑ̃], 'giving'	donn**é** [dɔne], 'given'

42. Present Indicative

1. Declarative Form.	2. Interrogative Form.
'I give,' 'am giving,' 'do give,' etc.	'Do I give?' 'am I giving?'
Singular	
je donn**e** [ʒə dɔn]	donn**é**-je? [dɔnɛːʒ], est-ce que je donn**e** [ɛs kə ʒə dɔn]
tu donn**es** [ty dɔn]	donn**es**-tu? [dɔn ty]
il (elle) donn**e** [il (ɛl) dɔn]	donn**e**-t-il (elle)? [dɔn t il (ɛl)]
Plural	
nous donn**ons** [nu dɔnɔ̃]	donn**ons**-nous? [dɔnɔ̃ nu]
vous donn**ez** [vu dɔne]	donn**ez**-vous? [dɔne vu]
ils (elles) donn**ent** [il (ɛl) dɔn]	donn**ent**-ils (elles)? [dɔnt il (ɛl)]

43. Imperative

donn**e** [dɔn], 'give' (familiar form corresponding with **tu**)
donn**ons** [dɔnɔ̃], 'let us give,' 'let's give'
donn**ez** [dɔne], 'give' (usual form corresponding with **vous**)

Donnons les livres à Jean.	Let us give the books to John.
Donnez (donne) la plume à Marie.	Give the pen to Mary.

44. Pronouns of Address

1. **Vous.** This is the usual form of address in French and corresponds to the English 'you.' Like the English 'you' it is used both in the singular and plural, but it requires the verb to be in the second person plural.

2. **Tu.** This is the familiar or informal form of address used between members of the same family, very intimate friends, etc. Students should learn to recognize this form, but should use only the **vous** form for translating English 'you' into French.

45. Remarks

The following general remarks apply to all verbs:

1. Interrogative Form, first person, singular.

All verbs ending in a mute **e** in the first person singular change this mute **e** to **é** in the interrogative form.

je donne	**donné-je?**
je montre	**montré-je?**

The interrogative form commonly used, however, is **est-ce que** [ɛs kə], 'is it that,' placed before the declarative form.

je donne	**est-ce que je donne?** do I give?
je montre	**est-ce que je montre?** do I show?

2. Interrogative Form, third person, singular.

In all verbs in any tense that ends in a vowel in the third person singular there is inserted a **t** in the interrogative form between the verb and the pronoun subject.

donne-t-il?	does he give?
montre-t-elle?	does she show?

3. Third person plural.

Note that **-ent** in the third person plural of all verbs is silent. The final **t** is however pronounced upon a following vowel.

ils donnent [il dɔn] **donnent-ils?** [dɔn t il]

4. All verbs whose infinitive ends in **-er,** except **aller** [ale] 'to go' and **envoyer** [ãvwaje] 'to send,' are regular and conjugated like **donner.**

A. Reading Exercise

1. Je donne le livre à Marie. 2. Marie montre le livre au professeur. 3. Donne-t-elle le livre au professeur? 4. Nous donnons les livres à l'élève. 5. Les élèves montrent les livres et la plume à Jean. 6. Voici les livres et voilà la plume. 7. Montrez-moi la porte. 8. Voici la porte. 9. Montrez-moi les fenêtres. 10. Voilà les fenêtres. 11. Montrez la fenêtre à l'élève. 12. Montrez le livre au professeur. 13. Le professeur montre les livres aux élèves. 14. Les élèves donnent les livres et les plumes au professeur. 15. Voici les fenêtres et voilà les portes.

B. Grammatical Exercise

Give proper forms of the verbs whose infinitives are in parentheses:
1. Nous (donner) le livre à Jean. 2. (Montrer)-vous le livre au professeur? 3. (Montrer)-moi la porte. 4. (Donner) le livre au professeur. 5. Nous (donner) les livres à Jean. 6. Elles (montrer) les livres à Marie. 7. (Donner)-vous la plume à l'élève? 8. (Montrer)-t-il la plume au professeur? 9. L'élève (montrer) la porte au professeur. 10. Marie et Jean (donner) les livres aux élèves. 11. Je (donner) le livre à Jean. 12. Il (montrer) les livres au professeur. 13. Ils (donner) la plume au professeur. 14. (Montrer)-t-elle le livre à Jean? 15. (Donner)-nous la plume à Marie? 16. (Donner)-moi la plume. 17. (Montrer) le livre à Jean.

C. Oral Exercise

1. To the teacher. 2. To the pupils. 3. To John. 4. To the pupil. 5. To the teachers. 6. He gives and she gives. 7. I am

giving the book. 8. They give the pen. 9. We give the books. 10. You give the pens. 11. Do you give the pen and the book? 12. Does he give the pen? 13. She gives the book. 14. The teachers are giving the pens. 15. John and Mary give the book. 16. The teacher is giving the book. 17. John gives the pen. 18. Do we give the pens? 19. She gives the books. 20. They give the pens and the books. 21. They show the pens to the teacher. 22. Show me the window. 23. There is the window. 24. Show the books to the teacher. 25. Here are the books. 26. They are showing the pen to John. 27. John shows the pen to Mary. 28. Let us show the books to the teacher. 29. Let us give the pens to the pupils. 30. Here is the door, there are the windows.

D. Written Exercise

1. He is giving the book to John. 2. Does she give the pen to Mary? 3. Give me the books. 4. I am giving the books to the pupils. 5. Give me the pens. 6. We give the pens to the teachers. 7. You are giving the pen to the pupil. 8. The pupil gives the pen to the teacher. 9. The teacher gives the book to John. 10. John shows the book to Mary. 11. Show me the book, Mary. 12. Here is the book and there are the pens. 13. I show the books to the teacher. 14. Does he give the books to the pupils? 15. He gives the pen to John. 16. John, give me the pen. 17. John, show me the windows and the door. 18. Here is the door and there are the windows.

E. Written Exercise

1. Give the book to the teacher. 2. I give the books to the pupils. 3. Is she giving the pen to the teacher? 4. They give the pen and the book to the pupil. 5. You give the book to the pupils. 6. Are we giving the pen to the teacher? 7. Do they give the books to John? 8. John gives the pens to Mary. 9. The pupil gives the books and the pens to Mary. 10. The teacher shows the books to John. 11. He gives the pens to the pupils. 12. The pupil is showing the pen to Mary. 13. Let us give the book to John. 14. Let us show the pen to Mary. 15. We are giving the books to John. 16. They are giving the pens to the pupil. 17. Here are the pens, there is the book.

LESSON II

VOCABULARY

la classe [klɑːs], the class, classroom.
le crayon [krɛjɔ̃], the pencil.
dans [dɑ̃], *prep.*, in, into.
est [ɛ], (*3rd. sing. pres. of* **être** [ɛːtr], 'to be') is.
expliquer [ɛksplike], to explain.
fermer [fɛrme], to close, shut.
français [frɑ̃sɛ], *adj.*, French.
l'homme [ɔm], *m.*, the man.
la leçon [ləsɔ̃], the lesson.
non [nɔ̃], *adv.*, no.
où [u], *adv.*, where.
oui [wi], *adv.*, yes.
qui [ki], *rel. subj. pron.*, who, which, that; *int. pron.*, who, whom.
sont [sɔ̃], (*3rd. pl. pres. of* **être** [ɛːtr], 'to be') are.

46. Indefinite Article

Masculine	Feminine	
un [œ̃]	**une** [yn]	= 'a,' 'an,' 'one'

47. De [də], 'of,' 'about,' 'from'

De [də], 'of,' is used to form the possessive case or to translate the English apostrophe *s*.

le livre de Jean — John's book

48. De combines with the definite article as follows:

de + le = du	**du professeur**, the teacher's, of the teacher.
de l' } *do not combine*	**de l'homme**, the man's, of the man.
de la } *do not combine*	**de la plume**, the pen's, of the pen.
de + les = des	**des élèves**, the pupils', of the pupils.

49. Regular Verb — Second Conjugation

Finir, 'to finish'

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
fin **ir** [finiːr], 'to finish'	fin ***iss*** **ant** [finisɑ̃], 'finishing'	fin **i** [fini], 'finished'

50. Present Indicative

1. Declarative Form.	2. Interrogative Form.
'I finish,' 'am finishing,' 'do finish'	'Do I finish?' 'am I finishing?'
Singular	
je fin**is** [ʒə fini]	fin**is**-je? [fini:ʒ], est-ce que je fin**is** [ɛs kə ʒə fini]
tu fin**is** [ty fini]	fin**is**-tu? [fini ty]
il (elle) fin**it** [il (ɛl) fini]	fin**it**-il (elle)? [finit il (ɛl)]
Plural	
nous fin***iss*** **ons** [nu finisɔ̃]	fin***iss*** **ons**-nous? [finisɔ̃ nu]
vous fin***iss*** **ez** [vu finise]	fin***iss*** **ez**-vous? [finise vu]
ils (elles) fin***iss*** **ent** [il (ɛl) finis]	fin***iss*** **ent**-ils (elles)? [fin ist il (ɛl)]

51. Imperative

fin**is** [fini], 'finish' (familiar form corresponding with **tu**)
fin***iss*** **ons** [finisɔ̃], 'let us finish,' 'let's finish'
fin***iss*** **ez** [finise], 'finish' (usual form corresponding with **vous**)

Finissons les leçons.	Let's finish the lessons.
Finissez (finis) la leçon.	Finish the lesson.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Voici la classe de français. 2. Qui est dans la classe? 3. Le professeur et les élèves sont dans la classe. 4. Montrez-moi le professeur et les élèves. 5. Voilà le professeur et voilà les élèves. 6. Le professeur donne les livres aux élèves. 7. Les élèves finissent la leçon qui est dans le livre. 8. Qui explique la leçon aux élèves? 9. Le professeur explique la leçon aux élèves. 10. Donnez-moi les livres. 11. Expliquez-moi la leçon. 12. J'explique la leçon au professeur. 13. Nous expliquons la leçon au professeur. 14. Le professeur donne les plumes et les crayons aux élèves. 15. Montrez-moi les plumes. Voici les plumes. 16. Montrez-moi les crayons. Voici les crayons. 17. Jean et Marie qui sont dans la classe finissent la leçon. 18. Finissez-vous la leçon? 19. Oui, je finis la leçon. 20. Nous finissons la leçon. 21. Nous fermons les livres. 22. Nous donnons les livres au professeur. 23. Jean

donne le crayon au professeur. 24. Voici la plume de Marie et voilà le crayon de Jean.

B. Grammatical Exercise

Replace blanks with suitable form of finir: 1. Elle — la leçon. 2. —-vous les leçons? 3. Jean et Marie — la leçon. 4. —-il la leçon? 5. —-elle la leçon? 6. —-nous les leçons? 7. Je — la leçon. 8. —-ils les leçons? 9. — la leçon. 10. Nous — la leçon. 11. Vous — la leçon.

C. Oral Exercise

1. I am showing the pen to John. 2. Does he give the pen to Mary? 3. Are we giving the pens to the teacher? 4. You are finishing the lessons. 5. They are finishing the lessons. 6. She is giving the book to John. 7. We are giving the pen to the teacher. 8. They are finishing the books. 9. Give me the pen. 10. Give me the book. 11. Finish the lessons. 12. I am giving the pupil's book to Mary. 13. We are giving John's book to the teacher. 14. We are finishing the lessons. 15. Here is the book. 16. Give the book to the pupil. 17. There are the pens. 18. Give the pens to the man. 19. He is finishing the book. 20. Who is finishing the lesson? 21. John is finishing the lesson. 22. Mary is finishing the lesson. 23. The teacher is explaining the lessons to the pupils. 24. The pupils close the books. 25. They are giving the books to the teacher. 26. Give me the book. 27. Explain the lesson to me. 28. They are explaining the lessons. 29. Here are the teacher's books. 30. There is the teacher's pen. 31. Show me the book and the pen. 32. Here is the book, there is the pen. 33. Where are the pupils? They are in the class. 34. Show me the door and the windows. 35. Here is the door and there are the windows. 36. Here is the pencil. 37. Where is the pen? 38. Show me the pen. 39. There is the pen. 40. Here are the doors and there are the windows.

D. Written Exercise

1. The teacher gives the books to the pupils. 2. The pupils finish the lesson which is in the book. 3. They close the books. 4. Who explains the lesson to the pupils? 5. The teacher explains the lesson to the pupils. 6. Are you finishing the lesson? 7. Yes,

I am finishing the lesson. 8. John is finishing the lesson. 9. He explains the lesson to Mary. 10. Who gives the book to John? 11. Mary gives the book to John. 12. She gives the pens to John. 13. Here are the pens. 14. John gives the pens to the pupil. 15. The pupil gives the pens to the teacher. 16. Show me the pens. 17. Here are the pens. 18. Where is the pupil? 19. He is in the class. 20. John and Mary are in the class. 21. The pupils are in the class. 22. Let us give the books to the pupils. 23. Here are the books. 24. The teacher is giving the books to the pupils. 25. Let us show the books to John.

E. Written Exercise

1. Here is the book. 2. I give the book to the teacher. 3. He gives the book to Mary. 4. Mary closes the book. 5. She explains the lesson to John. 6. John and Mary are finishing the lessons. 7. They give the book to the teacher. 8. Here are the pupils' books. 9. The pupils close the books. 10. The teacher explains the lessons to the pupils. 11. There is the teacher's pen. 12. Does he give the pen to Mary? 13. No, he gives the pencil to Mary. 14. He gives the pen to John. 15. John gives the teacher's pen to a pupil who is in the class. 16. Mary gives the teacher's pencil to John. 17. Here is the pencil. 18. I am showing the pencil to the pupils. 19. Where are the pupils? 20. They are in the class-room. 21. Here is the door of the class-room. 22. There are the windows. 23. Show me the door. 24. Here is the door and there are the windows. 25. Let us close the windows.

LESSON III

VOCABULARY

l'ami [ami], *m.*, the friend.
l'amie [ami], *f.*, the friend.
assis [asi], (*pp. of* **asseoir**), *adj.*, seated.
aussi [osi], *adv.*, also, too.
la chaise [ʃɛːz], the chair.
compter [kɔ̃te], to count, intend.
debout [dəbu], *adv.*, standing.
derrière [dɛrjɛːr], *prep.*, behind.
devant [dəvɑ̃], *prep.*, in front of, before.
étudier [etydje], to study.
parler [parle], to speak.
la table [tabl], the table.

52. Negative

The negative is expressed in French by putting **ne** before the verb and **pas** after it. The **e** of **ne** is dropped and replaced by an apostrophe before verb forms beginning with a vowel.

Nous ne finissons pas le livre.	We are not finishing the book.
Vous ne donnez pas la plume.	You do not give the pen.
Il n'a pas le livre.	He has not the book.

53. Regular Verb — Third Conjugation

Vendre, 'to sell'

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
vend **re** [vɑ̃:dr], 'to sell'	vend **ant** [vɑ̃dɑ̃], 'selling'	vend **u** [vɑ̃dy], 'sold'

54. Present Indicative

1. Declarative Form.	2. Interrogative Form.
'I sell,' 'am selling,' 'do sell'	'Do I sell?' 'am I selling?'
Singular	
je vend **s** [ʒə vɑ̃]	vend **s**-je? [vɑ̃:ʒ], est-ce que je vend **s**, [ɛs kə ʒə vɑ̃]
tu vend **s** [ty vɑ̃]	vend **s**-tu? [vɑ̃ ty]
il (elle) vend [il (ɛl) vɑ̃]	vend-il (elle)? [vɑ̃t il (ɛl)]
Plural	
nous vend **ons** [nu vɑ̃dɔ̃]	vend **ons**-nous? [vɑ̃dɔ̃ nu]
vous vend **ez** [vu vɑ̃de]	vend **ez**-vous? [vɑ̃de vu]
ils (elles) vend **ent** [il (ɛl) vɑ̃:d]	vend **ent**-ils (elles)? [vɑ̃d t il (ɛl)]

55. Imperative

vend **s** [vɑ̃] 'sell,' (familiar form corresponding with **tu**)
vend **ons** [vɑ̃dɔ̃] 'let us sell,' 'let's sell'
vend **ez** [vɑ̃de] 'sell,' (usual form corresponding with **vous**)

Vendons les chaises à l'homme.	Let's sell the chairs to the man.
Vendez (vends) la plume.	Sell the pen.

56. Numerals

un [œ̃], *m.*, **une** [yn], *f.*, one, a, an	**trois** [trwɑ], three
deux [dø], two	**quatre** [katr], four
	cinq [sɛ̃:k], five

A. Reading Exercise

1. Qui parle? 2. Le professeur parle. 3. Il parle des leçons une, deux et trois. 4. Parlez-moi de la leçon. 5. Le professeur explique les trois leçons aux élèves. 6. Expliquez-moi la leçon. 7. Les élèves finissent les leçons. 8. Finissez la leçon. 9. Finissez-vous la leçon? 10. Oui, et Jean finit la leçon aussi. 11. Marie et Jean finissent la leçon. 12. Ils finissent la leçon trois. 13. Ils ne finissent pas la leçon quatre. 14. Ils ferment les livres. 15. Fermez les livres. 16. Ils donnent les livres au professeur. 17. Donnez-vous le livre à Jean? 18. Non, je ne donne pas le livre à Jean. 19. Je donne le livre au professeur. 20. Montrez-moi la chaise du professeur. 21. Voilà la chaise du professeur. 22. La chaise du professeur est devant la table. 23. Le professeur est assis. 24. Il parle à un ami qui est dans la classe. 25. L'ami du professeur vend les crayons aux élèves. 26. Il vend aussi les plumes. 27. Vendez-moi un livre. 28. Vendons les crayons et les plumes. 29. Voici les crayons et voilà les plumes. 30. L'homme donne une plume à Jean. 31. Il donne un crayon à Marie. 32. Où sont Jean et Marie? 33. Ils sont dans la classe. 34. Ils sont assis devant le professeur.

B. Grammatical Exercise

I. *Replace each blank with a suitable form of* **donner, vendre** *or* ***finir:*** 1. —-ils les livres aux professeurs? 2. Nous — la plume à l'élève. 3. Je — la leçon. 4. Vous — les livres. 5. Elle — les leçons. 6. —-nous les chaises aux hommes? 7. Je — le livre à l'homme. 8. — le livre. 9. — la chaise. 10. — la plume à Jean.

II. *Replace blanks with a suitable noun, pronoun or article:* 1. — donne — livre — professeur. 2. — vendons — chaises. 3. — finit — livre. 4. — finissons — leçons. 5. — finissez — deux livres. 6. — vends — plumes. 7. Vendez — plumes. 8. — finis — leçon.

9. — vend — chaises. 10. — vendent — livre et — plume à l'élève. 11. — finissent les leçons.

III. *Replace blanks with suitable form of* **de** *or* **à** *and the article:* 1. Il donne le livre — homme. 2. Vous finissez le livre — professeur. 3. Elle vend la plume — élève. 4. Nous donnons les plumes — hommes. 5. Je vends un livre — homme. 6. Elle donne les plumes — élèves. 7. Il vend les livres — élèves. 8. Nous finissons les leçons — professeurs. 9. Ils vendent les plumes — professeurs. 10. Vous donnez les livres — élève — professeur.

C. Oral Exercise

1. The teacher is talking to the pupils. 2. He is talking about the lesson. 3. He shows the books to the pupils. 4. He gives the books to the pupils. 5. Do they close the books? 6. No, they do not close the books. 7. They are studying the lessons. 8. They close the books. 9. They explain the lessons to the teacher. 10. Who sells the pen to the teacher? 11. The man sells the pen to the teacher. 12. He sells the chair to the teacher also. 13. There is the chair. 14. Let us sell the chair to the man. 15. I am selling a book to John. 16. Don't sell the book to Mary. 17. Mary and John are selling the books. 18. They are not giving the books to the pupils. 19. There are the pupils' books. 20. Here is Mary's pen. 21. Mary is a friend of John. 22. She is giving the pen to John. 23. We are selling the pens to the men. 24. The men sell the pens to the pupils. 25. Sell the pen to me. 26. Count from one to five. 27. Here is the pen and there are the books. 28. Are you giving the books to the pupils? 29. No, I am showing the books to the pupils. 30. Where are the pupils? 31. They are seated in the class. 32. They are seated in front of the teacher's table. 33. The teacher is standing behind the table. 34. He is explaining the lesson to the pupils.

D. Written Exercise

1. We are finishing (the) lesson three. 2. The teacher is explaining (the) lesson three to the pupils. 3. They are studying (the) lesson three. 4. They are not studying (the) lesson four. 5. The pupils close the books. 6. Do they give the books to the teacher? 7. No, they do not give the books to the teacher. 8. They sell

the books to the man. 9. The men sell the books and the pens. 10. They sell four books and five pens. 11. Sell me one pen and two books. 12. Do not sell the pen to Mary. 13. I am giving a pen to Mary. 14. Are you giving a pen to John? 15. No, I am giving a book to John.

E. Written Exercise

1. Where are the chairs? 2. They are in the class-room. 3. Here is the teacher's chair and there are the pupils' chairs. 4. Who is the man in the class-room? 5. The man is a friend of the teacher. 6. He is selling the pens to the pupils. 7. He is also selling the pencils to the pupils. 8. He is not selling the books to the pupils. 9. The teacher gives the books to the pupils. 10. The pupils are studying the lessons in the books. 11. John and Mary are studying (the) lesson three. 12. Mary and John are finishing the lesson. 13. Give the pens to the teacher. 14. Let us give the books to the teacher too. 15. The books are on the table. 16. There are the pupils' books. 17. Here is the teacher's book.

LESSON IV

VOCABULARY

avec [avɛk], *prep.*, with.
la bonté [bõte], the kindness.
dit [di], says.
l'exercice [egzɛrsis], *m.*, the exercise.
la grammaire [gramɛ:r], the grammar.
il y a [il j a], there is, there are (*simple statement of fact*).
maintenant [mẽtnɑ̃], *adv.*, now.
mais [mɛ], *conj.*, but.
que [kə], *conj.*, that.
la salle [sal], the (large) room, hall; — **de classe,** the class, class-room.
sur [syr], *prep.*, on, upon.

Note. — **Que,** *conj.*, is never omitted in French, as is frequently the conjunction 'that' in English.

Il dit que la leçon est facile. He says (that) the lesson is easy.

57. Avoir, 'to have'

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
avoir [avwa:r], 'to have'	**ayant** [ɛjɑ̃], 'having'	**eu** [y], 'had'

58. Present Indicative

1. Declarative Form. 'I have,' etc.	2. Interrogative Form. 'Have I?' etc.
j'ai [ʒe]	**ai-je?** [ɛiʒ], est-ce que **j'ai** [ɛs kə ʒe]
tu as [ty a]	**as-tu?** [a ty]
il a [il a]	**a-t-il?** [a t il]
nous avons [nuz avɔ̃]	**avons-nous?** [avɔ̃ nu]
vous avez [vuz ave]	**avez-vous?** [ave vu]
ils ont [ilz ɔ̃]	**ont-ils?** [ɔ̃t il]

Imperative

aie [ɛ] 'have,' (familiar form corresponding with **tu**)
ayons [ɛjɔ̃] 'let us have,' 'let's have'
ayez [ɛje] 'have,' (usual form corresponding with **vous**)

Ayons du courage.	Let us have courage.
Ayez (aie) la bonté de fermer la porte.	Have the kindness to shut the door.

59. *Voilà* and *il y a*

Voilà: 'there is (*or* are)' points out.
Il y a: 'there is (*or* are)' is a mere statement of fact.

Voilà les livres.	There are the books.
Il y a deux livres sur ma table.	There are two books on my table.

60. Past Indefinite

The most commonly used past tense in French is the Past Indefinite. It is made up of the present tense of the auxiliary (**avoir** for all transitive verbs) and the past participle. It is used to translate the English simple past, emphatic past with 'did' and the present perfect.

j'ai donné, 'I gave,' 'did give,' 'have given'
il a fini, 'he finished,' 'did finish,' 'has finished'
ils ont vendu, 'they sold,' 'did sell,' 'have sold'

61. Past Participle

The Past Participle of all regular verbs is as follows:

If Infinitive ends in	Past Participle ends in
–er	**–é**
–ir	**–i**
–re	**–u**

Examples:

donner	**donné**
finir	**fini**
vendre	**vendu**

62. In all compound tenses in negative declarative sentences the **ne** is placed after the subject and the **pas** after the auxiliary.

Elle n'a pas donné le livre à Jean. She didn't give the book to John.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Il y a trois portes dans la salle de classe. 2. Il y a aussi cinq fenêtres. 3. Un élève a fermé les fenêtres. 4. Qui a fermé la porte? 5. Les élèves n'ont pas fermé la porte. 6. Fermez la porte maintenant et étudiez la leçon. 7. Avez-vous étudié la leçon? 8. Nous n'avons pas étudié la leçon cinq. 9. Nous avons étudié la leçon quatre. 10. Le professeur a donné les quatre leçons aux élèves. 11. Qui étudie la leçon? 12. Les élèves étudient la leçon. 13. Jean étudie la leçon avec Marie. 14. Avez-vous fini l'exercice? 15. Je n'ai pas fini l'exercice. 16. Mais Marie a fini l'exercice. 17. Finissez l'exercice et fermez la grammaire. 18. Nous finissons l'exercice et nous fermons la grammaire. 19. Sur la table du professeur il y a quatre livres, trois crayons et deux plumes. 20. Qui a vendu les plumes au professeur? 21. L'homme a vendu les plumes au professeur. 22. Les élèves ont donné les livres au professeur. 23. Avez-vous un crayon? 24. J'ai un crayon et une plume. 25. Avez-vous un livre? 26. Voici deux livres. 27. Donnez-moi un livre. 28. Et donnez un livre à Jean. 29. A-t-il fini le livre? 30. Non, il n'a pas fini le livre.

B. Grammatical Exercise

I. *Replace the blanks with a suitable form of* **avoir:** 1. Il — fini l'exercice. 2. —-elles étudié les leçons? 3. Vous — les livres. 4. Elle

— la plume. 5. —-nous fermé les portes? 6. Les élèves — les livres. 7. J'— donné le crayon à l'élève. 8. Ils — vendu les chaises. 9. Marie — le crayon et la plume. 10. Le professeur — fermé la grammaire.

II. *Replace the blanks with a suitable form of* ***donner, étudier, fermer, vendre*** *or* ***finir:*** 1. — les leçons. 2. Il a — les exercices. 3. — la fenêtre. 4. Qui a — le crayon? 5. Vous avez — les chaises. 6. Elles ont — les plumes. 7. J'ai — les quatre leçons. 8. Jean a — le livre à Marie. 9. Les professeurs ont — les livres. 10. Elle a — la leçon. 11. — la grammaire à Jean. 12. — les chaises. 13. Nous avons — les leçons. 14. Jean et Marie ont — les livres au professeur. 15. Qui a — les portes et les fenêtres?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Has he studied the lessons? 2. They have given the books to the teacher. 3. I did not give the books to the pupil. 4. He says (that) there are three books on the table. 5. John has shut the windows. 6. Mary has shut the door. 7. There is the door. 8. Here are the windows. 9. The teacher has the book. 10. We have the pencils. 11. And they have the pens. 12. Who has finished the exercise? 13. They have not finished the exercise. 14. They have studied four lessons. 15. In the class-room there are two doors. 16. There are also four windows in the class-room. 17. The teacher says: study the grammar. 18. Now give the book to the teacher. 19. Shut the door. 20. She has shut the door. 21. They have studied the lesson. 22. We have given the book to the teacher. 23. The teacher has finished the book. 24. He is giving the book and the pencil to Mary. 25. She is finishing the exercise. 26. Let us have the books.

D. Written Exercise

1. We have studied four lessons. 2. We have closed the books. 3. The teacher has explained three lessons. 4. Now he is explaining the grammar to the pupils. 5. Have you finished (the) lesson four? 6. No, I have not finished (the) lesson four. 7. John says (that) he has finished the exercise. 8. He is talking about the lesson to Mary. 9. They are studying the lesson. 10. Study the lesson and close the book. 11. Explain the lesson to me. 12. Shut

the door. 13. There are three doors in the class-room. 14. There are also three windows. 15. Close the windows too.

E. Written Exercise

1. Here are the pen and the pencil. 2. The teacher gives the pen to John. 3. He gives the pencil to Mary. 4. Mary and John give the books to the teacher. 5. There are the books on the teacher's table. 6. There are five books on the table. 7. The teacher is speaking. 8. He is speaking about the lessons to the pupils. 9. He is explaining the four lessons. 10. Where is the teacher? 11. He is seated in the chair behind the table. 12. There is the teacher's chair. 13. The man sold the chair to the teacher. 14. He sold the books to the pupils too. 15. The pupils are studying the grammar. 16. Have they finished the exercises? 17. No, the teacher says (that) they have not finished the exercises. 18. John is studying with Mary. 19. They are studying (the) lesson four. 20. They have finished (the) lesson three. 21. They are talking about the grammar. 22. They close the books. 23. They give the books to the teacher.

LESSON V

VOCABULARY

s'asseoir [saswaːr], to sit down, be seated; **asseyez-vous** [aseje vu], *imptv.*, sit down, be seated; **asseyons-nous** [asejɔ̃ nu], *imptv.*, let us sit down, let us be seated.

aujourd'hui [oʒurdɥi], *adv.*, today.

difficile [difisil], *adj.*, difficult, hard.

facile [fasil], *adj.*, easy.

ici [isi], *adv.*, here.

la minute [minyt], the minute.

(le) **monsieur** [məsjø], (*pl.*, **messieurs** [mesjø]), the gentleman, sir, Mr.

ou [u], *conj.*, or.

ouvrir [uvriːr], to open; **ouvrez** [uvre], *imptv.*, open.

parce que [pars(ə) kə], *conj.*, because.

pour [pur], *prep.*, for, to, in order to.

pourquoi [purkwa], *conj.*, why.

le pupitre [pypitr], the desk.

que [kə], *int. pron.*, what.

Idiom

depuis quand [dəpɥi kɑ̃], (*lit.* since when), how long.

63. Auxiliary Verb *Être*, 'to be'

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
être [ɛːtr], 'to be'	**étant** [etɑ̃], 'being'	**été** [ete], 'been'

64. Present Indicative

1. Declarative Form. 'I am,' etc.
2. Interrogative Form. 'Am I?' etc.

Singular

je suis [ʒə sɥi]	**suis-je** [sɥiː ʒ], est-ce que je **suis** [ɛs kə ʒə sɥi]
tu es [ty ɛ]	**es-tu** [ɛ ty]
il (elle) est [il (ɛl) ɛ]	**est-il (elle)** [ɛt il (ɛl)]

Plural

nous sommes [nu sɔm]	**sommes-nous** [sɔm nu]
vous êtes [vuz ɛːt]	**êtes-vous** [ɛːt vu]
ils (elles) sont [il (ɛl) sɔ̃]	**sont-ils (elles)** [sɔ̃t il (ɛl)]

65. Imperative

sois [swa], 'be,' (familiar form corresponding with **tu**)
soyons [swajɔ̃], 'let us be,' 'let's be'
soyez [swaje], 'be,' (usual form corresponding with **vous**)

Soyons sages.	Let us be good.
Soyez (sois) ici aujourd'hui.	Be here today.

66. Interrogative Form

To form a question in French, the following methods may be used:

1. If the subject is a pronoun:

(*a*) Put subject after verb as in English.

Avez-vous étudié la leçon?	Have you studied the lesson?
Est-elle ici?	Is she here?

(*b*) or, put **est-ce que** before the declarative form, replacing the **e** of **que** by an apostrophe before a vowel:

Est-ce que vous avez étudié la leçon?	Have you studied the lesson?
Est-ce qu'elle est ici?	Is she here?

2. If the subject is a noun:

(*a*) Begin with the noun subject and repeat the subject after the verb by a suitable pronoun:

Jean, est-il ici?	Is John here?
Marie, a-t-elle étudié la leçon?	Has Mary studied the lesson?
Le professeur et les élèves, sont-ils dans la classe?	Are the teacher and the pupils in the class-room?

(*b*) or, put **est-ce que** before the declarative form, replacing the **e** of **que** by an apostrophe before a vowel:

Est-ce que Jean est ici?	Is John here?
Est-ce qu'Albert a étudié la leçon?	Has Albert studied the lesson?
Est-ce que le professeur et les élèves sont dans la classe?	Are the teacher and the pupils in the class-room?

67. Position of **est-ce que**:

Est-ce que is placed in the French sentence in the position that its equivalent 'is it that?' would occupy in the English sentence:

Why is John seated?
Why (is it that) John is seated?
Pourquoi est-ce que Jean est assis?

Where did John study the lesson?
Where (is it that) John studied the lesson?
Où est-ce que Jean a étudié la leçon?

What is there on the table?
What (is it that) there is on the table?
Qu'est-ce qu'il y a sur la table?

68. **N'est-ce pas** [nɛs pɑ] (*lit.*, 'is it not so?'), may follow any declarative statement and thereby form a question as does

the English equivalent: 'isn't he?', 'haven't they?', 'aren't you?', 'doesn't she?', etc.:

Vous avez étudié la leçon, n'est-ce pas?	You have studied the lesson, haven't you?

69. Numerals

six [sis], six	**neuf** [nœf], nine
sept [sɛt], seven	**dix** [dis], ten
huit [ɥit], eight	

70. The final consonants in the numerals from **cinq** to **dix** inclusive are pronounced except when they measure a following noun beginning with a consonant or aspirate **h.**

cinq élèves [sɛ̃ːk elɛːv]	**cinq chaises** [sɛ̃ ʃɛːz]
huit hommes [ɥit ɔm]	**huit livres** [ɥi liːvr]

71. Idiomatic Present Indicative

Unlike the English, the present tense in French is always used to represent an activity or state which began in the past and still continues. In such constructions 'for' or 'since' are translated by **depuis.**

Je suis ici depuis dix minutes.	I have been here for ten minutes (and I still am here).
Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?	How long have you been here?

A. Reading Exercise

1. Nous avons la leçon cinq pour aujourd'hui. 2. Elle n'est pas difficile. 3. La leçon quatre a été facile aussi. 4. Le professeur parle aux élèves. 5. — Jean, où est la leçon? 6. — Voici la leçon, Monsieur. 7. — Avez-vous étudié la leçon? 8. — Oui, Monsieur, j'ai étudié la leçon. 9. Où est Jean? 10. Il est dans la classe. 11. Il est assis devant le pupitre. 12. Le professeur est debout devant la classe. 13. Est-ce que les élèves ont étudié la leçon? 14. Oui et ils donnent les exercices au professeur. 15. Le professeur et les élèves parlent de la leçon. 16. Pourquoi est-ce que

Marie ne parle pas? 17. Parce qu'elle n'a pas fini la leçon. 18. Est-ce que Marie est une élève? 19. Oui, Marie est une élève aussi. 20. Le professeur donne une plume et un crayon à l'élève. 21. Est-ce que le professeur a donné un livre à Marie? 22. Oui, il a donné la grammaire à Marie et elle étudie la leçon. 23. Est-ce que Jean a fini la leçon? 24. Oui, et maintenant Marie a fini la leçon aussi. 25. Où sont les chaises? 26. Est-ce que les chaises sont ici? 27. Voici les chaises des élèves. 28. Est-ce que les élèves sont assis ou debout? 29. Ils sont assis. 30. Est-ce qu'il y a une plume sur la table du professeur? 31. Oui, et il y a aussi deux livres sur la table.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Avez-vous étudié la leçon? 2. Est-elle facile? 3. Est-ce que la leçon quatre a été facile aussi? 4. À qui est-ce que le professeur parle? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'il dit à Jean? 6. Est-ce que Jean a étudié la leçon? 7. Où est Jean? 8. Est-il ici? 9. Est-il devant ou derrière le pupitre? 10. Où est le professeur? 11. Est-il debout ou assis? 12. Est-il devant ou derrière la table? 13. Est-ce que les élèves sont assis? 14. Qui parle? 15. Marie, a-t-elle fini la leçon? 16. Est-ce que Marie est une élève de la classe? 17. Est-ce que le professeur donne un livre à l'élève? 18. Qui donne un livre à Marie? 19. Est-ce que Marie étudie la leçon? 20. Jean, a-t-il fini la leçon? 21. Avez-vous fini la leçon? 22. Où sont les chaises? 23. Y a-t-il deux livres sur la table du professeur?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Where are we? 2. We are in the class. 3. How long have we been in the class? 4. We have been in the class for ten minutes. 5. Where are you? 6. I am seated. 7. I am studying the lesson. 8. I have been studying the lesson for five minutes. 9. Why is John not studying the lesson? 10. Because he has finished the lesson. 11. Be seated. 12. Let us be seated. 13. Where are the books? 14. They are not on the table. 15. They are on the teacher's desk. 16. Is the teacher seated or standing? 17. He is standing. 18. How long has he been standing? 19. He has been standing for eight minutes. 20. Now he is speaking to the class. 21. He is speaking of the lessons. 22. Where is John? 23. John is in the

class. 24. Is John seated or standing? 25. He is seated before the desk. 26. He is studying the lesson. 27. The lesson is hard. 28. What does the teacher give Mary? 29. He gives a pencil to Mary. 30. He gave a pen to John. 31. Why is John not speaking? 32. Because he has not studied the lesson. 33. What is there on the table? 34. The teacher's books are on the table.

D. Grammatical Exercise

Translate in two ways: 1. Is he not here? 2. Are they not here too? 3. Has John studied the lesson? 4. Is Mary not speaking? 5. Are there two books on the table? 6. Has the pupil finished the book? 7. Does he give two books to John? 8. Why has the teacher the books? 9. Why have we spoken to the teacher? 10. What has he given to the pupils? 11. Have they the pens and the pencils? 12. What is there on the desk? 13. Are there two books on the desk?

E. Written Exercise

1. John and Mary are in the class. 2. The teacher says to the pupils: Be seated. 3. Now they are seated before the desks. 4. On John's desk there is a book. 5. John is not studying the lesson. 6. He is speaking to the pupil. 7. Why is John not studying? 8. Because he says that he has finished the lesson. 9. The lesson is easy. 10. Mary is studying the lesson. 11. Now she gives the book to the teacher. 12. Where is the teacher? 13. The teacher is seated behind the table. 14. He has been seated behind the table for ten minutes. 15. Are there two pencils on the table? 16. Yes, there are also two books on the table. 17. The books have been on the table for five minutes. 18. One of the books is a grammar.

F. Written Exercise

1. I have not sold the books. 2. I have given the books to the pupils. 3. Who has finished the lesson? 4. We have not finished the lesson. 5. Here is the book and there is the pencil. 6. The teacher did not give the book to Mary. 7. He gave the book to John. 8. Why did the teacher give John the book? 9. He also gave John a pen and a pencil. 10. John, give me the book. 11. John is not with Mary. 12. Mary is speaking to the teacher. 13. She

has studied (the) lesson five. 14. She has also studied (the) lesson four. 15. The teacher says to John: Now be seated. 16. Close the door and open the window.

LESSON VI

VOCABULARY

anglais [ãglɛ], *adj.*, English.
la **boîte** [bwa:t], the box.
carré [kare], *adj.*, square.
la **craie** [krɛ], the chalk.
écrire [ekri:r], to write; **écrit** [ekri], *3rd. sing. pres. and pp.*, writes, written; **écrivez** [ekrive], *imptv.*, write.
faire [fɛ:r], to do, make; **fait** [fɛ], *3rd. sing. pres. and pp.*, does, done.
le **morceau** [mɔrso], the piece, selection (*of music*).
noir [nwa:r], *adj.*, black.
la **phrase** [fro:z], the sentence, phrase.
que [kə], *rel. obj. pron.*, whom, that, which.
le **tableau** [tablo], the picture, blackboard; — **noir,** blackboard; **au** —, on the blackboard.
très [trɛ], *adv.*, very.

Note. — **Que,** *rel. obj. pron.*, is never omitted in French, as is frequently the relative object pronoun in English.

L'exercice qu'il écrit. The exercise (that) he is writing.

Adjectives

(Learn the adjectives in the lists below.)

72. Gender. The feminine of adjectives is generally made by adding **e** to the masculine form. Adjectives ending in **e** remain unchanged.

Masculine	*Feminine*	
grand [grã]	**grand e** [grãd]	tall, large, great
petit [pəti, pti]	**petit e** [pətit, ptit]	small, little
court [ku:r]	**court e** [kurt]	short
joli [ʒɔli]	**joli e** [ʒɔli]	pretty
mauvais [mɔvɛ]	**mauvais e** [mɔvɛ:z]	bad, poor
jeune [ʒœn]	**jeune** [ʒœn]	young

73. Exceptions. 1. Some adjectives double their final consonant before adding **e**.

Masculine	*Feminine*	
bon [bɔ̃]	**bonne** [bɔn]	good, kind
gros [gro]	**grosse** [groːs]	big, large, fat
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃]	**ancienne** [ɑ̃sjɛn]	old, former

2. Some adjectives change the final **f** to **v**; **x** to **s**; **g** to **gu**; **c** to **ch** before adding **e**.

Masculine	*Feminine*	
neuf [nœf]	**neuve** [nœːv]	new (*i.e.*, unused)
heureux [œrø]	**heureuse** [œrøːz]	happy, fortunate
long [lɔ̃]	**longue** [lɔ̃ːg]	long
blanc [blɑ̃]	**blanche** [blɑ̃ːʃ]	white

3. Some adjectives with **e** before the final consonant change this **e** to **è** in the feminine form.

Masculine	*Feminine*	
cher [ʃɛːr]	**chère** [ʃɛːr]	dear, expensive

4. The following adjectives have two forms in the masculine:

Masculine		*Feminine*	
Before a consonant	Before a vowel or **h** mute		
beau [bo]	**bel** [bɛl]	**belle** [bɛl]	fine, handsome, beautiful
nouveau [nuvo]	**nouvèl** [nuvɛl]	**nouvelle** [nuvɛl]	new (*i.e.*, another, recent)
vieux [vjø]	**vieil** [vjɛːj]	**vieille** [vjɛːj]	old

74. Number. The plural of adjectives is generally made by adding **s** to the singular. Adjectives ending in **s** remain unchanged.

Singular		*Plural*		
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	
vilain [vilɛ̃]	**vilaine** [vilɛːn]	**vilains**	**vilaines**	ugly
gros	**grosse**	**gros**	**grosses**	large

La Fontaine Médicis en Hiver

75. Agreement. Adjectives (including participial adjectives) agree in gender and number with the noun they modify. In the case of two nouns of different gender modified by the same adjective, the adjective normally follows both nouns and is made masculine plural, the nouns being so arranged that the masculine noun is nearest the adjective.

La leçon et l'exercice français.	The French lesson and exercise.
Marie est assise.	Mary is seated.

76. Position. The following very common adjectives given in this lesson usually precede the noun:

beau, bon, gros, long, vieux, grand, petit, jeune, joli, mauvais, vilain

Une mauvaise plume.	A poor pen.

Other adjectives, especially those denoting color, shape, and nationality usually follow the noun.

Le crayon noir.	The black pencil.
Une table carrée.	A square table.
Le livre français.	The French book.

NOTE. — An adjective of nationality is not capitalized, unless used substantively of persons.

Un Anglais.	An Englishman.
Le français.	The French (language).

A. READING EXERCISE

1. Où sont les élèves? 2. Ils sont dans la classe. 3. Ils sont assis derrière les pupitres. 4. Où est le professeur? 5. Il est aussi dans la classe. 6. La salle de classe est grande. 7. Les élèves étudient la leçon. 8. La leçon est difficile. 9. Elle est très longue. 10. Les longues leçons ne sont pas faciles. 11. Pour les bons élèves, les longues leçons sont faciles. 12. Jean est un très bon élève. 13. Marie est une bonne élève aussi. 14. Elle est jeune et jolie. 15. Jean est grand et beau. 16. Jean n'est pas assis. 17. Il est debout devant le tableau noir. 18. Qu'est-ce qu'il fait? Il écrit quatre phrases françaises au tableau noir. 19. Il écrit les phrases avec un morceau de craie. 20 La craie est blanche. 21. La craie

est dans une petite boîte carrée. 22. Maintenant, Jean a écrit les phrases. 23. Le professeur explique les phrases à la classe. 24. Le professeur n'est pas vieux; il est très jeune. 25. Il est debout devant la classe et il parle de la leçon.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Où sont les élèves? 2. Sont-ils assis on debout? 3. Est-ce que la salle de classe est grande? 4. Les élèves, étudient-ils? 5. Est-ce que la leçon est courte? 6. Est-elle facile? 7. Avez-vous étudié la leçon six? 8. La leçon six, est-elle longue? 9. Pour qui, les longues leçons sont-elles faciles? 10. Est-ce que les mauvais élèves ont étudié les leçons? 11. Est-ce que Marie est une bonne élève? 12. Est-elle vieille et vilaine? 13. Jean, est-il grand et beau? 14. Où est le professeur? 15. Le professeur est vieux, n'est-ce pas? 16. Est-il assis ou debout? 17. Est-ce que le professeur parle aux élèves?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Supply the proper form of the adjective in French for the italicised words: 1. Les *good* élèves. 2. Le *old* man. 3. Marie est *small.* 4. La leçon est *short.* 5. Jean et Marie sont *young.* 6. Jean est *handsome.* 7. Marie est *beautiful.* 8. La *long* leçon est *easy.* 9. La plume est *poor.* 10. Marie n'est pas *ugly.* 11. Le professeur est *tall* et *fat.*

D. Oral Exercise

1. The lessons are short. 2. They are also very easy. 3. The little pupil (*f.*) is pretty. 4. The teacher is not young. 5. He is short and fat. 6. Did the teacher give John a beautiful book? 7. He gave Mary a pretty book too. 8. The pupils are good. 9. The old man is not here. 10. He is in the large class-room. 11. Why is the teacher not speaking? 12. Because he has finished the French lesson (lesson of French). 13. Where are John and Mary? 14. Are they not in the class-room? 15. Are the long lessons easy? 16. The French lessons (that) I am studying are easy. 17. The English lessons are not easy. 18. Give me the black pencils. 19. Write the French exercise. 20. The French teacher (teacher of French) is seated. 21. Mary is English. 22. She is young and pretty.

E. Written Exercise

1. Mary is a pupil of the French class (class of French). 2. She is small and very pretty. 3. She is studying (the) lesson six. 4. She has finished five long lessons. 5. Is she seated or standing? 6. She is seated before a desk. 7. On the desk there is a big black book. 8. The book is a French grammar. 9. The lesson that Mary is studying is in the book. 10. There is a new pen on Mary's desk. 11. John is also a pupil of the French class. 12. He is tall and handsome. 13. Mary is not very tall. 14. John is a good pupil and Mary is a good pupil too. 15. The teacher says to John: Write the French sentence on the blackboard. 16. He explains to the pupils that John is writing the sentence. 17. The teacher is seated behind a square table. 18. John is standing in front of the teacher.

F. Written Exercise

1. Where is the teacher? 2. Is he seated or standing? 3. He is seated in a large chair. 4. On the table in front of the teacher there are two old books. 5. There is also a short pencil on the table. 6. Is the teacher old and ugly? 7. No, he is not old; he is very young. 8. He is speaking to the pupils. 9. He is speaking about the lessons. 10. One of the pupils has written five French sentences on the board. 11. He has written the sentences with a piece of white chalk. 12. The chalk is in a little square box. 13. Now the teacher is explaining the sentences to the pupils. 14. The pupils are seated behind the desks. 15. The teacher is standing in front of the class. 16. John is a new pupil. 17. He has been in the class for ten days.

LESSON VII

VOCABULARY

aimer [ɛme], (+ *inf.*, *or* **à** + *inf.*), to love, be fond of, like (to).
apporter [apɔrte], to bring.
assez [ase], *adv.*, enough, rather, quite.
le beurre [bœːr], the butter.
la bonne [bɔn], the maid, waitress.
le café [kafe], the coffee; café.
demander à [dəmãde], (**de** + *inf*), to ask of, ask (to).

le légume [legym], the vegetable.
merci [mɛrsi], *adv.*, thanks, no thank you (*when used alone*).
le pain [pɛ̃], the bread, loaf of bread.
le plaisir [plɛziːr], the pleasure.
la pomme [pɔm], the apple; — **de terre** [tɛːr], the potato.
le potage [pɔtaːʒ], the soup.
si [si], *conj.*, if, whether.
si [si], *adv.*, yes (*after a negative*).
la viande [vjɑ̃ːd], the meat.
le vin [vɛ̃], the wine.
vouloir [vulwaːr], to wish, will, desire, want; **voulez** [vule], *2d. pl. pres.*, wish, etc.

Idiom

à table [a tabl], at table
avec plaisir [avɛk plɛziːr], with pleasure
s'il vous plaît [sil vu plɛ], if you please, please

77. Partitive Construction

1. In English the partitive idea is sometimes expressed (in the affirmative by 'some,' 'any' and in the negative by 'no,' 'not any,' 'none') and sometimes it is understood.

I have (some) bread.	He has some.
He has no (not any) meat.	We have none (not any).

2. This English partitive construction is translated into French in two different ways: (1) when 'some' and 'any' are used as adjectives, immediately followed by their noun; (2) when 'some' and 'any' are used as pronouns, the noun being understood.

78. 'Some' or 'any' as Adjectives

'Some' and 'any' as adjectives, either expressed or understood, are translated into French by:

1. **de** + the definite article:

J'ai du pain.	I have some bread.
Jean a des livres.	John has some books.
Nous avons de la viande.	We have meat.

2. **de** alone:

(*a*) When an adjective precedes the noun:[1]

J'ai de bons livres.	I have (some) good books.

(*b*) In a general negation:

Jean n'a pas de pain.	John has no (not any) bread.

3. Omitting both **de** and the article:

(*a*) With **ne** (*verb*) **ni . . . ni . . .**

Je n'ai ni pain ni beurre.	I have neither (any) bread nor (any) butter.
Il ne donne ni livres ni crayons à Marie.	He gives neither books nor pencils to Mary.

(*b*) With the preposition **sans** [sɑ̃], 'without':

Il est sans livres.	He is without (any) books.

79. After the following adverbs of quantity **de** is required:

assez [ase], enough
autant [otɑ̃], as much, as many
beaucoup [boku], much, many, a lot, a great deal
combien [kɔ̃bjɛ̃], how much, how many
peu [pø], a little
plus [ply], more
tant [tɑ̃], so much, so many
trop [trɔ], too much, too many

assez de pain	enough bread
combien de viande?	how much meat?
trop de café	too much coffee

NOTE. — **Bien** [bjɛ̃], 'much,' 'many,' and **la plupart** [plypar], 'most,' require, however, **de** + *def. art.*

J'ai bien des livres.	I have many books.
La plupart des élèves étudient bien.	Most pupils study well.

80. Distinguish carefully between the noun used in a partitive sense, in which case 'some' or 'any' may be understood

[1] The article is often retained, however, in familiar speech, and this usage is not considered incorrect.

before the noun, and the noun used in a general or inclusive sense, in which case 'all,' 'every' or 'in general' may be understood with the noun. A noun used in a general sense is preceded in French by the definite article.

Teachers like books.
Teachers (in general) like books (in general).
Les professeurs aiment les livres.

Man is mortal.
(Every) man is mortal.
L'homme est mortel.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Jean et Marie sont assis à table. 2. Il y a sur la table du beurre, du pain et du potage. 3. Jean demande à Marie: Voulez-vous du potage? 4. — Merci, Jean, je n'aime pas le potage. 5. — Pourquoi? 6. — Parce qu'il y a trop de légumes dans le potage que nous avons aujourd'hui. 7. Donnez-moi du pain, s'il vous plaît. 8. — Avec plaisir. 9. Mais vous n'avez pas de beurre, Marie. 10. — Si, j'ai assez de beurre. 11. La bonne apporte de la viande et des pommes de terre. 12. — Vous voulez de la viande et des pommes de terre, n'est-ce pas, Marie? 13. — S'il vous plaît. 14. — La viande est très bonne, n'est-ce pas? 15. Et voici de très bon vin. 16. — Je n'aime pas le vin, merci. 17. — Voulez-vous du café? 18. — S'il vous plaît. J'aime beaucoup le café. 19. La bonne donne du café à Marie et à Jean. 20. Ils aiment le café noir.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Jean et Marie, où sont-ils? 2. Qu'y a-t-il sur la table? 3. À qui est-ce que Jean parle. 4. Qu'est-ce qu'il demande à Marie? 5. Est-ce que Marie aime le potage? 6. Pourquoi? 7. Est-ce que Marie aime les légumes? 8. Est-ce que Jean donne du pain à Marie? 9. Est-ce que Marie a du beurre? 10. Qu'est-ce que la bonne apporte? 11. Est-ce que Marie aime la viande? 12. Jean, donne-t-il du vin à Marie? 13. Pourquoi? 14. Est-ce qu'elle aime le café? 15. Qui donne du café à Marie et à Jean? 16. Est-ce qu'ils aiment le café noir?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Replace the blanks with the proper form of the partitive if required: 1. J'ai — pain. 2. Il a — bon pain. 3. Vous n'avez pas — beurre. 4. Je n'ai pas — viande. 5. Donnez-moi — livres. 6. Il y a — livres ici. 7. Voilà — leçons faciles. 8. Combien — livres avez-vous? 9. Le professeur n'a pas — livres. 10. Nous avons — leçons courtes. 11. Il y a — jeunes élèves dans la classe. 12. Voici — belles chaises. 13. Il est sans ✂ livres. 14. Jean n'a ni ✂ plumes ni ✂ crayons. 15. Voilà — longues leçons. 16. Il a beaucoup — livres. 17. Avez-vous assez — pain? 18. Nous avons tant — livres. 19. Marie a trop — crayons. 20. Avez-vous — bonnes plumes? 21. J'ai — plumes, mais je n'ai pas — crayons. 22. Marie a bien — crayons. 23. La plupart — grammaires sont assez difficiles.

D. Written Exercise

1. What is there on the table? 2. There is bread and butter. 3. Give me some bread, if you please. 4. I have butter. 5. Don't give any soup to John. 6. He does not like soup. 7. Did the maid give some butter to Mary? 8. No, she didn't give any butter to Mary. 9. She gave John some butter. 10. I haven't any soup. 11. We have some good bread. 12. We haven't any wine. 13. We don't like wine. 14. Give me some coffee. 15. There are bread, butter and meat on the table.

E. Written Exercise

1. Where is the teacher? 2. He is seated behind a large, square table. 3. There are some new pens and pencils on the table. 4. There are not any books on the table. 5. The pupils have some books. 6. The books are French grammars. 7. The pupils have studied seven short lessons in the grammar. 8. There are also some long lessons in the grammar. 9. There are many pupils in the French class (class of French). 10. Mary is one of the pupils of the class. 11. She is very pretty. 12. John is one of the pupils too. 13. John has a French grammar, but he has neither pencils nor pens. 14. Most of the pupils have pens and pencils. 15. The teacher is an old man. 16. He is short and fat. 17. He gives easy lessons to the pupils. 18. He gives too many easy lessons.

LESSON VIII

VOCABULARY

après [aprɛ], *prep.*, after; *adv.*, afterwards.
le cinéma [sinema], the moving-picture theatre, movie.
comment [kɔmɑ̃], *adv.*, how.
le déjeuner [deʒœne], the lunch; **le petit —**, the breakfast.
déjeuner [deʒœne], to breakfast, lunch, have breakfast (lunch).
le dîner [dine], the dinner.
dîner [dine], to dine, have dinner.
en [ɑ̃], *prep.*, in.
l'heure [œːr], *f.*, the hour, o'clock, time.
le matin [matɛ̃], the morning.
on [ɔ̃], *indef. pron.*, one, they, people.
prendre [prɑ̃ːdr], to take, get; **prend** [prɑ̃], *3rd. sing. pres.*, takes, gets; **pris** [pri], *pp.*, taken, gotten.
quel, quelle, quels, quelles [kɛl *for all four forms*], *int. adj.*, which, what, what a.
le repas [rəpɑ], the meal, repast.
servir [sɛrviːr], to serve; **sert** [sɛr], *3rd. sing. pres.*, serves; **servi** [sɛrvi], *pp.*, served.
le soir [swaːr], the evening.
souvent [suvɑ̃], *adv.*, often, frequently.

IDIOM

en français (anglais) [ɑ̃ frɑ̃sɛ (ɑ̃glɛ)], in French (English)
huit heures du matin (soir), eight o'clock a.m., in the morning (p.m., in the evening)

Irregular Verbs

Henceforth, in giving paradigms of verbs, the declarative form alone will be given and the subject pronouns omitted. Unless otherwise indicated, the auxiliary of all verbs is **avoir.**

81. **Aller,** 'to go'

Must be used with a noun or adverb indicating destination.

(Auxiliary: **être**)

Requires no preposition before a following infinitive.

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
aller [ale], 'to go'	**allant** [alɑ̃], 'going'	**allé** [ale], 'gone'

82. PRESENT INDICATIVE

vais [vɛ]
vas [va]
va [va]
allons [alɔ̃]
allez [ale]
vont [vɔ̃]

83. IMPERATIVE

va [va]
allons [alɔ̃]
allez [ale]

84. Partitive Construction (Continued)

'Some' or 'any' as pronoun

1. 'Some' or 'any' as a pronoun (the noun being understood) is expressed in French by **en** [ɑ̃], placed immediately before all verb forms, except the affirmative imperative, which it follows. In a compound tense, the **en** is placed immediately before the auxiliary:

J'en ai.	I have some.
Il n'en donne pas à Marie.	He does not give any to Mary.
Vous en avez donné à Jean.	You gave some to John.

2. **En** is often equivalent to the English 'of it,' 'of them,' and must be expressed in French with numerals and adverbs of quantity when these words are not followed by their noun.

Il en a six.	He has six (of them).
Marie en a beaucoup.	Mary has many (of them).

85. In French, unlike the English, the article is used in speaking of all meals:

Pour le déjeuner.	For lunch.
Après le dîner.	After dinner.

86. 'In the morning(s),' 'in the evening(s),' etc., are translated by the article without preposition:

le matin, le soir	in the morning, in the evening

A. Reading Exercise

1. Aimez-vous les repas français? 2. Oui, j'aime beaucoup les repas français. 3. Combien de repas y a-t-il? 4. Il y en a trois. 5. Nous en avons trois aussi. 6. À quelle heure prend-on le petit déjeuner? 7. On prend le petit déjeuner à huit heures du matin. 8. Qu'est-ce qu'on sert pour le petit déjeuner? 9. On sert du café, du pain et du beurre. 10. On prend le déjeuner à une heure. 11. Pour le déjeuner on sert un potage, des légumes et de la viande. 12. On sert aussi du vin et du café. 13. On prend le dîner à sept heures du soir. 14. Où allez-vous après le dîner? 15. Nous allons au cinéma. 16. Il y en a beaucoup ici. 17. Il y a de grands cinémas et de petits cinémas. 18. Aimez-vous beaucoup à aller au cinéma? 19. Oui, beaucoup, et je vais souvent au cinéma le soir après le dîner.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Vous aimez les repas français, n'est-ce pas? 2. Combien y en a-t-il? 3. À quelle heure prend-on le petit déjeuner? 4. Comment dit-on "at eight o'clock" en français? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'on sert pour le petit déjeuner? 6. Quel repas prend-on après le petit déjeuner? 7. Est-ce qu'on sert de la viande pour le déjeuner? 8. À quelle heure prend-on le déjeuner? 9. Où allez-vous après le dîner? 10. N'aimez-vous pas le cinéma? 11. Allez-vous souvent au cinéma? 12. Y a-t-il beaucoup de cinémas ici? 13. Sont-ils grands ou petits?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Replace the blanks with a suitable form of the partitive: 1. Vous avez beaucoup — livres. 2. — avez-vous beaucoup? 3. Combien — crayons a-t-il? 4. Il — a donné cinq à Jean. 5. Elle n'— a pas. 6. Jean n'a pas — leçons de français. 7. Il y a — vin français ici. 8. Y a-t-il beaucoup — cinémas ici? 9. Il n'y a pas — grands cinémas. 10. Il y a — leçons faciles dans le livre.

D. Oral Exercise

1. We haven't any bread. 2. She has no meat. 3. They have neither bread nor meat. 4. We have a lot of books. 5. John hasn't

Un Parc à Aix-les-Bains

any. 6. Mary has many. 7. The pupils have none. 8. The teacher has some beautiful books. 9. I have some too. 10. How many have you? 11. I have four or five. 12. We study a great deal. 13. Often we go to the movies, too. 14. We are going to study after dinner. 15. Afterwards we are going to the movies. 16. We have lunched, but we have not dined. 17. Has John studied many lessons? 18. No, he has not studied many. 19. There are some short lessons in the book. 20. There are not many of them. 21. What a good meal! 22. Which lessons do we have. 23. Which is the lesson for today?

E. Oral Exercise

1. What are they going to do after lunch? 2. They are going to study some long lessons. 3. Are there many? 4. Yes, there are five (of them). 5. There are not any easy lessons in the book. 6. Who gave the book to John? 7. The teacher gave John the book. 8. He didn't give any to Mary. 9. She has some. 10. How many doors are there in the class-room? 11. There are three and there are also four windows. 12. What is there on the table? 13. There are some books and some pencils. 14. The teacher gave some pencils to John. 15. I haven't any. 16. Mary has four.

F. Written Exercise

1. For breakfast we have coffee, bread and butter. 2. John takes coffee and bread without butter. 3. He does not like butter. 4. We don't like meat for breakfast. 5. We have meat and vegetables for lunch and dinner. 6. We also have a soup, some potatoes, wine and black coffee. 7. It is seven o'clock in the evening. 8. John and Mary are seated at table. 9. The maid brings [in] meat and potatoes. 10. John asks Mary: Do you wish some meat? 11. A little meat, if you please, and some potatoes. 12. Mary does not take any vegetables. 13. After the vegetables, the maid serves coffee. 14. John takes some, but Mary doesn't take any. 15. After dinner they talk of the class and of the lessons that they are going to study.

LESSON IX

VOCABULARY

le cahier [kaje], the note-book.
corriger [kɔriʒe], to correct.
l'école [ekɔl], *f.*, the school; **à l'école,** at school.
la fois [fwa], the time (*recurrence*); **une —,** once; **deux —,** twice.
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃], *adj.*, next.
la saison [sɛzɔ̃], the season.
le thème [tɛːm], the composition, theme.
traduire [tradɥiːr], to translate; **traduisez** [tradɥize], *imptv.*, translate; **traduit** [tradɥi], *pp.*, translated.

87. Vouloir, 'to wish,' 'will,' 'desire,' 'want'

Requires no preposition before following infinitive.

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
vouloir [vulwaːr], 'to wish'	**voulant** [vulɑ̃], 'wishing'	**voulu** [vuly], 'wished'

88. Present Indicative

veux [vø]	**voulons** [vulɔ̃]
veux [vø]	**voulez** [vule]
veut [vø]	**veulent** [vœl]

89. Imperative

The only imperative form in current usage is:

veuillez [vœje], have the kindness to, please (+ *inf.*)

90. Days of the Week

The names of the days of the week are all masculine in French.

lundi [lœ̃di]	Monday	**vendredi** [vɑ̃drədi]	Friday
mardi [mardi]	Tuesday	**samedi** [samdi]	Saturday
mercredi [mɛrkrədi]	Wednesday	**dimanche** [dimɑ̃ːʃ]	Sunday
jeudi [ʒødi]	Thursday		

1. 'On' before the names of the days of the week is rendered simply by the definite article.

le lundi, on Monday **le samedi,** on Saturday

91. Seasons

The names of the seasons are all masculine in French.

le printemps [prɛ̃tɑ̃]	spring	**au printemps**	in (the) spring
l'été [ete]	summer	**en été**	in (the) summer
l'automne [otɔn]	autumn	**en automne**	in (the) autumn, fall
l'hiver [ivɛːr]	winter	**en hiver**	in (the) winter

In (at) this (that) season: **en cette saison.**

92. Possessive Adjectives

Singular		Plural	
M.	*F.*	*M. and F.*	
mon [mɔ̃]	**ma** [ma]	**mes** [me]	my
ton [tɔ̃]	**ta** [ta]	**tes** [te]	thy, your
son [sɔ̃]	**sa** [sa]	**ses** [se]	his, her, its, one's
notre [nɔtr(ə)]	**notre** [nɔtr(ə)]	**nos** [no]	our
votre [vɔtr(ə)]	**votre** [vɔtr(ə)]	**vos** [vo]	your
leur [lœːr]	**leur** [lœːr]	**leurs** [lœːr]	their

Use: 1. Possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the thing possessed, and not with the possessor.

son livre his (her, one's) book

2. They are repeated before each noun they modify.

mon crayon et ma plume my pencil and pen

3. Before a feminine word beginning with a vowel, or a mute **h**, the forms **mon, ton** and **son** are used instead of **ma, ta** and **sa.**

son école his (*or* her, one's) school

A. Reading Exercise

1. J'ai écrit mes thèmes dans mon cahier. 2. J'en ai écrit huit. 3. Le lundi, le mercredi et le vendredi nous étudions la grammaire. 4. Nous avons des thèmes aussi. 5. Jean a écrit ses thèmes au tableau noir. 6. Marie aussi a écrit ses thèmes au tableau. 7. Le professeur corrige les thèmes. 8. Maintenant nous allons traduire des phrases. 9. Marie, traduisez la phrase deux, s'il vous plaît. 10. Jean, veuillez traduire la phrase trois. 11. Écrivez les phrases

dans vos cahiers. 12. Avez-vous votre crayon, Jean? 13. Oui, Monsieur, j'ai mon crayon et ma plume. 14. Vous avez traduit vos phrases, n'est-ce pas? 15. Oui, et nous avons étudié la grammaire. 16. Jean, que voulez-vous faire maintenant? 17. Je veux traduire la leçon. 18. Marie ne veut pas traduire la leçon? 19. Elle a écrit la leçon dans son cahier. 20. Nous allons avoir la grammaire pour la prochaine fois, dit le professeur.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Avez-vous écrit vos thèmes? 2. Où est-ce que vous avez écrit vos thèmes? 3. Combien en avez-vous écrit? 4. Y a-t-il beaucoup de thèmes dans votre grammaire? 5. Est-ce que Jean a écrit la leçon au tableau noir? 6. Qui corrige les leçons? 7. Le professeur a-t-il corrigé les thèmes? 8. Jean, a-t-il traduit la phrase trois? 9. Qu'est-ce que Marie a fait? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont écrit dans leurs cahiers? 11. Ont-ils étudié la grammaire? 12. Qu'est-ce que Jean veut faire? 13. Marie, veut-elle traduire la leçon? 14. Quelle leçon avons-nous pour aujourd'hui. 15. Combien en avons-nous étudié? 16. Y en a-t-il beaucoup dans notre grammaire? 17. Sont-elles faciles ou difficiles? 18. Quelle leçon allons-nous avoir pour la prochaine fois?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Has he written his sentences? 2. Yes, he has written the sentences in his note-book. 3. Mary has written her theme on the board. 4. The teacher is correcting Mary's theme. 5. The pupils are studying the grammar. 6. They are going to write the sentences in their note-books. 7. John is going to translate the sentences. 8. Now, we are going to have lunch. 9. At what time do you have lunch? 10. We lunch at one o'clock and we dine at six o'clock. 11. Here are some beautiful books. 12. Do you wish any? 13. No, I don't wish any. 14. The teacher gave John some. 15. Do you wish to see his books?

D. Oral Exercise

1. Where are the pupils? 2. What do they wish to do? 3. They don't wish to study. 4. They have written their sentences. 5. John

PARISIAN
KUB
KUB
JOB
beau
atographe
de Paris
Le Roi des Cinem
50

Un Cinéma

has not written any. 6. Mary has written ten. 7. They wrote the sentences in their note-books. 8. Now, they are going to the blackboard. 9. The teacher is correcting their themes. 10. He speaks to Mary. 11. Mary, go to the board with your grammar. 12. Translate the lesson. 13. Please write the French sentences. 14. The teacher doesn't wish to correct their sentences. 15. John is going to correct their exercise. 16. We do not study in summer. 17. We study a great deal in winter. 18. What are the seasons? 19. The four seasons are spring, summer, autumn and winter.

E. Written Exercise

1. We study the grammar on Tuesdays, Thursdays and Saturdays. 2. We have compositions on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays. 3. How many compositions are there in your lesson today? 4. There are three. 5. I have written two of them. 6. Did you write the lesson in your note-book? 7. Yes, and I have translated the French sentences. 8. Are you going to write your sentences on the blackboard? 9. Yes, and the teacher is going to correct my sentences. 10. John and Mary haven't studied their lessons. 11. What is John going to do now? 12. He is going to write his composition. 13. Afterwards he is going to finish the lesson. 14. What do John and Mary wish to do afterwards? 15. They wish to go to the movies. 16. We are going to the movies Saturday. 17. Do you wish to go with John and Mary?

LESSON X

VOCABULARY

l'assiette [asjɛt], *f.*, the plate.
le couteau [kuto], the knife.
le couvert [kuvɛːr] the cover (*at table*).
la cuiller [kɥijɛːr], the spoon.
déjà [deʒa], *adv.*, already.
l'enfant [ɑ̃fɑ̃], *m. or f.*, the child.
la fleur [flœːr], the flower.
la fourchette [furʃɛt], the fork.
le lait [lɛ], the milk.
mettre [mɛtr], to put (on), place; **met** [mɛ], *3rd. sing. pres.*, puts, sets; **mettez** [mɛte], *imptv.*, put, place; **mis** [mi], *pp.*, put, placed; — **le couvert** [kuvɛːr], to set the table.
la nappe [nap], the table-cloth.

la place [plas], the place, room, seat.
la serviette [sɛrvjɛt], the napkin, towel.
la tasse [taːs], the cup.
toujours [tuʒuːr], *adv.*, always, ever, still.
tout de suite [tud sɥit], *adv.*, immediately, right away.
le verre [vɛːr], the glass.

IDIOM

être [ɛːtr] **à** (+ *noun or pronoun*), to belong to

93. Faire, 'to do,' 'to make'

Requires no preposition before a following infinitive.

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
faire [fɛːr], 'to do,' 'to make'	**faisant** [fəzɑ̃], 'doing,' 'making'	**fait** [fɛ], 'done,' 'made'

94. PRESENT INDICATIVE

fais [fɛ]
fais [fɛ]
fait [fɛ]
faisons [fəzɔ̃]
faites [fɛt]
font [fɔ̃]

95. IMPERATIVE

fais [fɛ]
faisons [fəzɔ̃]
faites [fɛt]

96. Demonstrative Adjectives

'This,' 'that,' 'these,' 'those'

SINGULAR		PLURAL
M.	*F.*	*M. and F.*
ce [sə], this, that (*before a consonant*)	**cette** [sɛt], this, that	**ces** [se], these, those
cet [sɛt], this, that (*before a vowel or* **h** *mute*)		

ce livre this (that) book
cet homme this (that) man
cette plume this (that) pen
ces hommes these (those) men

97. To distinguish between 'this' and 'that' or 'these' and 'those,' or for purposes of contrast, **-ci** [si], and **-là** [la] may be added to the noun.

Cette plume-ci est à Jean.	This pen is John's.
Cette plume-là est à Marie.	That pen is Mary's.

98. **Numerals**

onze [õːz]	eleven	**quatorze** [katɔrz]	fourteen
douze [duːz]	twelve	**quinze** [kɛ̃ːz]	fifteen
treize [trɛːz]	thirteen	**seize** [sɛːz]	sixteen

A. Reading Exercise

1. Marie et la bonne vont mettre le couvert. 2. La bonne a déjà mis la nappe. 3. Maintenant elle apporte les fourchettes. 4. Marie apporte les couteaux. 5. Elle va apporter les cuillers aussi. 6. Il n'y a pas de verres sur la table. 7. La bonne va en apporter tout de suite. 8. Elle a déjà mis les assiettes. 9. Et il y a des serviettes sur la table. 10. Pour le dîner il y a du café et du vin. 11. Ces tasses-ci sont pour le café. 12. Et ces verres-là sont pour le vin. 13. Voilà des fleurs pour la table. 14. Elles sont très jolies. 15. La bonne va en mettre sur la table. 16. Nous aimons beaucoup les fleurs. 17. La bonne apporte les fleurs. 18. Elle apporte du pain aussi. 19. Maintenant la bonne va mettre les chaises. 20. Voilà, le couvert est mis.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Que font Marie et la bonne? 2. Qui a mis la nappe? 3. Est-ce que les fourchettes sont déjà sur la table? 4. Y a-t-il des verres sur la table? 5. Qui met les verres sur la table? 6. Y a-t-il du café pour le dîner? 7. Aimez-vous le café? 8. Qu'est-ce que la bonne met sur la table maintenant? 9. Traduisez: 'the table is set.' 10. Comment dit-on en français: 'knives,' 'forks,' 'spoons'?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Replace the blanks with the proper form of the demonstrative adjective:
1. — livres sont à Jean. 2. À qui sont — plumes? 3. — homme

n'a pas de livres. 4. — chaises sont très belles. 5. À qui sont — crayon et — plume? 6. — plume- — est à Marie. 7. — plume- — est à Jean. 8. À qui sont — plumes? 9. — tasses- — sont pour le café. 10. — verres sont pour le vin.

D. Oral Exercise

1. We are going to lunch. 2. We always lunch at one o'clock. 3. Is the table set? 4. No, the maid is going to set the table now. 5. She has already put on the table-cloth. 6. Who is with the maid? 7. Mary is with the maid. 8. What is Mary doing? 9. She is bringing the knives and forks. 10. Here are the spoons and there are the napkins. 11. Have you brought the cups? 12. No, we are not going to have any coffee. 13. These glasses are for the milk. 14. The children are going to have milk. 15. Who brought these flowers? 16. I am going to put some on the table; they are very pretty. 17. I like flowers very much. 18. I have always put flowers on the table for lunch and for dinner. 19. Now the table is set. 20. It is already one o'clock. 21. Count in French from five to ten. 22. Count in French from eleven to sixteen. 23. These books belong to John. 24. Those books belong to my friend. 25. To whom does this note-book belong? 26. What are we doing here?

E. Written Exercise

1. At what time do you have lunch? 2. I always have lunch at one o'clock. 3. It is now twelve o'clock. 4. The table is not set. 5. Mary and the maid are going to set the table now. 6. The maid is bringing knives, forks and spoons. 7. Mary, don't bring these cups, bring those cups. 8. Where did you put the plates? 9. I have already put the plates on the table. 10. Put these napkins on. 11. What are you doing now, Mary? 12. I am going to put some flowers on the table. 13. These flowers are very pretty. 14. Don't you like flowers? 15. Yes, very much; put some here, if you please.

F. Written Exercise

1. What are John and Mary doing now? 2. They are seated at table. 3. They are having lunch. 4. Where is the bread? 5. There

isn't any on the table. 6. The maid is going to bring some. 7. Bring some butter too, if you please. 8. Do you wish coffee or milk, Mary? 9. We always have milk for lunch. 10. Will you have some? 11. No, I don't like milk for lunch. 12. If there is any coffee, give some to John. 13. There isn't any. 14. These flowers are beautiful, aren't they? 15. Yes, they are very beautiful. 16. I always like flowers on the table.

LESSON XI

VOCABULARY

l'arbre [arbr], *m.*, the tree.
le bois [bwɑ], the wood; **aux —**, to the woods; **dans les —**, in(to) the woods.
partout [partu], *adv.*, everywhere.
la promenade [prɔmnad], the walk; **faire une —**, to take a walk.
le sentier [sɑ̃tje], the path.
sous [su], *prep.*, under, beneath.
le temps [tɑ̃], the weather; time (*duration*), while.
voir [vwa:r], to see.

Idioms

Quelle heure est-il?	What time is it?
Il est trois (quatre, cinq, etc.) **heures.**	It is three (four, five, etc.) o'clock.

99. Idiomatic Expressions

(Learn)

1. With **avoir,** applying to persons:

avoir besoin [bəzwɛ̃]	to need, have need
avoir chaud [ʃo]	to be warm
avoir faim [fɛ̃]	to be hungry
avoir froid [frwɑ]	to be cold
avoir honte [ɔ̃:t]	to be ashamed
avoir peur [pœ:r]	to be afraid
avoir raison [rɛzɔ̃]	to be right
avoir soif [swaf]	to be thirsty
avoir sommeil [sɔmɛ:j]	to be sleepy
avoir tort [tɔr]	to be wrong

Avoir besoin, avoir honte and **avoir peur** require **de** before a following infinitive or noun.

Avoir raison and **avoir tort** require **de** before a following infinitive, equivalent to 'in' + *present participle* in English.

A-t-il chaud?	Is he warm?
Elle a sommeil.	She is sleepy.
J'ai besoin de votre livre.	I need your book.
Nous avons peur de cet homme.	We are afraid of this man.
Ils ont raison d'étudier leurs leçons.	They are right in studying their lessons.

2. With **faire**, applying to the weather (subject **il**):

faire beau [bo]	to be fine, beautiful
faire chaud [ʃo]	to be warm
faire mauvais [mɔvɛ]	to be bad
faire frais [frɛ]	to be cool
faire froid [frwɑ]	to be cold
faire du vent [dy vɑ̃]	to be windy

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
Il fait froid ce matin.	It is cold this morning.

3. With **faire**, applying to general conditions (subject **il**):

faire bon [bɔ̃], to be nice, delightful, pleasant

Il fait bon ici.	It is nice here.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Que voulez-vous faire ce matin? 2. Je veux faire une promenade. 3. Ne fait-il pas trop chaud? 4. Non, il ne fait pas très chaud. 5. Il fait très bon. 6. Où allons-nous? 7. Nous allons aux bois. 8. Les bois sont très jolis au printemps et en été. 9. Dans les bois il fait très chaud, n'est-ce pas? 10. Non, vous avez tort, il ne fait pas très chaud dans les bois. 11. Il y a de jolis sentiers où il fait toujours frais. 12. Et partout il y a de belles fleurs et de beaux arbres. 13. Il fait toujours bon sous les arbres. 14. Jean et Marie que font-ils ce matin? 15. Ne veulent-ils pas faire une promenade aussi? 16. Non, ils vont écrire leurs thèmes.

17. Ils n'ont pas étudié leurs leçons. 18. Ils ont honte de faire une promenade, s'ils n'ont pas étudié leurs leçons. 19. Nous allons faire une belle promenade, n'est-ce pas?

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Est-ce qu'il fait beau ce matin? 2. Fait-il très chaud? 3. Avez-vous chaud? 4. Où allez-vous ce matin? 5. Qu'allez-vous faire? 6. Est-ce que les bois sont très jolis au printemps? 7. Fait-il très chaud dans les bois en été? 8. Pourquoi pas? 9. Est-ce qu'il y a de belles fleurs dans les bois? 10. Pourquoi est-ce que Jean et Marie ne font pas une promenade aussi? 11. Faites-vous des promenades souvent? 12. Après une promenade avez-vous sommeil? 13. Avez-vous faim ou soif?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Are you hungry? 2. Why is John sleepy? 3. Is he ashamed to be sleepy. 4. He is afraid to take a walk. 5. He is going to write his composition. 6. Is it fine in the woods? 7. Yes, it is fine in spring. 8. In summer it is very hot here, isn't it? 9. You are wrong. 10. It is not hot here in summer. 11. It is bad weather. 12. Is he taking a walk? 13. I have taken a walk. 14. Are you right? 15. Are you thirsty? 16. What [kind of] weather is it? 17. What are you doing this morning? 18. Where are you going now? 19. Do they wish to take a walk? 20. No, they wish to study their grammar. 21. They are right, he is wrong. 22. Mary is hungry and John is thirsty. 23. Are you sleepy? 24. We are going to finish our lessons. 25. Why do you wish to take a walk?

D. Written Exercise

1. This morning it is very beautiful. 2. We are going to the woods. 3. In the summer the woods are very pretty. 4. We are going to see many beautiful trees. 5. Isn't it hot in the woods in summer? 6. No, it is always cool under the trees. 7. There are many pretty paths in the woods. 8. In summer it is not very hot here. 9. And the weather is fine here in the spring and autumn. 10. In winter it is very cold. 11. I don't like to take walks in

winter. 12. You are right, we don't take many walks in winter. 13. Don't you wish to take a walk too? 14. No, we are going to write our compositions.

E. Written Exercise

1. We have studied our lessons. 2. The teacher has corrected the compositions. 3. We have written the sentences on the board. 4. We have finished our exercises. 5. What time is it? 6. It is three o'clock. 7. Do you wish to take a walk? 8. Yes, it is very beautiful today. 9. Let's go to the woods. 10. In the spring it is not very hot in the woods; it is cool. 11. In summer it is very hot here and we don't take walks. 12. There are many pretty flowers and beautiful trees in the woods now. 13. In winter it is very cold and there are not any flowers. 14. After our walk we are going to have dinner.

LESSON XII

VOCABULARY

agréable [agreabl], *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant, delightful.
l'année [ane], *f.*, the year.
la campagne [kɑ̃paɲ], the country; **à la —,** in the country.
chaque [ʃak], *indef. adj.*, each, every.
commencer [kɔmɑ̃se], (**à** + *inf.*), to begin, commence (to); — (**par** + *inf. or noun*), to begin by, with.
couvrir [kuvriːr], to cover; **couvert** [kuvɛːr], *pp.*, covered.
la feuille [fœːj], the leaf.
le jour [ʒuːr], the day.
même [mɛːm], *adv.*, even.
le midi [midi], the south; **midi,** noon.
la neige [nɛːʒ], the snow.
la nuit [nɥi], the night.
passer [pɑse], (**à** + *inf.*), to spend, pass.
pousser [puse], to sprout, bud, grow.
la semaine [səmɛn], the week.

100. Numerals

dix-sept [dis sɛt]	seventeen	**dix-neuf** [diz nœf]	nineteen
dix-huit [diz ɥit]	eighteen	**vingt** [vɛ̃]	twenty

101. **Months**

All the names of the months in French are masculine.

janvier [ʒɑ̃vje]	January	**juillet** [ʒɥijɛ]	July
février [fevrie]	February	**août** [u]	August
mars [mars]	March	**septembre** [sɛptɑ̃:br]	September
avril [avril]	April	**octobre** [ɔktɔbr]	October
mai [mɛ]	May	**novembre** [nɔvɑ̃:br]	November
juin [ʒɥɛ̃]	June	**décembre** [desɑ̃:br]	December

'In the month of' is expressed by **au mois de** [o mwa də].

102. In French a noun never modifies another noun, as it does in English (e.g. 'gold watch,' 'silk dress,' 'summer months,' etc.). **De** precedes the noun used adjectively.

Les mois d'été. The summer months.

103. ***y*** **[i] and** ***là*** **[la]**

1. **y** = 'there,' can only be used referring to a place previously mentioned. It is placed before the verb (or auxiliary in a compound tense), except in the positive imperative which it follows.

Jean est à la campagne. Marie y est aussi. Allons-y. John is in the country. Mary is there too. Let's go there.

2. **là** = 'there' must be used instead of **y**, if the place has not been previously mentioned, and may be used instead of **y** for emphasis.

Qu'avez-vous là? What have you there?

A. Reading Exercise

1. L'année a quatre saisons, le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver. 2. Chaque saison a trois mois et chaque mois a quatre semaines. 3. Le printemps commence au mois de mars. 4. En cette saison les fleurs commencent à pousser et partout les arbres

sont couverts de petites feuilles. 5. Après le printemps nous avons l'été, quand il commence à faire chaud. 6. Les mois d'été sont juin, juillet et août. 7. En été nous faisons souvent des promenades à la campagne où il fait toujours frais. 8. En cette saison les jours sont longs et les nuits sont assez courtes. 9. Au mois de septembre commence l'automne. 10. J'aime beaucoup cette saison, parce qu'il ne fait ni chaud ni froid. 11. Après l'automne nous avons l'hiver et il fait très froid ici. 12. Il y a souvent de la neige. 13. Mais dans le midi il ne fait jamais froid. 14. Là, il fait un temps très agréable, même en hiver. 15. Mon père et ma mère y passent beaucoup de temps en cette saison, parce qu'ils n'aiment pas l'hiver.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Combien de saisons y a-t-il dans l'année? 2. Quelles sont-elles? 3. Combien de mois y a-t-il dans chaque saison? 4. En quel mois commence le printemps? 5. Quels sont les mois d'été? 6. Quel temps fait-il en été? 7. Où va-t-on souvent en été? 8. Pourquoi? 9. Quels sont les mois d'automne? 10. Est-ce que les nuits sont très longues en automne? 11. Où va-t-on souvent en hiver? 12. Pourquoi? 13. Quel temps fait-il dans le midi en hiver?

C. Oral Exercise

1. In August it is very hot here. 2. The nights are not very long. 3. Why does one go to the country? 4. In January it is very cold there. 5. But it is fine there in July. 6. Do you often go south? 7. Do you like to go there? 8. In June it is very warm here. 9. We take walks in the woods. 10. Does your brother like to take walks? 11. Where do your mother and father go in winter? 12. Where do they go in summer? 13. Do the flowers grow in the spring or in the winter? 14. There are three months in each season. 15. I like summer very much. 16. We always go to the country. 17. We pass a lot of time there. 18. There are twenty pupils in this class. 19. There are nineteen here today.

D. Written Exercise

1. There are four seasons in each year. 2. Each season has three months. 3. The months of the spring are March, April and May. 4. In spring the trees are very beautiful and there are flowers everywhere. 5. I often take walks in the country, because it is cool there. 6. Summer begins in the month of June. 7. The summer months are June, July and August. 8. In August, it is often very hot here. 9. My mother and father always go to the country where it is cool. 10. I spend much time there too. 11. In autumn, in the month of September, my classes begin. 12. The autumn months are September, October and November. 13. After the autumn we have winter and it is very cold in December. 14. We have snow very often. 15. But I like the winter, even if it is cold. 16. My mother and father don't like it. 17. They always go south.

E. Written Exercise

1. At what time do you have dinner? 2. We have dinner at six o'clock in winter, because the days are very short. 3. But in summer the days are long. 4. And we have dinner at seven o'clock. 5. After dinner in summer, I always take a walk in the country. 6. I like the country, because it is always cool there. 7. One is never hot in the woods. 8. I like to take walks there very much. 9. In September my classes begin, and I always study a good deal. 10. And too, it begins to be cold in the woods in September. 11. After the autumn it is very cold there. 12. In November and December there is snow everywhere. 13. My mother and father don't like the snow. 14. They always go south in winter. 15. But I like the snow very much.

LESSON XIII

VOCABULARY

alors [alɔr], *adv.*, then, at that time.
chez [ʃe], *prep.*, at (to *or* in) the house of, with.
dernier [dɛrnje], (*f.* **dernière** [dɛrnjɛːr]), *adj.*, last, past.
encore [ãkɔːr], *adv.*, yet, still, again, more.
la ferme [fɛrm], the farm, farm house; **à (dans) la —**, on the farm.
le lac [lak], the lake.
la maison [mezɔ̃], the house; **à la —**, at home, in the house.
mûr [myr], *adj.*, ripe.
mûrir (2) [myriːr], to ripen.
parent [parã], *m.*, parent, relative.
pendant [pãdã], *prep.*, during, for.
le pommier [pɔmje], the apple-tree.
le présent [prezã], the present (*of time, tense*); **à —**, *adv.*, now, at present.
travailler [travaje], to work.
triste [trist], *adj.*, sad.

IDIOMS

faire une promenade à cheval [ʃəval] — to ride horseback
de temps en temps [də tãz ã tã] — from time to time

Plural of Nouns. (Learn nouns in examples)

104. The plural of nouns is formed in general by adding **s** to the singular:

la pomme [pɔm]	the apple	**les pommes** [pɔm]	the apples
l'oncle [ɔ̃ːkl], *m.*,	the uncle	**les oncles** [ɔ̃ːkl]	the uncles

NOTE. — Proper names do not usually take an **s** for the plural:

les Martin — the Martins

105. Nouns ending in **–s, –x,** or **–z** remain unchanged:

le fils [fis]	the son	**les fils** [fis]	the sons
la voix [vwa]	the voice	**les voix** [vwa]	the voices
le nez [ne]	the nose	**les nez** [ne]	the noses

106. Nouns ending in **–au, –eu** and a few in **–ou** add **x:**

le tableau [tablo]	the picture	**les tableaux** [tablo]	the pictures
le neveu [nəvø]	the nephew	**les neveux** [nəvø]	the nephews
le genou [ʒənu]	the knee	**les genoux** [ʒənu]	the knees

107. Most nouns in **–al** and **–ail** change these endings to **–aux:**

l'animal [animal], *m.*, the animal — **les animaux** [animo], the animals
le cheval [ʃəval], the horse — **les chevaux** [ʃəvo], the horses
le travail [travaːj], the work, task — **les travaux** [travo], the works, tasks.

Note. — Irregular plural:

l'œil [œːj] the eye — **les yeux** [jø] the eyes

108. **Voir,** 'to see'

Requires no preposition before following infinitive.

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
voir [vwaːr], 'to see'	**voyant** [vwajɑ̃], 'seeing'	**vu** [vy], 'seen'

109. Present Indicative

vois [vwa]
vois [vwa]
voit [vwa]
voyons [vwajɔ̃]
voyez [vwaje]
voient [vwa]

110. Imperative

vois [vwa]
voyons [vwajɔ̃]
voyez [vwaje]

A. Reading Exercise

1. L'été dernier nous avons passé beaucoup de temps chez mon oncle. 2. Il a une très belle ferme à la campagne, et nous y allons souvent en été. 3. La maison de mon oncle est très grande. 4. Dans la maison il y a beaucoup de tableaux qui sont très beaux. 5. Derrière la maison on voit des arbres et un joli petit lac. 6. Mon oncle a beaucoup de pommiers. 7. Au mois d'avril et au mois de mai les pommiers sont très jolis. 8. C'est au mois de juillet que les pommes mûrissent. 9. Il y en a aussi qui mûrissent pendant le mois

d'août. 10. Les pommiers donnent de très bonnes pommes. 11. À présent nous sommes au mois de juin, et les pommes ne sont pas encore mûres. 12. Mon oncle a trois fils, qui sont les neveux de mes parents. 13. En hiver, ils vont à l'école. 14. En été, ils travaillent à la ferme. 15. Mon oncle a quatre grands chevaux qui font les travaux de la ferme. 16. Ils sont très beaux. 17. De temps en temps, nous faisons de grandes promenades à cheval. 18. Je n'aime pas beaucoup la campagne en hiver, il y fait trop froid. 19. Mais en été, j'aime beaucoup la campagne.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Où avez-vous passé l'été dernier? 2. Où est la ferme de votre oncle? 3. Est-ce que la maison de votre oncle est petite? 4. Que voit-on derrière la maison? 5. Est-ce que les pommes mûrissent en hiver? 6. Combien de fils votre oncle a-t-il? 7. De qui sont-ils les neveux? 8 Les fils, que font-ils en hiver? 9. Que font-ils en été? 10. Combien de chevaux votre oncle a-t-il? 11. Aimez-vous à faire des promenades à cheval? 12. Pourquoi n'aimez-vous pas la campagne en hiver.

C. Grammatical Exercise

Replace the italicised words with the proper French words: 1. Les *horses* font les *tasks* de la ferme. 2. Est-ce que les *eyes* des chevaux sont *beautiful?* 3. Ils ont de très *beautiful eyes.* 4. Mon oncle a trois *sons.* 5. Aimez-vous les *pictures?* 6. Que *does one see* à la campagne? 7. *One sees* les pommes. 8. *Do you see* les tableaux? 9. *In spring* j'aime beaucoup la campagne. 10. *In winter* je n'aime pas la campagne. 11. *In December* il fait très froid ici. 12. *In August* il fait très beau. 13. *September, October and November* sont de beaux mois. 14. Les *sons* de mon oncle sont les *nephews* de ma mère. 15. *From time to time* nous allons *to my uncle's.*

D. Oral Exercise

1. What do you see? 2. I see some pretty trees. 3. We are in the country at my uncle's. 4. It is very fine weather in the country now. 5. Do you see those horses? 6. Horses have pretty eyes, haven't they? 7. What are the horses doing? 8. They are working

on the farm. 9. My uncle's sons work on the farm too. 10. What do you do during the summer? 11. We go to the country then. 12. Why do you go to the country? 13. Because it is hot in summer here. 14. I don't wish to go to the country in December. 15. It is too cold then. 16. The trees are very pretty in May and June. 17. My uncle has many apple trees. 18. The apples don't ripen in winter. 19. They are ripe in July or August. 20. My parents have a very beautiful house. 21. In his house he has many pictures. 22. His sons like the pictures very much. 23. I like pictures too. 24. Do you see his sons very often? 25. No, they study a good deal.

E. Written Exercise

1. It is beautiful on my uncle's farm in summer. 2. My uncle has many apple trees, which give fine apples. 3. They are not ripe now. 4. They ripen in the month of August. 5. My uncle has a very beautiful house, too, which I like very much. 6. There are many beautiful pictures in his house. 7. Behind the house there is a pretty lake and some woods. 8. I like to go horseback riding in the paths of the woods. 9. I like my uncle's farm very much. 10. He works there in summer. 11. His sons work there too. 12. He has six horses which do the work of the farm. 13. I go to my uncle's in summer, in July and August. 14. In winter I study at home.

F. Written Exercise

1. We are now at table at my uncle's. 2. My uncle and his sons are seated at the table. 3. The table is set. 4. The maid has already put on the table-cloth and the napkins. 5. On the table there are knives, forks, spoons and plates. 6. We are having lunch. 7. I like the meals in the country. 8. We have milk, butter, vegetables and apples from the farm. 9. During the meal we talk of the work (*pl.*) of the farm. 10. My uncle and his sons have worked in the woods this morning. 11. My uncle asks if I like the country. 12. I like the country in the spring. 13. The apple trees are very pretty at this season. 14. And the weather is very nice in the country now. 15. In winter it is too cold there, and I don't like the country then.

LESSON XIV

VOCABULARY

l'âge [ɑːʒ], *m.*, the age.
âgé [ɑʒe], *adj.*, old, aged, of age.
l'an [ɑ̃], *m.*, the year.
cela, ça [s(ə)la, sa], *dem. pron.*, that.
la famille [famiːj], the family.
la fille [fiːj], the daughter, girl (*in this sense always preceded by some such word as* **jeune** *or* **petite**).
le frère [frɛːr], the brother.
la mère [mɛːr], the mother.
moi [mwa], *pron.*, I (*when standing alone or in a compound subject*).
le père [pɛːr], the father.
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa], *adv.*, sometimes.
la sœur [sœːr], the sister.
tout [tu], *adj., m., sing.* (**toute** [tut], *f., sing.;* **tous** [tu(s)], *m., pl.;* **toutes** [tut], *f., pl.*), *adj., and pron.*, all, every, whole, entire.
les vacances [vakɑ̃ːs], *f., pl.*, the vacation, holidays.

Idioms

C'est [sɛ], (+ *noun, adj. or adv.*). **It is.**
Quel âge a-t-elle? How old is she?
Elle a trois (**quatre**, etc.) **ans.** She is three (four, etc.) years old.
toute la classe, the whole (entire) class
tous les jours, every day
chaque jour, each day
tous les deux, both
tous les trois, all three

Comparison of Adjectives

111. To form the comparative of an adjective, place **plus** [ply], 'more,' **moins** [mwɛ̃], 'less,' **aussi** [osi], 'as,' before the adjective and **que** [kə], 'than,' 'as,' after the adjective.

Vous êtes plus grand que Jean.	You are taller than John.
Ces fleurs-ci sont moins jolies que ces fleurs-là.	These flowers are less pretty than those flowers.
Cette leçon-ci est aussi longue que cette leçon-là.	This lesson is as long as that lesson.

112. To form the superlative of an adjective, place the definite article or the possessive adjective before the comparative form. If the adjective follows the noun, as it commonly does when modified by **plus,** the definite article as a sign of the superlative must not be omitted.

Marie est la plus grande des trois sœurs.	Mary is the largest of the three sisters.
Voici la (ma) leçon la plus facile.	Here is the (my) easiest lesson.

113. Three adjectives have an irregular comparative form:

Positive	Comparative
bon [bɔ̃], good	**meilleur** [mɛjœːr], better
mauvais [mɔvɛ], bad	**pire** (**plus mauvais**) [piːr], worse
petit [pəti], small	**moindre** (**plus petit**) [mwɛ̃ːdr], less, (smaller)

Note. — **pire** is stronger than **plus mauvais.**
moindre means 'less' in importance, **plus petit** 'smaller' in size.

C'est mon meilleur ami.	He is my best friend.
Il est plus petit que son frère.	He is smaller than his brother.

114. 'In' after a superlative is usually translated by **de.**

Les plus mauvais élèves de la classe.	The poorest students in the class.

115. After a negative, **si,** 'so,' replaces **aussi.**

Il n'est pas si grand que Jean.	He is not so tall as John.

116. **De** replaces **que,** 'than,' before numerals.

Nous avons plus de dix livres.	We have more than ten books.

À with an Infinitive

117. In general, when a noun, an adverb of quantity or an adjective is followed in English by an infinitive which can be

translated either actively or passively and which ends the phrase, this infinitive requires **à** before it in French.

J'ai une lettre à écrire.	I have a letter to write (to be written).
Cela est facile à faire.	That is easy to do (to be done.
Nous avons beaucoup à faire.	We have a lot to do (to be do.

118. **Pouvoir,** 'to be able,' 'can,' 'may'

Requires no preposition before a following infinitive.

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
pouvoir [puvwaːr], 'to be able'	**pouvant** [puvɑ̃], 'being able'	**pu** [py], 'been able'

119. Present Indicative

peux, puis [pø, pɥi][1]	**pouvons** [puvɔ̃]
peux [pø]	**pouvez** [puve]
peut [pø]	**peuvent** [pœːv]

A. Reading Exercise

1. Dans notre famille, nous sommes mon père, ma mère, mon frère, mes deux sœurs et moi. 2. Julie est la plus jeune de mes sœurs; elle a sept ans. 3. Elle va à l'école tous les jours. 4. Marie est plus âgée et plus grande que Julie. 5. Elle a quinze ans et elle va aussi à l'école. 6. Elle est la meilleure élève de la classe. 7. Jean a dix-huit ans. 8. Il est très grand, plus grand que Marie. 9. Il n'est pas un très bon élève. 10. Mais il n'est pas le plus mauvais élève de la classe. 11. Il n'étudie pas assez, parce qu'il va trop au cinéma. 12. Je ne suis pas si grand que Jean, mais je suis plus grand que Julie. 13. En hiver, j'étudie beaucoup, parce que les leçons sont très longues. 14. Je ne peux pas aller beaucoup au cinéma en hiver. 15. En été, je vais à la campagne chez mon oncle où je travaille beaucoup à la ferme. 16. Nous ne pouvons pas aller chez mon oncle en hiver. 17. Il y fait trop froid. 18. Mais en été, nous avons plus de deux mois de vacances. 19. J'aime beaucoup les vacances d'été. 20. Toute notre famille peut aller à la campagne en été.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Combien de fils y a-t-il dans votre famille? 2. Combien de filles? 3. Qui est la plus jeune de vos sœurs? 4. Quel âge a Julie?

[1] In the interrogative: **puis-je** or **est-ce que je peux** (**puis**), not **peux-je.**

5. Marie n'est pas si grande que Julie, n'est-ce pas? 6. Est-ce que Marie est une bonne élève? 7. Quel âge a Jean? 8. Est-il plus petit que Marie? 9. Est-il le meilleur élève de sa classe? 10. Pourquoi n'étudie-t-il pas beaucoup? 11. Aimez-vous le cinéma? 12. Allez-vous souvent au cinéma? 13. Que faites-vous en hiver? 14. Où allez-vous en été? 15. Pourquoi est-ce que vous ne pouvez pas aller chez votre oncle en hiver?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Replace the italicised words with the proper French word or phrase: 1. Julie est *the youngest* de la famille. 2. Marie est *the best* élève. 3. Jean est *as tall as* Marie. 4. Je ne suis pas *so tall as* Jean. 5. Julie est *the smallest*. 6. J'ai *more than* deux mois de vacances. 7. J'en ai *more than* Jean. 8. Nos leçons sont *shorter than* vos leçons. 9. J'ai *my easiest lessons* le lundi. 10. Il est *the oldest in* la famille.

D. Oral Exercise

1. Can you go to the country? 2. No, I can't go to the country. 3. I have too many lessons to study. 4. Our lessons are shorter. 5. They are not easier than your lessons. 6. I study a good deal. 7. John is a poorer pupil than Mary. 8. Mary is the best pupil in the class. 9. How many lessons do you have? 10. We have three on Tuesdays. 11. We are studying (the) lesson fourteen now. 12. Our lessons are not so long as their lessons. 13. We have more than three months of vacation. 14. Why do you like the summer vacation? 15. Because I go to my uncle's in the country. 16. What do you do in the country? 17. I study a little, but I work a great deal on the farm. 18. There is always a lot to do there. 19. We do not like to go to the movies in summer. 20. And we cannot go very often in winter, because we go to school.

E. Written Exercise

1. We can't study this morning. 2. It is too beautiful in the country. 3. We are going to take a walk. 4. We have already taken many walks in the beautiful paths of the woods. 5. Are there any pretty trees in the country now? 6. Yes, there are many of them, and there are also many pretty flowers. 7. It is very cool under the trees. 8. Is John going with his sisters? 9. No, he can't

go to the country; he has too many lessons to study. 10. Mary can go there, can she not? 11. Yes, she can go there, because she has already studied her lessons. 12. Her lessons are not so long as John's lessons. 13. But they are much more difficult. 14. There are many poorer students than Mary. 15. Who is the best student in her class?

F. Written Exercise

1. John has two sisters, Julia and Mary. 2. Mary is fifteen and Julia is seven. 3. They are very good students, and they study a good deal. 4. They have finished their lessons this morning. 5. Now they are going to see their uncle who has a big farm in the country. 6. John can't go (there), because he has not studied his lessons. 7. Mary and Julia like the country. 8. In spring it is always cool there. 9. And in summer it is not very hot. 10. Their uncle has a beautiful farm. 11. There are trees and flowers everywhere. 12. The girls like the woods, the lake and the animals of the farm. 13. The apple trees are in bloom now and are very beautiful. 14. Their uncle has two sons who are older than Julia, but are not so old as Mary. 15. They both go to school with the girls in winter. 16. In summer they work with their father on the farm.

LESSON XV

VOCABULARY

acheter [aʃte], to buy; — **à** to buy from (of).
ailleurs [ajœːr], *adv.*, elsewhere; **d'—,** besides, moreover.
le **bureau** [byro], the office, desk; — **de poste** [pɔst], the post-office.
chercher [ʃɛrʃe], (**à** + *inf.*), to seek, look for.
l'**encre** [ɑ̃ːkr], *f.*, the ink.
enfin [ɑ̃fɛ̃], *adv.*, finally, at last.
l'**enveloppe** [ɑ̃vlɔp], *f.*, the envelope.
la **lettre** [lɛtr], the letter.
le **papier** [papje], the paper; — **à lettre,** letter-paper, writing-paper; — **buvard** [byvaːr], the blotter, blotting-paper.
puis [pɥi], *adv.*, then, next, afterwards.
le **timbre** [tɛ̃ːbr], the stamp, postage-stamp; —**(s)-poste,** postage-stamp(s).
le **tiroir** [tirwaːr], the drawer.
trouver [truve], to find, like.

IDIOM

mettre à la poste, to mail (*of letters*)

Adverbs

120. Formation. Some adverbs have fixed forms, but most adverbs are formed by adding **–ment** to the feminine form of the adjective:

M.		*F.*
heureux [œrø]	happy	**heureuse** [œrø:z]
facile [fasil]	easy	**facile** [fasil]
certain [sɛrtɛ̃]	certain	**certaine** [sɛrtɛn]
malheureux [malœrø]	unhappy	**malheureuse** [malœrø:z]

Adverb	
heureusement	fortunately, happily
facilement	easily
certainement	certainly
malheureusement	unfortunately, unhappily

121. Comparison: Adverbs are compared like adjectives. **Le** in the superlative is invariable.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilement [fasilmɑ̃], easily	**plus facilement,** more easily	**le plus facilement,** most easily

122. The following adverbs are compared irregularly:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bien [bjɛ̃], well	**mieux** [mjø], better	**le mieux,** best
mal [mal], badly, ill	**plus mal, pis** [ply mal, pi], more badly, worse	**le plus mal, le pis,** most badly, worst
beaucoup [boku], much, very much	**plus** [ply], more	**le plus,** most
peu [pø], little	**moins** [mwɛ̃], less	**le moins,** least

Jean étudie bien, mais Marie étudie mieux. John studies well, but Mary studies better.

123. *De* with an Infinitive

Il est used impersonally and followed by an adjective or a noun commonly requires **de** before the following infinitive.

Il est facile de faire cela.	It is easy to do that.
Il est nécessaire d'expliquer la leçon.	It is necessary to explain the lesson.
Il est temps d'aller à la maison.	It is time to go home.

Observe:

1. 'It is' = **il est** when **il** is impersonal, has no preceding definite antecedent and represents a real subject that is to follow.

Il est facile de faire cela. It is easy to do that.
(**de faire cela** is the real subject of **est** and is represented by **il.**)

2. 'It is' = **c'est** where **ce** is a real subject and has as its antecedent a definite word or idea that has preceded. In this case an infinitive is preceded by **à.** Cf. § 117.

C'est facile à faire. It is easy to do.
(**ce** is a real subject and represents a preceding word or idea.)

124. Savoir: 'to know,' 'know how'

Requires no preposition before following infinitive.

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
savoir [savwaːr], 'to know'	**sachant** [saʃɑ̃], 'knowing'	**su** [sy], 'known'

125. Present Indicative

sais [se]
sais [se]
sait [se]
savons [savɔ̃]
savez [save]
savent [saːv]

126. Imperative

sache [saʃ]
sachons [saʃɔ̃]
sachez [saʃe]

A. Reading Exercise

1. Charles est à la maison. 2. Il veut faire une promenade, mais il fait mauvais temps. 3. D'ailleurs, c'est un bon jour pour écrire des lettres et il sait qu'il en a beaucoup à écrire. 4. Il cherche dans le bureau de son père et il y trouve facilement du papier à lettre et des enveloppes. 5. Mais il ne peut pas trouver sa plume. 6. Il a donné sa plume à sa sœur et maintenant il ne sait pas où elle est. 7. Il cherche partout; ah, la voilà sur la table. 8. Il trouve de l'encre dans un tiroir. 9. Le voilà assis devant le grand bureau de son père. 10. Il écrit à son frère qui est chez leur oncle à la campagne. 11. Leur oncle a une très belle ferme à la campagne. 12. Son frère aime beaucoup à travailler à la ferme, et il y passe beaucoup de temps. 13. Charles écrit aussi une lettre à son oncle et trois lettres à des amis. 14. Puis, il prend les lettres et va au bureau de poste pour acheter des timbres. 15. Il met les lettres à la poste. 16. Heureusement, il fait beau maintenant et il peut faire une promenade. 17. Il est bien heureux parce qu'il a écrit cinq lettres.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Où est Charles? 2. Pourquoi ne fait-il pas une promenade? 3. Aimez-vous à faire des promenades? 4. A-t-il beaucoup de lettres à écrire? 5. Aimez-vous à écrire des lettres? 6. Où est-ce que Charles trouve du papier à lettre et des enveloppes? 7. Sait-il où est l'encre? 8. À qui a-t-il donné sa plume? 9. Combien de lettres écrit-il? 10. Que fait-il après? 11. Où va-t-il acheter des timbres? 12. Où met-il ses lettres? 13. Pourquoi est-il heureux?

C. Grammatical Exercise

I. *Replace the italicised words with the proper French equivalent:* 1. Il étudie *easily*. 2. Elle étudie *more easily*. 3. *Fortunately* il n'est pas ici. 4. Elle parle français *very well*. 5. Il parle *better*. 6. Ils parlent français *very badly*. 7. Parlez *more clearly*. 8. Il est *younger* que Jean. 9. Mais il étudie *much better*. 10. Il sait écrire *better than* Jean. 11. Marie étudie *much better than* Jean.

II. *Translate:* 1. Do you know where he is? 2. We are going

to give you eleven books. 3. I have found sixteen. 4. They have studied fifteen lessons. 5. Lesson twelve is not very hard. 6. To-day's lesson is easier. 7. Do they know the lessons? 8. I don't know. 9. We have written fourteen exercises. 10. There are thirteen books here. 11. It is very easy to translate these sentences. 12. It is easy to do. 13. How old is your brother? 14. He is twenty.

D. Oral Exercise

1. What are you going to do? 2. I am going to write some letters. 3. Have you many letters to write? 4. I have five that I am going to write now. 5. It is very easy to write letters, is it not? 6. Yes, it is easy to write letters, if the pen is good. 7. This pen is not very good; it writes very poorly. 8. I like to write very much, but I want a good pen. 9. You write much better than I and much more easily. 10. Do you know where there are any stamps? 11. Fortunately there are some here. 12. Where are there any envelopes? 13. Here are some on the table and here is also some blotting-paper. 14. Are you going to mail these letters now? 15. We wish to mail our letters, but we do not know where the post-office is. 16. It is time to mail your letters now. 17. Give me your letters; I know where the post-office is. 18. What are you going to do now? 19. I am going to take a walk. 20. I am going with two friends and we are going to mail the letters. 21. It is Mary. 22. It is I. 23. It is easy, is it not?

E. Written Exercise

1. I have four letters to write today. 2. My pen writes very badly. 3. Give me your pen, please. 4. Your pen writes much better. 5. Do you know where there is any writing-paper? 6. Yes, there is some in that drawer. 7. I know where there are some envelopes too. 8. And you can find some stamps in this drawer. 9. Give me the ink, please. 10. Certainly, with pleasure. Here is some blotting-paper too. 11. Thank you, now I can write my letters. 12. I am going to write to some friends who are in the country. 13. They are having vacation now. 14. I have already written my friends two letters. 15. I like to write letters better than my friends [do].

F. Written Exercise

1. Where are your father and mother? 2. They are now at my uncle's in the country. 3. In summer they always go there for the vacation. 4. Unfortunately, I cannot go to the country this year, because I have to work. 5. I am going to write a letter to my father now. 6. And afterwards I am going to the post-office to buy some stamps. 7. Do you know where the ink is? 8. Here is the ink and there is writing-paper in that drawer. 9. Here are some envelopes. 10. Will you please mail those letters which are on the desk? 11. Certainly, with great pleasure. 12. Are you going to the movies this evening? 13. Yes, I am going with Mary. 14. Is your brother going too? 15. No, unfortunately he cannot go; he has too many letters to write.

LESSON XVI

VOCABULARY

la branche [brɑ̃ʃ], the branch.
content [kɔ̃tɑ̃], *adj.*, contented, glad, pleased (with, **de**).
en fleur [ɑ̃ flœːr], in bloom, in flower.
le gazon [gɑzɔ̃], the grass, turf.
l'histoire [istwaːr], *f.*, the story, tale, history.
jouer [ʒwe], to play.
malade [malad], *adj.*, sick, ill.
l'oiseau [wazo], *m.*, the bird.
le parc [park], the park.
personne [pɛrsɔn], *f.*, person.
le pique-nique [pik-nik], the picnic; **faire un —**, to go picnicking, to have a picnic.
quand [kɑ̃], *adv. or conj.*, when.
raconter [rakɔ̃te], to relate, tell, narrate.
sauter [sote], to jump, hop.
souffrant [sufrɑ̃], *adj.*, sick, ill, indisposed.

Imperfect Tense

'I was giving (finishing, selling),' 'used to give (finish, sell),' etc.

127. donner	**128.** finir	**129.** vendre
donn **ais** [dɔnɛ]	finiss **ais** [finisɛ]	vend **ais** [vɑ̃dɛ]
donn **ais** [dɔnɛ]	finiss **ais** [finisɛ]	vend **ais** [vɑ̃dɛ]
donn **ait** [dɔnɛ]	finiss **ait** [finisɛ]	vend **ait** [vɑ̃dɛ]
donn **ions** [dɔnjɔ̃]	finiss **ions** [finisjɔ̃]	vend **ions** [vɑ̃djɔ̃]
donn **iez** [dɔnje]	finiss **iez** [finisje]	vend **iez** [vɑ̃dje]
donn **aient** [dɔnɛ]	finiss **aient** [finisɛ]	vend **aient** [vɑ̃dɛ]

130. être	**131. avoir**
ét **ais** [etɛ], 'was,' etc.	av **ais** [avɛ], 'had,' etc.
ét **ais** [etɛ]	av **ais** [avɛ]
ét **ait** [etɛ]	av **ait** [avɛ]
ét **ions** [etjɔ̃]	av **ions** [avjɔ̃]
ét **iez** [etje]	av **iez** [avje]
ét **aient** [etɛ]	av **aient** [avɛ]

132. Formation. The imperfect indicative of most verbs (exceptions: **savoir, avoir,** etc.) may be formed by dropping the **–ant** of the present participle and adding the imperfect indicative endings given above: **–ais, –ais, –ait; –ions, –iez, –aient.**

Every French verb has these endings in the imperfect indicative:

Infinitive	Present Participle	Imperfect Indicative
voir, 'to see'	**voyant**	voy **ais** [vwajɛ], etc.
faire, 'to do,' 'make'	**faisant**	fais **ais** [fəzɛ], etc.
pouvoir, 'to be able'	**pouvant**	pouv **ais** [puvɛ], etc.
aller, 'to go'	**allant**	all **ais** [alɛ], etc.
vouloir, 'to wish'	**voulant**	voul **ais** [vulɛ], etc.
But: **savoir,** 'to know'	**sachant**	sav **ais** [savɛ], etc.
avoir, 'to have'	**ayant**	av **ais** [avɛ], etc.

133. Use. The imperfect indicative is usually used to translate the English:

1. 'was' (*or* 'were')—**ing,** expressing continued past action.
2. 'used to', 'would,' expressing customary or repeated action.

Il finissait le livre.	He was finishing the book.
Nous étudiions tous les matins.	We used to study every morning.
Il allait à l'église les dimanches.	He would go to church on Sundays.

134. The Imperfect and the Past Indefinite. The imperfect indicative emphasises a state or condition of things in the past and is used when there is no indication or implication that the state or condition has come to an end. The past indefinite

emphasises the result and indicates that the state or condition has come to an end: that is, the imperfect is a descriptive tense, the past indefinite, a narrative tense.

Ils étaient malades. They were sick (and may still be).
Ils ont été malades. They were sick (and are not now so).

135. Verbs indicating by their meaning a mental act (such as **savoir, penser, pouvoir, vouloir, désirer,** etc.) imply usually a continuance of a state of mind and as such are generally used in the imperfect rather than in the past definite or indefinite.

Il voulait aller avec son frère. He wanted to go with his brother.
Je ne savais pas cela. I didn't know that.

136. Pluperfect Tense. The pluperfect tense is made up of the imperfect of the auxiliary and the past participle.

Ils avaient étudié leurs leçons. They had studied their lessons.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Il faisait très beau ce matin-là. 2. Nous étions au mois d'avril, le meilleur mois du printemps. 3. Je voulais faire une promenade dans le parc. 4. Mon frère et ma sœur voulaient faire une promenade aussi. 5. Mais ma sœur, qui était souffrante, ne pouvait pas y aller et j'ai fait la promenade avec mon frère. 6. Le parc était très joli. 7. Il y avait de beaux arbres en fleur. 8. Partout on voyait des oiseaux qui sautaient de branche en branche. 9. Dans le parc, il y avait des enfants avec leurs bonnes. 10. Ils jouaient et sautaient. 11. Il faisait très beau temps et on voyait beaucoup de personnes. 12. Nous avons vu un vieil homme dans le parc qui vendait des fleurs. 13. Il racontait des histoires à des enfants qui étaient assis sur le gazon. 14. Les enfants étaient très contents. 15. Ils avaient un jour de vacances. 16. Et ils faisaient un pique-nique avec leurs petits amis. 17. Après leur pique-nique, les enfants ont fait une petite promenade avec leurs bonnes. 18. Nous avons fini notre promenade à six heures. 19. À la maison, mon père et ma mère étaient déjà à table.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Quel temps faisait-il ce matin-là? 2. Qu'est-ce que vous vouliez faire? 3. Qui était souffrant? 4. Est-ce que votre sœur pouvait

aller avec vous? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait dans le parc? 6. Est-ce que les arbres étaient en fleur? 7. Avez-vous vu des oiseaux? 8. Que faisaient-ils? 9. Où avez-vous vu des enfants? 10. Avec qui étaient-ils? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'ils faisaient dans le parc? 12. Le vieil homme, que vendait-il? 13. Qu'est-ce qu'il racontait aux enfants? 14. Qu'est-ce que les enfants ont fait après leur pique-nique? 15. À quelle heure est-ce que vous avez fini votre promenade?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Replace the italicised words with the proper form of the French verb: 1. Je *was studying* mes leçons. 2. Il *used to sell* des pommes. 3. Que *were they doing?* 4. Je *have not seen* votre frère. 5. Il *would tell* des histoires aux enfants. 6. Je *gave* le livre à Jean. 7. Que *did he do?* 8. Que *was he finishing?* 9. Je *did not see* vos livres. 10. Nous *used to have* des pique-niques.

D. Oral Exercise

1. We were studying. 2. They were finishing their lessons. 3. He used to sell books. 4. What did you do? 5. They wanted to take a walk. 6. I was with my mother. 7. There were some birds in the woods. 8. They were hopping from tree to tree. 9. When I finished the book, he was still studying. 10. I could not go with John. 11. Where were the flowers? 12. They were on the table. 13. The children were having their vacation. 14. They were very contented. 15. He used to tell very long stories. 16. What was the teacher giving the pupils? 17. He was giving the pupils some pencils. 18. In the park we used to see many children. 19. They were having picnics. 20. It was six o'clock and now it is seven o'clock.

E. Written Exercise

1. When we took our walk, the woods were very pretty. 2. The trees were in bloom. 3. The little birds were hopping from branch to branch. 4. In the park we saw a lot of children. 5. They were with their nurses. 6. The children were playing and jumping. 7. There were also some children seated on the grass. 8. They had found an old man who was selling flowers. 9. And he was

telling stories to the children. 10. The children were very happy. 11. Children are always happy when they have vacation. 12. All the children and their nurses were picnicking. 13. We finished our walk at six o'clock. 14. When we were going home, the children had finished their picnic.

F. Written Exercise

1. We used to go to the country in summer. 2. My uncle had a farm there. 3. The farm was very large and my uncle used to work every day. 4. He had two sons who were at school in winter. 5. In summer, when they had vacation, they would work on the farm. 6. My brother, who was seventeen years old, would always go to the country too. 7. There were many apple trees at my uncle's. 8. The apples ripened in July or August. 9. My uncle used to sell his apples in September. 10. They were very good when they were ripe. 11. When the weather was hot, we would go picnicking. 12. There were some fine woods on my uncle's farm. 13. It was there that we used to have our picnics. 14. Do you like to go picnicking? 15. Yes, when it is not too warm.

LESSON XVII

VOCABULARY

autre [o:tr], *adj.*, other.
causer [koze], to chat, talk.
la chose [ʃo:z], the thing.
dire [di:r], (**de** + *inf.*), to say, tell (*in sense of command*); **dites** [dit], *imptv.*, say, tell.
la faute [fot], the fault, mistake.
plusieurs [plyzjœr], *adj. pron.*, several.
rapide [rapid], *adj.*, rapid.
la salle à manger [sal a mãʒe], the dining-room.
sérieux [serjø], *adj.*, serious.
la tante [tã:t], the aunt.
le verbe [vɛrb], the verb.

Idioms

de bonne heure [də bɔn œ:r], early
être fort en [ɛ:tr fɔrt ã], to be good at, excellent in
par conséquent [pa:r kɔ̃sekã], consequently
poser des questions à [poze de kɛstjɔ̃z a], to put (ask) questions to (of)

Avoir and *Être* as Auxiliaries

137. The two auxiliaries used in forming compound tenses in French are: **avoir** and **être.**

138. **Avoir** is used as auxiliary with all transitive verbs and many intransitives.

139. **Être** is used as auxiliary with all reflexive verbs and some intransitives.

1. The intransitive verbs conjugated with **être** are:

(*Learn*):

(*a*) The following intransitives indicating a change of state: **mourir** [muriːr], *pp.* **mort** [mɔr]; **naître** [nɛːtr], *pp.* **né** [ne].

(*b*) The following intransitives indicating a change of position or motion in which the kind of motion is not indicated.

Inf.		*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*3d Sing. Pres.*
aller [ale]	'to go'	**allant**	**allé**	**va**
venir [vəniːr]	'to come'	**venant**	**venu**	**vient**
arriver [arive]	'to arrive,' 'happen'	**arrivant**	**arrivé**	**arrive**
partir [partiːr]	'to leave,' 'depart,' 'set out'	**partant**	**parti**	**part**
entrer [ɑ̃tre][1]	'to enter,' 'come (go) in'	**entrant**	**entré**	**entre**
sortir [sɔrtiːr]	'to go out'	**sortant**	**sorti**	**sort**
monter [mɔ̃te]	'to go up,' 'mount'	**montant**	**monté**	**monte**
descendre [desɑ̃ːdr]	'to descend,' 'go down'	**descendant**	**descendu**	**descend**
tomber [tɔ̃be]	'to fall'	**tombant**	**tombé**	**tombe**

(*c*) The verb **rester:**

rester [rɛste]	'to stay,' 'remain'	**restant**	**resté**	**reste**

Agreement of the Past Participle

140. The past participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with **être** agrees with the subject in gender and number.

[1] Followed by **dans** before a noun.

Elle est sortie.	She has gone out.
Nous sommes arrivés.	We have arrived.

141. The past participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with **avoir** remains invariable.

Elle a causé avec ses amis.	She chatted with her friends.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Ce matin-là Jean et Charles avaient beaucoup à faire. 2. Par conséquent, ils sont descendus de très bonne heure pour le petit déjeuner. 3. Leur père, qu'ils ont trouvé dans la salle à manger, était déjà à table. 4. Leur mère et leur tante n'étaient pas encore descendues. 5. Les deux frères ont commencé à déjeuner tout de suite. 6. Après le petit déjeuner, ils ont bien travaillé pendant une grande heure. 7. À huit heures, ils sont sortis de la maison pour aller à l'école. 8. Là, ils ont trouvé plusieurs de leurs amis. 9. Ils ont causé avec ces amis pendant quinze minutes. 10. Alors il était temps d'entrer dans la classe pour leur leçon de français. 11. Il y avait quinze élèves dans la classe. 12. Le professeur a commencé par poser des questions à Jean. 13. Jean est très fort en français. 14. Il a fait des fautes, mais elles n'étaient pas très sérieuses. 15. Charles n'est pas si fort en français que Jean. 16. Il a fait beaucoup de fautes de grammaire. 17. Après, le professeur a dit à Charles — Voulez-vous bien écrire au tableau le présent du verbe 'faire.' 18. Charles ne savait pas trop bien le présent de ce verbe. 19. Le professeur a dit à Jean de corriger les fautes de Charles. 20. Puis, le professeur a posé des questions de grammaire à toute la classe. 21. Et il a corrigé les fautes dans les exercices des autres élèves. 22. Après la classe de français, Jean et Charles sont allés à la classe d'anglais et à la classe d'histoire. 23. À une heure ils sont sortis pour aller déjeuner.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Pourquoi est-ce que Jean et Charles ont déjeuné de bonne heure? 2. Qui était dans la salle à manger quand ils y sont arrivés? 3. Leur mère y était aussi, n'est-ce pas? 4. Qu'ont-ils fait après le petit déjeuner? 5. À quelle heure sont-ils sortis de la maison? 6. Qui

ont-ils trouvé à l'école? 7. Combien d'élèves y avait-il dans la classe? 8. Qui est le plus fort en français, Jean ou Charles? 9. Qu'est-ce que Charles a écrit au tableau? 10. A-t-il fait beaucoup de fautes? 11. Qui a corrigé ses fautes? 12. Qu'est-ce que le professeur a fait après? 13. À quelle heure sont-ils sortis de l'école?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Supply the past participle of the verb whose infinitive is given in parentheses: 1. Ma mère est déjà (entrer). 2. Marie est (sortir). 3. À quelle heure sont-elles (descendre)? 4. Nous sommes (descendre) à sept heures. 5. Ils sont (arriver) de bonne heure. 6. Elle est (naître) au mois de septembre. 7. Ils sont (monter). 8. Quand est-elle (partir)? 9. Elle y est (rester) deux semaines. 10. Nous sommes (entrer) et puis nous sommes (monter). 11. Elles sont (mourir). 12. Ils sont (aller) à la maison. 13. Est-elle (venir) voir son cousin? 14. Les feuilles sont (tomber). 15. Nous sommes (naître) ici.

D. Oral Exercise

1. They have left. 2. We have arrived. 3. She came down at nine o'clock. 4. At what time did they (*f.*) leave? 5. He entered the room rapidly. 6. They have gone to their aunt's. 7. Why did he go out? 8. Where did she go? 9. Where were they born? 10. She died on Monday. 11. They came to see their friends. 12. My sister and my aunt have gone out. 13. At what time did they go out? 14. My mother stayed home. 15. The pens have fallen. 16. I have several other things to do. 17. It is not easy to write letters. 18. Will you please mail these letters? 19. Where did they go? 20. Mary went to school, but her brother stayed home.

E. Written Exercise

1. This morning I breakfasted at seven o'clock, because I wanted to study my lessons. 2. When I went down [stairs] I found that the table was already set. 3. My mother and father had already come down and they were in the dining-room when I entered. 4. They were breakfasting early too, because my father had a lot of things

to do at the office. 5. After breakfast I wrote two compositions and studied the grammar. 6. Fortunately, the lessons were not very long, but they were quite difficult. 7. At eight o'clock I set out for school with my brother. 8. It was rather cold, but I like cold weather and we walked very rapidly. 9. We found some friends at school and we chatted a while. 10. Then we went into the French class. 11. I am not very good in French and I did not know my lesson very well. 12. The teacher began by explaining the things which were in the lesson. 13. Then he put several grammar questions to the class and we wrote the compositions on the board. 14. I made a lot of mistakes and the teacher told me to study better. 15. I knew that I had not studied enough and I was ashamed of it. 16. After three other classes, we left school and went home for lunch.

LESSON XVIII

VOCABULARY

aimer mieux [ɛme mjø], to prefer.
le cadeau [kado], the present, gift.
la chaussette [ʃosɛt], the sock.
le chèque [ʃɛk], the check.
choisir (2) [ʃwaziːr], to choose, select.
le cigare [sigaːr], the cigar.
la cigarette [sigarɛt], the cigarette.
le commis [kɔmi], the clerk.
la couleur [kulœːr], the color.
la cravate [kravat] the tie, cravat.
demain [dəmɛ̃], *adv.*, tomorrow.
envoyer [ɑ̃vwaje], to send.
la fête [fɛːt], the fête, festivity, holiday; **un jour de —,** holiday, festival.
fumer [fyme], to smoke.
hier [jɛːr], *adv.*, yesterday; **— soir,** yesterday evening, last night.
la laine [lɛn], the wool.
le magasin [magazɛ̃], the shop, store.
le mouchoir [muʃwaːr], the handkerchief.
Noël [nɔɛl], *m.*, Christmas.
la pipe [pip], the pipe.
porter [pɔrte], to carry, wear.
préférer [prefɛre], to prefer.
le roman [rɔmɑ̃], the novel.
la sorte [sɔrt], the kind, class, sort.
le tabac [taba], the tobacco.
la ville [vil], the city, town; **en —,** in town, down town.

IDIOMS

faire des emplettes [ɑ̃plɛt], to go shopping
faire des cadeaux, to give presents
fumer la pipe, to smoke a pipe

Conjunctive Personal Pronouns

142. Use. The conjunctive personal pronouns are used only as (1) subject of a verb, or (2) as direct or indirect object of a verb (including the reflexive pronoun objects).

143. Forms. The conjunctive personal pronouns are:

	Person	Subject	Dir. Obj.	Indir. Obj.	Reflexive
Sing.	1.	**je** [ʒə]	**me** [mə]	**me** [mə]	**me** [mə]
	2.	**tu** [ty]	**te** [tə]	**te** [tə]	**te** [tə]
	3.	**il** [il], **elle** [ɛl]	**le** [lə], **la** [la]	**lui** [lɥi]	**se** [sə]
Plur.	1.	**nous** [nu]	**nous** [nu]	**nous** [nu]	**nous** [nu]
	2.	**vous** [vu]	**vous** [vu]	**vous** [vu]	**vous** [vu]
	3.	**ils** [il], **elles** [ɛl]	**les** [le]	**leur** [lœːr]	**se** [sə]

144. Position. In the Affirmative Imperative, the conjunctive pronoun objects follow the verb and are joined to it by a hyphen. **Me** and **te** are, in such case, replaced by **moi** and **toi.**

Donnez-le à Jean.	Give it to John.
Donnez-lui les plumes.	Give him the pens.
Donnez-moi le livre.	Give me the book.
Assieds-toi.	Seat yourself, sit down.

145. In all other cases, that is, in the negative imperative, infinitive, and in all other forms of the verb, the conjunctive pronoun object precedes the verb, or the auxiliary (in a compound tense).

Ne lui vendez pas ces cadeaux.	Don't sell him these presents.
Il m'a donné le livre.	He gave me the book.
Jean leur fait des cadeaux.	John gives them gifts.
Il ne peut pas vous donner le livre.	He cannot give you the book.

146. 1. **Le,** invariable, is often used in the predicate when referring to an adjective or to a noun used adjectively.

Êtes-vous heureuse?	Are you happy?
Je le suis.	I am (it).
Êtes-vous mère?	Are you a mother?
Je le suis.	I am (it).

2. When referring to a whole phrase, invariable **le** is often translated by 'so.'

Vient-il? Je le pense. Is he coming? I think so.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Demain, c'est la fête de Noël. 2. Nous avons dix jours de vacances et elles ont déjà commencé. 3. Hier nous sommes allés en ville pour acheter des cadeaux. 4. Nous sommes entrés dans plusieurs magasins où nous avons vu toutes sortes de belles choses. 5. Dans un de magasins où nous sommes entrés, le commis voulait nous vendre des mouchoirs. 6. Et nous en avons acheté pour ma mère. 7. Il y avait aussi des chaussettes de laine de toutes les couleurs. 8. Nous en avons acheté pour mon frère. 9. Je voulais lui donner de jolies cravates, mais il n'en a pas besoin cette année. 10. Pour mon père nous avons acheté plusieurs romans, parce qu'il les aime beaucoup. 11. Nous avons porté tous nos cadeaux à la maison et les avons mis sur l'arbre de Noël. 12. Je sais que mon père va me donner un chèque. 13. Avec ce chèque je peux m'acheter beaucoup de choses. 14. Je fais toujours un cadeau à mon professeur. 15. Cette année, je vais lui donner du tabac, parce qu'il fume la pipe.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Quelle fête est-ce demain? 2. Avez-vous de longues vacances? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'on donne à ses amis à Noël? 4. Qu'est-ce que vous aimez comme cadeaux? 5. Aimez-vous les mouchoirs et les cravates? 6. Qu'est-ce que vous préférez aux cravates? 7. Aimez-vous mieux les livres? 8. Qu'est-ce que votre père va vous donner? 9. Qu'allez-

vous acheter avec le chèque? 10. Faites-vous des cadeaux à vos professeurs? 11. Est-ce qu'ils vous font des cadeaux aussi?

C. Oral Exercise

1. He gave me the books. 2. Why did you send him the present? 3. Sell them the woolen socks. 4. Don't give me any handkerchiefs. 5. I am going to give you a cravat. 6. We don't need any. 7. You gave us two cravats last year. 8. I have them now. 9. Don't show me any books. 10. I don't wish to buy any. 11. Give John some tobacco. 12. Does he smoke a pipe? 13. Yes, and he smokes cigars and cigarettes, too. 14. Then I am going to give John some. 15. What did he give you last year? 16. He gave me a lot of books. 17. Do you like novels? 18. These novels are new. 19. Don't put them on the table. 20. Do you wear wool socks? Why not? 21. He did not give us any presents. 22. Give me books, don't give me any cravats. 23. I don't need them this year.

D. Written Exercise

1. When Christmas arrives we always give presents to our friends. 2. I like to go [and] buy presents in the stores. 3. In the stores there are always so many things to see. 4. We went to town yesterday to shop, and we bought some presents. 5. We went into one store where the clerk wanted to sell us some handkerchiefs. 6. They were very pretty. 7. But I know that my brother does not wish any. 8. I asked him if he wanted any woolen socks. 9. But he prefers books to all (the) other presents. 10. He likes novels very much. 11. My father always gives him a check. 12. Then he can select the books which he wishes. 13. Don't give him any cigarettes. 14. You can give me tobacco or a good looking tie. 15. And you can always give me books. 16. Father gave me a lot of books last year. 17. I saw many cravats in the stores, but I didn't want any. I have enough. 18. I bought some for my friend John. 20. I also bought him a pipe, because he smokes a great deal.

LESSON XIX

VOCABULARY

s'amuser [samyze], (**à** + *inf.*), to amuse oneself (in), to have a good time (in).
après que [aprɛ kə], *conj.*, after.
se coucher [sə kuʃe], to go to bed, set (*of sun*).
dehors [dəɔːr], *adv.*, outside.
se dépêcher [sə depɛʃe], (**de** + *inf.*), to hurry (to *or* and), hasten.
fatigué [fatige], *adj.*, tired, weary.
le film [film], the film.
flatter [flate], to flatter.
généralement [ʒeneralmɑ̃], *adv.*, generally, usually.
s'habiller [sabije], to get dressed, dress one's self.
intéressant [ɛ̃teresɑ̃], *adj.*, interesting.
inviter [ɛ̃vite], (**à** + *inf.*), to invite
se laver [sə lave], to wash oneself.
le lendemain [lɑ̃dmɛ̃], the next day, day after.
se lever [sə ləve], to get up, rise.
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃], *adv.*, long, a long time (while).
occupé [ɔkype], *adj.*, busy.
se peigner [sə pɛɲe], to comb one's hair.
préparer [prepare], to prepare; **se** —, (**à** + *inf.*), to prepare oneself (to), get ready (to).
quitter [kite], *trans.*, to leave.
rentrer [rɑ̃tre], to come back home, re-enter, return home.
réveiller [revɛje], to awaken; **se** —, to wake up, awake.

IDIOMS

faire des courses [de kurs], to go on (do) errands
avoir envie (**de**) [ɑ̃vi (də)], to desire, have a desire (to)

Reflexive Verbs

147. Reflexive Verbs are transitive verbs in which the object pronoun of the verb refers to the same person or thing as the subject. All transitive verbs may, therefore, be made reflexive. The reflexive object pronoun follows the general rule for position of object pronouns. All reflexives take **être** as auxiliary

Agreement of Past Participles (Continued)

148. The past participle of all reflexive verbs (auxiliary **être**) and of all transitive verbs (auxiliary **avoir**) agrees in

gender and number with the preceding direct object. If there is no preceding direct object, the past participle remains invariable.

Elles se sont bien amusées. They had a very good time.

NOTE. — **Se** is a preceding direct object.

Les plumes que je vous ai données. The pens I gave you.

NOTE. — **Que,** referring to **plumes** is a preceding direct object.

BUT: **Elles se sont fait des cadeaux.** They gave each other gifts.

NOTE. — **Se** is an indirect object, hence no agreement.

149. The past participle does not agree with **en,** no matter what the antecedent of **en** may be.

M'avez-vous donné des plumes?	Did you give me any pens?
Oui, je vous en ai donné.	Yes, I gave you some.

Un [œ̃], Autre [o:tr]

150. If reflexive verbs are used in a reciprocal sense ('each other,' 'one another') the following combinations of **un, une** and **autre** may be added to avoid ambiguity.

l'un (l'une) l'autre, the one, the other; each other, one another
l'un (l'une) et l'autre, both
l'un (l'une) à l'autre, to each other

Ils se flattent l'un l'autre.	They flatter each other.
Elles se sont écrit l'une à l'autre.	They wrote to each other.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Un soir, Marie et sa sœur se sont couchées de bonne heure. 2. Le lendemain était un jour de fête et elles avaient beaucoup à faire. 3. À sept heures leur père les a réveillées. 4. Elles se sont levées tout de suite. 5. Après qu'elles se sont lavées et peignées, elles se sont dépêchées de s'habiller. 6. À huit heures elles sont descendues à la salle à manger, où elles ont trouvé le petit déjeuner déjà préparé. 7. Elles sont sorties pour faire des courses. 8. Leur père les avait invitées à déjeuner en ville. 9. Il faisait très froid et elles n'avaient pas envie de rester longtemps dehors. 10. Après le

déjeuner, elles sont allées au cinéma. 11. C'était très intéressant et elles se sont bien amusées. 12. Les deux sœurs aiment beaucoup le cinéma quand il y a un bon film. 13. Leur dîner était à sept heures et elles se sont bien dépêchées de rentrer. 14. Après le dîner elles ont écrit des lettres à des amis. 15. Elles se sont couchées de bonne heure, parce qu'elles étaient un peu fatiguées.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Pourquoi est-ce que Marie et sa sœur se sont couchées hier soir de bonne heure? 2. À quelle heure est-ce que leur père les a réveillées ce matin? 3. Ont-elles trouvé le petit déjeuner déjà sur la table? 4. Que sert-on généralement pour le petit déjeuner en France? 5. Avaient-elles des courses à faire en ville? 6. Où ont-elles déjeuné? 7. Avec qui? 8. Qu'ont-elles fait après le déjeuner? 9. Faisait-il très froid? 10. Aimez-vous le cinéma? 11. Est-ce que les deux sœurs se sont bien amusées? 12. À quelle heure était leur dîner? 13. Qu'ont-elles fait après le dîner? 14. Pourquoi se sont-elles couchées de bonne heure?

C. Oral Exercise

1. She got up early. 2. They had a very good time. 3. We are going to get dressed at once. 4. Do not hurry. 5. Go to bed early. 6. He awoke them at seven o'clock. 7. Have you combed your hair? 8. Hurry up and come down stairs. 9. When they had studied their lessons they went to bed. 10. I have had a very good time. 11. We woke up early this morning. 12. She got ready to go out. 13. We hurried to come down stairs. 14. I am going to go to bed. 15. We washed ourselves and combed our hair. 16. They (*f.*) are flattering each other. 17. She came back home at eleven p.m. 18. We gave each other gifts. 19. The next day they got up at eight o'clock. 20. Do not go to bed now.

D. Grammatical Exercise

Repeat the Reading Exercise, using:

1. **Je** as subject.
2. **Vous** as subject.

E. Written Exercise

1. I went to bed early last night. 2. I was very tired and after I had dined, I went up stairs. 3. The next day was Saturday and I knew that I was going to be very busy. 4. I awoke at seven o'clock. 5. It was very cold in my room. 6. I got up and shut the windows and I began to get dressed. 7. Then I washed, combed my hair and went down stairs. 8. My mother and father were already in the dining-room and we had breakfast. 9. After breakfast I went to see one of my friends and I asked him if he wanted to do some errands with me down town. 10. He said that he had some errands to do too. 11. We went down town. 12. There were a lot of people in the streets. 13. At one o'clock we had lunch with some friends and then we went to a movie. 14. I have always liked them very much. 15. This film was very good and we had a very good time. 16. At six o'clock I left my friends and hurried to come back home to dine.

LESSON XX

VOCABULARY

attendre (3) [atɑ̃ːdr], to wait (for), await, expect.
embarrasser [ɑ̃barase], to embarrass.
la fin [fɛ̃], the end; **à la —,** finally, at last.
le franc [frɑ̃], the franc (*normally about 20 cents*).
la gare [gaːr], the station.
le gilet [ʒilɛ], the vest.
le guichet [giʃɛ], the ticket-window.
laisser [lɛse], to let, allow, permit; **— tomber,** to let fall, drop.
le moment [mɔmɑ̃], the moment.
ouvrir [uvriːr], to open; **ouvert** [uvɛr], *pp.*, opened.
le pantalon [pɑ̃talɔ̃], the trousers.
le pardessus [pardəsy], the overcoat.
penser (à) [pɑ̃se], **(à** + *inf.*), to think (of).
peut-être [pətɛːtr], *adv.*, perhaps, maybe.
la poche [pɔʃ], the pocket.
le porte-monnaie [pɔrtmɔnɛ], the purse.
quelque [kɛlkə], *adj.*, some; *pl.* a few.
la queue [kø], the tail, cue; **faire —,** to stand in line.
le sou [su], the cent.

tard [ta:r], *adv.*, late.
le train [trɛ̃], the train.
le veston [vɛstɔ̃], the jacket, sack-coat.
la visite [vizit], the call, visit, inspection.

Idioms

faire une visite [yn vizit], to pay a call, visit, go calling
au moment où, at the moment when
peu à peu [pø a pø], little by little
se trouver [truve], to find oneself, be located (situated), be.

Negatives

151. The principal negatives used with verbs are:

ne [nə] . . . **pas** [pɑ], not
ne . . . point [pwɛ̃], not at all
ne . . . jamais [ʒamɛ], never
ne . . . plus [ply], no more, no longer
ne . . . guère [gɛ:r], scarcely
ne . . . rien [rjɛ̃], nothing
ne . . . personne [pɛrsɔn], nobody, no one
ne . . . que [kə], only
ne . . . aucun [okœ̃], not any
ne . . . nul [nyl], not any
ne . . . ni [ni] . . . **ni** [ni], neither . . . nor

1. **Jamais** used alone means 'ever.'

Avez-vous jamais étudié l'espagnol? Have you ever studied Spanish?

152. Position of negatives. In declarative sentences: **ne** is placed immediately after the subject and the second negative word immediately after the verb (in a simple tense) or the auxiliary (in a compound tense). Pronoun objects follow **ne.**

Subj. } **ne** } Pron. Obj. | Verb (Aux.) } 2nd Neg. Word } (Past Part.)

Il ne me donne rien. He gives me nothing.
Je ne vous ai pas donné le livre. I did not give you the book.

153. In interrogative sentences: The word order is as in § **152** except for the pronoun subject, which is placed immediately after the verb (in a simple tense), or the auxiliary (in a compound tense).

Ne lui donnez-vous rien? Do you not give him anything?
N'ont-ils pas acheté le livre? Haven't they bought the book?

154. Ne . . . pas and **ne . . . point** are usually placed together before an infinitive.

Elle aime mieux ne pas le faire.	She prefers not to do it.

155. Exceptions. In compound tenses, **personne** (of **ne . . . personne**) and **ni . . . ni** (of **ne . . . ni . . . ni**) are regularly placed after the past participle.

Je n'ai vu personne.	I saw no one.
Il ne m'a donné ni pain ni beurre.	He gave me neither bread nor butter.

156. Que (of **ne . . . que**) is placed where 'only' is placed in the English sentence.

Il n'y avait que trois messieurs dans la salle où je suis entré.	There were only three gentlemen in the room which I entered.

157. When a verb is understood, **ne** is omitted and the complementary negative is used alone to express negation. **Pas,** however, must be supported by some other word.

Vous ne l'avez jamais vu? Jamais.	You have never seen him? Never.
Qui est là? Personne.	Who is there? No one.
Voulez-vous du café? Pas de café.	Do you wish some coffee? No coffee.

158. Rien, 'nothing,' and **quelque chose,** 'something,' require **de** in French before a following adjective (which is always masculine singular).

Rien de nouveau.	Nothing new.
Quelque chose de très beau.	Something very beautiful.
Je n'ai jamais rien vu de plus intéressant.	I have never seen anything more interesting.

1. After **rien** and **quelque chose,** followed by an adjective in the comparative form, 'than to' + infinitive = **que de.**

Il n'y a rien de plus difficile que d'appendre bien une langue	There is nothing harder than to learn a language well

A. Reading Exercise

1. Une chose assez embarassante m'est arrivée hier. 2. Je voulais aller à Tours pour faire une visite. 3. Je savais très bien que j'avais assez de temps, parce que le train pour Tours ne part qu'à neuf heures. 4. Et je suis parti de la maison à huit heures. 5. Je suis arrivé à la gare à huit heures vingt, mais le guichet n'était pas encore ouvert. 6. On faisait déjà queue devant le guichet et j'y ai pris place. 7. Il y avait assez de monde, mais peu à peu je suis arrivé au guichet. 8. J'ai cherché mon porte-monnaie dans les poches de mon veston et de mon gilet. 9. Il n'y était pas. 10. Alors, j'ai commencé à chercher dans toutes mes poches. 11. Je n'ai rien trouvé. 12. Jamais, je n'ai été si embarassé. 13. J'ai pensé que je l'avais laissé tomber peut-être et j'ai demandé à tout le monde si on l'avait vu. 14. Mais personne ne l'avait vu et je n'ai pas pu le trouver. 15. Il n'y avait dans ma poche que quelques sous. 16. Il n'y avait rien à faire. 17. J'ai perdu ma place dans la queue. 18. Je suis sorti de la gare, cherchant toujours mon porte-monnaie et je l'ai trouvé enfin avec mon mouchoir dans la poche de mon pardessus. 19. Mais il était déjà trop tard; le train était parti. 20. Par conséquent, je suis rentré attendre jusqu'au lendemain.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Pourquoi alliez-vous à Tours? 2. À quelle heure est-ce que le train partait pour Tours? 3. Y avait-il beaucoup de monde à la gare? 4. Pourquoi faisait-on queue devant le guichet? 5. Qu'est-ce qui vous est arrivé devant le guichet? 6. N'aviez-vous rien dans vos poches? 7. Qu'avez-vous fait? 8. Où avez-vous trouvé votre porte-monnaie à la fin? 9. Est-ce qu'il était trop tard pour prendre le train? 10. Qu'avez-vous fait alors?

C. Oral Exercise

1. I did not give him anything. 2. We have not any at all. 3. She did not see anyone. 4. They sent us only two books. 5. No one has ever seen them. 6. There were not any more. 7. Who is here? No one. 8. No student studies too much. 9. Have you never seen his friend? No, never. 10. I have never given him anything. 11. They have not any more of it. 12. I did not give

any to anyone. 13. We have only six. 14. I have not any at all. 15. Do not give John any more of it. 16. There is no one here. 17. I found only two francs in my trousers' pockets. 18. We never wear a vest in summer. 19. Have you nothing new? 20. Give us something good. 21. There is nothing easier than to lose one's purse.

D. Written Exercise

1. Have you ever stood in line before a ticket-window? 2. It is never very interesting. 3. And there is never a more embarrassing moment than when one can't find one's purse. 4. The other day John wished to go to Tours. 5. He arrived at the station and had only ten minutes to get his ticket. 6. There were a lot of people who were standing in line. 7. He took his place, and finally arrived in front of the ticket-window. 8. Then he couldn't find his purse. 9. He had never been so embarrassed. 10. There were only a few cents in his trousers' pockets. 11. He thought perhaps he had dropped his purse. 12. He spoke of it to some gentlemen who were there, but no one had seen it. 13. He lost his place in the line. 14. Then, ten minutes later, he found his purse in his overcoat pocket. 15. But it was too late; the train had already gone.

LESSON XXI

VOCABULARY

accompagner [akɔ̃paɲe], to accompany, go with.
afin de [afɛ̃ də], *prep.*, to, in order to.
ainsi [ɛ̃si], *adv.*, thus, so.
américain [amerikɛ̃], *adj.*, American.
apprendre [aprɑ̃:dr], (**à** + *inf.*), to learn; **apprend** [aprɑ̃], *3rd. sing. pres.*, learns; **appris** [apri], *pp.*, learned.
chacun [ʃakœ̃], *indef. pron.* (*f.* **chacune** [ʃakyn]), each, each one, everyone.
la chambre [ʃɑ̃:br], the room.
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃], *adj.*, charming.
comme [kɔm], *adv.*, as, like.
délicieux [delisjø], *adj.*, delicious, delightful.
différent [diferɑ̃], *adj.*, different, various.
enchanté [ɑ̃ʃɑ̃te] (**de**), *adj.*, delighted (with).

entendre (3) [ātāːdr], to hear.
espérer [ɛspɛre], to hope.
excellent [ɛksɛlā], *adj.*, excellent.
le **fruit** [frɥi], the fruit.
le **nom** [nɔ̃], the name, noun.
nommer [nɔme], to name, call.
le **numéro** [nymero], the number.
oublier [ublie], (**de** + *inf.*), to forget (to).
la **pension** [pāsjɔ̃], the boarding-house, pension.
le **plat** [pla], the dish.
pourtant [purtā], *adv.*, nevertheless, however.
répéter [repete], to repeat.
la **salade** [salad], the salad.
sûr [syːr], *adj.*, sure, certain.
le **tour** [tuːr], the turn.
vraiment [vrɛmā], *adv.*, truly, really.

Idioms

de cette façon (manière) [də sɛt fasɔ̃ (manjɛːr)], in this (that) way.
en famille, at home, informally
il faut [fo], **il fallait** [falɛ] (*3rd. sing. pres. and imperf. of impersonal verb* **falloir** [falwaːr], 'to be necessary'), it is (was) necessary
tout à fait [tut a fɛ], quite, wholly

Passive Voice

159. The passive voice is used much less in French than in English. It is formed as in English with the verb 'to be' and the past participle of a transitive verb, which agrees in gender and number with the subject.

Elle est beaucoup aimée.	She is much loved.
La maison est vendue.	The house is sold.

160. The agent of the passive is preceded in French by:

1. **par,** when the verb indicates a physical act referring to a specific or single occurrence.

Les livres sont achetés par les élèves.	The books are bought by the pupils.

2. **de,** when the verb indicates an emotion or an habitual act.

Elles sont aimées de tout le monde.	They are loved by everybody.
Marie est toujours accompagnée de son père.	Mary is always accompanied by her father.

161. The English passive is usually translated into French when the agent is not mentioned, by:

1. The indefinite pronoun **on.**

On parle français ici.	French is spoken here. (One speaks French here.)

2. The reflexive **se.**

Cela se dit souvent.	That is often said.

Prepositions

162. De, à, pour, sans, par are followed by the simple infinitive where in English we frequently find a present participle:

Il est parti sans rien dire.	He left without saying anything.
Elle a fini par se fâcher.	She ended by getting angry.

163. En requires the present participle, usually translated by 'while,' 'by,' 'upon,' 'on,' etc.

En entrant dans la chambre, je l'ai vu.	Upon entering the room I saw him.

164. Après requires the perfect infinitive:

Après lui avoir donné le livre, il est parti.	After giving him the book, he went away.
Après m'être levé, je me suis habillé.	After getting up I dressed myself.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Enfin nous voici à Paris et, après avoir cherché assez longtemps, nous avons trouvé une bonne pension. 2. Madame Martin est une femme charmante. 3. Elle est aimée de tout le monde. 4. On entend un excellent français ici. 5. Nous sommes heureux de trouver qu'il n'y a pas d'Américains dans cette pension. 6. Nous espérons pourtant voir nos amis de temps en temps. 7. Les repas sont vraiment délicieux. 8. Le matin nous déjeunons sans sortir de notre chambre. 9. On sert le déjeuner et le dîner dans la salle à manger. 10. En déjeunant et en dînant, on nous nomme tous les plats.

11. Et nous en répétons les noms, chacun à notre tour, afin de ne pas les oublier. 12. Notre pension se trouve numéro cinq, boulevard St. Germain. 13. J'attends demain mon frère, qui va être accompagné par ses deux fils. 14. Il compte rester ici une semaine. 15. Il va être enchanté de notre pension, j'en suis sûr. 16. Nous y sommes tout à fait en famille. 17. Heureusement, on ne parle que français tout le temps.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Avez-vous trouvé une bonne pension? 2. Est-ce qu'on y parle anglais? 3. Y a-t-il des Américains dans votre pension? 4. Les repas, sont-ils bons? 5. Où est-ce qu'on sert le petit déjeuner? 6. Qu'est-ce qu'on fait pour apprendre les noms des plats? 7. Oubliez-vous facilement les noms ainsi appris? 8. Que faites-vous pour ne pas les oublier? 9. Aimez-vous à apprendre le français ainsi? 10. Où se trouve votre pension? 11. Qui attendez-vous demain? 12. Votre frère va être enchanté de votre pension, n'est-ce pas?

C. Oral Exercise

1. She is always accompanied by her sons. 2. The school is located [on] Boulevard St. Germain. 3. Dinner is served at seven o'clock. 4. She is loved by every one. 5. The book was bought by one of the pupils. 6. French is spoken here always. 7. The lesson was repeated by the pupils. 8. Each one is delighted with it. 9. The grammar is learned easily. 10. The names are not forgotten. 11. The door is being closed. 12. The book is read by the whole class. 13. At what time is breakfast served? 14. He was seen by his friends. 15. We always speak French while dining. 16. We begin by learning the names of all the dishes. 17. It is said that delicious meals are served there. 18. My brother is expected tomorrow. 19. Books are sold here. 20. The lesson is finished before noon. 21. We always have a salad at dinner. 22. He finished by taking a room in our boarding-house.

D. Written Exercise

1. At last, after looking a long time, I have found an excellent boarding-house. 2. It is situated [at] number five, Boulevard Saint

Germain. 3. There are only a few Americans here. 4. And I talk French all the time. 5. Madame Martin is charming and she serves excellent meals. 6. Breakfast is served in my room. 7. But for lunch and dinner I always go down to the dining-room. 8. Lunch is served at noon. 9. I always begin the meal by naming the different dishes on the table: the meats, the vegetables, the fruits, the salads. 10. It is easy to learn to speak French in that way. 11. I am sure that no one ever forgets the names thus learned. 12. When the coffee is served, I generally smoke. 13. My brother is expected tomorrow. 14. He is going to be accompanied by his two sons. 15. I know that he is going to be delighted with my boarding-house. 16. Only French is spoken here and everyone is quite at home.

LESSON XXII

VOCABULARY

l'adresse [adrɛs], *f.*, the address.
le colis [kɔli], the package; — **postal** [pɔstal], parcel post.
connaître [kɔnɛːtr], to know, be acquainted with, become acquainted with.
désirer [dezire], to wish, like, desire.
dévoué [devwe], *adj.*, devoted.
fâché [faʃe], *adj.*, sorry, angry.
le libraire [librɛːr], the bookseller, publisher.
marcher [marʃe], to walk, go.
les nouvelles [nuvɛl], *f. pl.*, the news.
perdre (3) [pɛrːdr], to lose.
la poignée [pwaɲe], the handshake.
la quinzaine [kɛ̃zɛn], about fifteen, the fortnight.
recevoir [rəsəvwaːr], to receive; **reçu** [rəsy], *pp.*, received.
remercier (**de**) [rəmɛrsje], to thank (for).
sembler [sɑ̃ble], to seem, appear.
tâcher [tɑʃe], (**de** + *inf.*), to try (to).
tel [tɛl], (*f.* **telle** [tɛl]), *adj.*, such, like, similar; — **que,** such as; **un** —, such a one.
vite [vit], *adv.*, quickly, fast.

IDIOM

de vos (mes, ses, nos) nouvelles, news of you (me, him *or* her, us)

Conjunctive Personal Pronouns (Continued)

165. Position (*continued*). When there are two personal pronoun objects of a verb, one direct and the other indirect, the word order is as follows:

1. If the verb is in the affirmative imperative, the personal pronoun objects both follow the verb, connected to it and to each other by hyphens, in this order:

verb | direct object | indirect object | **y** | **en**

Moi and **toi** become **m'** and **t'** before **en**.

Donnez-les-moi.	Give them to me.
Envoyez-les-y.	Send them there.
Envoyons-le-lui.	Let's send it to him.
Allons-nous-en.	Let us go away.
Donnez-m'en.	Give me some.

2. In all other cases, that is, the negative imperative and all other forms of the verb (except the infinitive for which see below), the word order is:

ne before {**me** / **te** / **se** / **nous** / **vous**} before {**le** / **la** / **les**} before {**lui** / **leur**} before **y** } before **en** } verb **pas**

Ne me les donnez pas.	Don't give them to me.
Ne nous en allons pas.	Let us not go away.
Ne me les a-t-il pas donnés?	Did he not give them to me?
Vous les leur avez envoyés.	You sent them to them.

3. With an infinitive, the word order is usually:

ne | **pas** | pron. obj. (arranged as above) | infinitive

Elle aime mieux ne pas le lui donner. She prefers not to give it to him.

Pronominal Adverbs

166. En [ɑ̃], *pron. adv.* = 'some,' 'any,' 'some of it' ('them'), 'any of it' ('them').

It is equivalent to **de** + 'it' ('them') and refers to both persons and things.

J'ai quelques amis à Paris et j'en ai beaucoup à New York.	I have a few friends in Paris and I have many in New York.

167. Y [i], *pron. adv.* = 'there,' 'to it' ('them').

It is equivalent to **à** (**dans, sur,** etc.) + 'it' ('them') and refers only to things.

Voici votre colis; j'y ai mis l'adresse.	Here is your package; I have the address on it.

A. Reading Exercise

Mon cher ami:

1. Je suis enchanté d'apprendre que vous avez reçu les livres que je vous ai envoyés. 2. Vous savez qu'il n'était pas facile de les trouver. 3. Je suis allé chez tous les libraires. 4. Personne ne semblait les connaître. 5. Enfin, un de mes amis les a vus chez un libraire et il me les a achetés tout de suite. 6. Je vous les ai envoyés par colis postal. 7. Mais, comme vous le savez, les colis postaux ne vont pas trop vite et j'étais bien fâché de vous faire attendre. 8. Ne m'en remerciez pas. 9. C'est un plaisir de faire des emplettes pour un ami tel que vous. 10. Pour les autres choses, je tâche toujours de les trouver. 11. Et je pense vous les envoyer dans une quinzaine de jours. 12. Notre ami Jean m'en a parlé ce matin. 13. Il va m'accompagner en ville pour les chercher. 14. Si vous avez l'adresse de M. Duval, envoyez-la-lui. 15. Vous me l'avez donnée l'été passé, mais je l'ai perdue. 16. M. Duval était l'ancien professeur de Jean et, étant en ville pour quelques jours, Jean veut lui faire une visite. 17. Envoyez-moi de vos nouvelles. Ici, tout va bien. Une bonne poignée de main de

Votre dévoué,

André.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. À qui André écrit-il? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il a acheté pour son ami? 3. De quelle manière est-ce qu'il les lui a envoyés? 4. De quoi

était-il bien fâché? 5. Y a-t-il d'autres choses qu'il cherche pour son ami? 6. Qui va l'accompagner en ville? 7. Quelle adresse Jean désire-t-il? 8. Qui était M. Duval? 9. Pourquoi est-ce que Jean voulait son adresse? 10. Aimez-vous à faire des visites?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Give them to him. 2. Do not give me any. 3. We sent some to them. 4. She found some there. 5. He gave them to me. 6. Send us some. 7. Send me some. 8. I can not give them to you. 9. He was going to give them to him. 10. They gave them some too. 11. They sent some to him. 12. I am writing to them. 13. There are not any on the table. 14. I am going to give her some. 15. Do not sell any to him. 16. Why did you not give it to me? 17. I am trying to send it to them. 18. You gave it to us yesterday. 19. We have not yet finished them. 20. Do not give them to me.

D. Written Exercise

Write a letter of from 100 to 150 words to a friend. Tell him about your visiting the stores looking for Christmas presents. Tell of some of the things you saw, the crowds of people, etc., and how finally you went to a book-shop and spent so much time there that you arrived home late for dinner.

LESSON XXIII

VOCABULARY

accepter [aksɛpte], to accept.
l'automobile [otɔmɔbil], (*abb.* **auto**) *f.*, the automobile
avant [avɑ̃], *prep., and adv.*, before (*of time*); — **de** + *infin.*, before.
le bateau [bato], the boat.
le bord [bɔːr], the shore, edge.
car [kaːr], *conj.*, for, because.
le collège [kɔlɛːʒ], the college, school.
commode [kɔmɔd], *adj.*, comfortable, convenient.
continuer [kɔ̃tinɥe], (**à** + *inf.*), to continue (to).
danser [dɑ̃se], to dance.
la destination [dɛstinɑsjɔ̃], the destination.
l'endroit [ɑ̃drwɑ], *m.*, the place, spot.
l'hôtel [ɔtɛl], *m.*, the hotel.
l'idée [ide], *f.*, the idea.

l'invitation [ɛ̃vitɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, the invitation.
la journée [ʒurne], the day (*activities of a day, not 24 hours*).
la ligne [liɲ], the line.
loin [lwɛ̃], *adv.*, far, far off.
la musique [myzik], the music.
plein [plɛ̃], *adj.*, full.
le retour [rətur], the return; **de —**, back.
le soleil [sɔlɛːj], the sun.
le touriste [turist], the tourist.
le village [vilaːʒ], the village, town.

Idioms

d'abord [dabɔr]	at first, in the first place
c'est-à-dire [sɛt a diːr]	that is to say, that is
une promenade en auto [otɔ]	an automobile ride, trip
une promenade en bateau	a boat ride.
pêcher (**à la ligne**) [pɛʃe (a la liɲ)]	to fish (*with rod and line*)
camarade de collège [kamarad də kɔlɛːʒ]	college-(class-)mate

Future Tense

'I shall (will) give,' 'finish,' 'sell,' 'have,' 'be'

168. Donner	**169. Finir**	**170. Vendre**
donner **ai** [dɔn(ə)re]	finir **ai** [finirɛ]	vendr **ai** [vãdre]
donner **as** [dɔn(ə)ra]	finir **as** [finira]	vendr **as** [vãdra]
donner **a** [dɔn(ə)ra]	finir **a** [finira]	vendr **a** [vãdra]
donner **ons** [dɔn(ə)rɔ̃]	finir **ons** [finirɔ̃]	vendr **ons** [vãdrɔ̃]
donner **ez** [dɔn(ə)re]	finir **ez** [finire]	vendr **ez** [vãdre]
donner **ont** [dɔn(ə)rɔ̃]	finir **ont** [finirɔ̃]	vendr **ont** [vãdrɔ̃]

171. Avoir		**172. Être**	
aur **ai** [ɔre]	aur **ons** [ɔrɔ̃]	ser **ai** [s(ə)re]	ser **ons** [s(ə)rɔ̃]
aur **as** [ɔra]	aur **ez** [ɔre]	ser **as** [s(ə)ra]	ser **ez** [s(ə)re]
aur **a** [ɔra]	aur **ont** [ɔrɔ̃]	ser **a** [s(ə)ra]	ser **ont** [s(ə)rɔ̃]

All verbs have the above endings in the Future Tense.

173. Use. The Future Tense is used in general as in English. It has the following uses that are unlike the English.

1. Use future where futurity is implied after such conjunctions as:

quand [kã], **lorsque** [lɔrsk(ə)]	when	referring to a specific act, not in the sense of 'whenever.'
aussitôt que [ositɔ kə]		as soon as.
comme [kɔm]		as

Quand vous serez là, donnez-le-lui.	When you are there, give it to him.
Aussitôt qu'ils seront ici, je le leur donnerai.	As soon as they are here, I will give it to them.
Comme vous voudrez.	As you like (wish).
But: **Quand vous êtes là, il est toujours content.**	When (whenever) you are there, he is satisfied.

2. (*a*) **Si** meaning 'if' never takes the future in French.
(*b*) **Si** meaning 'whether' requires the same tense as in English.

Si vous y allez, donnez-lui ce livre.	If you go there, give him this book.
Je serai bien content, si vous le lui donnez.	I shall be very glad, if you will give it to him.
Je ne sais pas s'il me donnera ce livre	I don't know whether he will give me this book.

A. Reading Exercise

1. J'ai reçu une invitation de faire une promenade en auto vendredi prochain. 2. Je compte l'accepter, parce que je suis sûr que je m'y amuserai bien. 3. Quand il fait beau, une promenade en auto me fait toujours grand plaisir. 4. Il y a tant de choses interessantes à voir. 5. Nous serons quatre, car Jean a invité deux de nos amis à nous accompagner. 6. Et nous serons très bien dans la grande auto de mon ami, parce qu'il y aura assez de place pour nous tous. 7. Nous partirons de bonne heure et nous irons d'abord à un petit village où il y a un bon hôtel. 8. Nous y passerons la nuit et samedi matin nous continuerons notre voyage. 9. Notre destination sera une grande ville où beaucoup de touristes passent l'été. 10. L'hôtel se trouve au bord d'un petit lac. 11. Par conséquent, il y fait toujours très frais, même en plein été. 12. Nous dînerons là et après, nous aurons le temps de faire une promenade en bateau. 13. Ou, si nous voulons, nous pêcherons à la ligne, parce qu'en été le soleil se couche très tard. 14. Après cela, nous danserons un peu, car il y a toujours de la musique le samedi soir. 15. Le lendemain, nous partirons de bonne heure pour pouvoir être de retour le soir.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Aimez-vous à faire des promenades en auto? 2. Où allez-vous vendredi prochain? 3. Avec qui allez-vous faire la promenade? 4. Qui sera avec vous? 5. Allez-vous partir de bonne heure? 6. Est-ce que l'auto de votre ami est petite? 7. Où passerez-vous la nuit de vendredi? 8. Quelle sera votre destination? 9. Qu'est-ce que vous allez y faire? 10. Aimez-vous beaucoup à pêcher? 11. Quand comptez-vous être de retour?

C. Oral Exercise

1. If I have the time, I shall try to see them. 2. When I am there, I shall give it to him. 3. Why shall you sell your books? 4. When I have finished this book, I shall give it to you. 5. I do not know whether I shall be there. 6. We shall have a very good time. 7. They will give them to us, will they not? 8. When the weather is fine, I like to go automobiling. 9. I shall have many friends in Paris. 10. They will not be there, will they? 11. Do you wish to sell the house? 12. Yes, I will sell it to you. 13. At what time will he be there? 14. Will they be there also? 15. He does not know whether I shall give it to him. 16. When he has time, he will explain it to you. 17. When I see him, he always gives me a present. 18. Will you show it to them? As you wish. 19. When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you? 20. When you have seen them, tell us.

D. Written Exercise

1. Here is a letter from one of our friends. 2. He wishes to take an auto trip Friday and is inviting us to accompany him. 3. He has also invited another college friend, so we will be four, if we accept. 4. What do you think? Shall we accept? 5. We shall have nothing to do Friday or Saturday, let's accept. 6. Yes, certainly, and we shall have a good time. 7. When does he wish to leave? 8. He wishes to leave early Friday and spend the night at a village not far from here. 9. It is a charming spot, and there is a very good hotel there. 10. The next day, we shall continue our trip

to X——. 11. X—— is a very pretty town, where many people go to pass the summer. 12. It is situated on the shore of a lake and it is almost always cool there. 13. There will be dancing in the evening. 14. And if you wish, we shall fish in the lake, as we shall arrive before night. 15. That is a fine idea. 16. I think we shall fish at first and later we shall dance. 17. Very well, then, I shall accept his invitation immediately. 18. Yes, certainly, and we shall have two very pleasant days, I am sure.

LESSON XXIV

VOCABULARY

assister [asiste], to assist; — **à,** to be present at, attend.
la bibliothèque [bibliɔtɛk], the library, bookshelf.
bientôt [bjɛ̃tot], *adv.*, soon.
calme [kalm], *adj.*, calm, quiet.
cependant [s(ə)pɑ̃dɑ̃], *adv.*, however, nevertheless.
clair [klɛr], *adj.*, clear.
le château [ʃɑto], the château.
le cousin [kuzɛ̃] (*f.* **cousine** [kuzin]), the cousin.
le départ [depaːr], the departure.
la dizaine [dizɛn], the set of ten, about ten; **par —s,** by tens.
durer [dyre], to last.
l'eau [o], *f.*, water.
l'église [egliːz], *f.*, the church; **à l'—,** at church.
figurer [figyre]: **se —,** to imagine to oneself.
les gens [ʒɑ̃], *m. pl.*, the people, persons; **les jeunes —,** the young people.
l'invité [ɛ̃vite], *m.*, the guest.
le journal [ʒurnal], the newspaper.
léger [leʒe], *adj.*, light.
manger [mɑ̃ʒe], to eat.
la messe [mɛs], the mass (church).
occuper [ɔkype], to occupy; **s'—** (**de** + *noun or inf.*), to be busy (with), occupied (with), look after, attend to.
l'œuf [œf], *m.*, (*pl.* **œufs** [ø]), the egg.
rendre (3) [rɑ̃ːdr], to give back, make, return; **se —,** to go; **— visite,** to pay a call, visit.
revenir [rəvniːr], to return, come back; **revenu** [rəvny], *pp.*, returned, come back.
la route [rut], the road, route.
le service [sɛrvis], the service, course (*at dinner*).
simple [sɛ̃ːpl], *adj.*, simple
le souper [supe], the supper.
souper [supe], to have supper, sup.

Idioms

au lieu de [o ljø də]	instead of, in place of
comme d'habitude [kɔm dabityd]	as usual, usually
encore une fois [ɑ̃kɔr yn fwa]	again, once more
faire une (la) sieste [siɛst]	to take a (the) nap
à peine [pɛːn]	hardly, scarcely
quant à [kɑ̃t a]	as to, as for, with regard to

Future Tense

174. The future tense of certain common irregular verbs:

1. aller, 'to go':	ir **ai** [ire]	**–as**	**–a**	**–ons**	**–ez**	**–ont**
2. vouloir, 'to wish':	voudr **ai** [vudre]	**–as**	**–a**	**–ons**	**–ez**	**–ont**
3. faire, 'to do,' 'make':	fer **ai** [fəre]	**–as**	**–a**	**–ons**	**–ez**	**–ont**
4. voir, 'to see':	verr **ai** [vɛre]	**–as**	**–a**	**–ons**	**–ez**	**–ont**
5. pouvoir, 'to be able':	pourr **ai** [pure]	**–as**	**–a**	**–ons**	**–ez**	**–ont**
6. savoir, 'to know':	saur **ai** [sɔre]	**–as**	**–a**	**–ons**	**–ez**	**–ont**

7. falloir, 'to be necessary': (*impersonal*) **il faudra** [fodra]

A. Reading Exercise

1. C'est demain dimanche et nous serons bien occupés comme tous les dimanches. 2. D'abord, après nous être levés de bonne heure, nous irons tous à l'église. 3. La première messe commence à six heures en été. 4. Elle n'est pas très longue et nous serons de retour chez nous à sept heures et demie. 5. Alors, nous déjeunerons et, comme vous le savez, le petit déjeuner est un repas assez simple. 6. On sert du café, du pain avec du beurre et quelquefois des œufs, si on les désire. 7. Puis, les uns s'occuperont de différentes choses, les autres causeront. 8. S'il fait beau, mon frère et moi, nous ferons une promenade en auto à la campagne avec des amis. 9. Il n'y a rien de plus agréable en été que de sortir par les grandes routes en pleine campagne. 10. Le dimanche matin on n'y trouve pas beaucoup d'autos. 11. On peut donc aller très vite. 12. Cependant, il nous faudra revenir à la maison de bonne heure, parce que nous attendons des parents à dîner. 13. Le dimanche nous avons toujours le dîner à midi au lieu de six heures et demie comme les autres jours. 14. Mon oncle, ma tante et mes deux cousins seront chez nous. 15. Nous serons une dizaine et, comme d'habitude le

Notre Dame

dimanche, tout le monde restera bien longtemps à table. 16. Après le dîner, mon père et ma mère feront une petite sieste, quand les invités seront partis. 17. Quant à nous autres jeunes gens, nous ferons une promenade en bateau sur le lac, qui ne se trouve pas loin de chez nous. 18. Il y fait toujours très frais, même en été. 19. L'eau est si calme et si claire et on voit partout de petits bateaux. 20. À sept heures du soir nous serons de retour pour un souper assez léger. 21. On peut se figurer que tout le monde se couchera bientôt après.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. À quel jour du mois serons-nous demain? 2. Serez-vous très occupé? 3. Que ferez-vous après vous être levé? 4. Que sert-on pour le petit déjeuner? 5. Que ferez-vous après avoir déjeuné? 6. Aimez-vous à vous promener en auto? 7. Où irez-vous? 8. Qui attendez-vous à dîner? 9. À quelle heure dîne-t-on chez vous le dimanche? 10. Que fera-t-on après le dîner? 11. Où se trouve le lac? 12. Quand est-ce que vous vous coucherez? 13. Pourquoi?

C. Oral Exercise

1. I was going with him. 2. They wanted to stay here. 3. We shall do as you like. 4. They used to see us every day. 5. I shall not be able to go with you. 6. Do you know where he will be? 7. I shall give it to him when I see him. 8. Will you please write to him? 9. I shall go with him when I can. 10. They will not know when he will be here. 11. I shall show you the letter when it arrives. 12. Who will go automobiling with the young people? 13. They will go with their aunt and uncle. 14. I don't know whether you will see him. 15. They will wish to go with their cousins. 16. What will you do, if you do not see him? 17. They could not go there last night. 18. He didn't tell me what books he had seen. 19. They wanted to give them to us. 20. Will you give it to me, if you please?

D. Oral Exercise

1. They were talking when we entered. 2. I did not wish to stay here. 3. They were taking an auto trip when we saw them. 4. Where

were they going? 5. They used to go to France very often. 6. I shall see all the châteaux. 7. Could you not go to Europe last summer? 8. He used to see me every day. 9. When I am in Paris, I will write you. 10. Will you tell me where they will be? 11. I used to know the name of the hotel. 12. Shall you see them there? 13. Perhaps, but John will not be able to be there. 14. What did you wish? 15. They are going with their friends, I think. 16. What were you doing? 17. Whom shall you see when you are in France? 18. What did he say? 19. Where have they gone? 20. We shall have a very good time. 21. They will give it back to us.

E. Written Exercise

1. Everybody in our house will get up early tomorrow, because it is Sunday. 2. The first mass at church will be at six o'clock, and the whole family will attend it. 3. I don't like to get up early, but, nevertheless, I shall do it. 4. After (the) mass, when we have returned home, breakfast will be served. 5. As you know, breakfast in France is a very light meal. 6. But as we shall have dinner at noon, no one will have to wait very long before eating again. 7. After breakfast, we shall go into the library to read the papers. 8. There is hardly any news in the papers on Sundays. 9. Consequently, I shall probably take a walk or go automobiling with some friends. 10. When it is very hot in summer in the city, I like very much to go to the country. 11. It is nearly always cool there, and I think there is nothing more agreeable. 12. At noon we shall have dinner, and there will be some friends at our house. 13. I often ask myself why people eat so much on Sunday. 14. After the departure of the guests, mother and father will take a nap. 15. We (others) shall chat or we shall go boating on the lake, if it is very hot. 16. It is always cool there, and I like it very much. 17. Afterwards, we shall return home and have supper. 18. I think I shall be ready to go to bed soon after supper.

LESSON XXV

VOCABULARY

l'abord [abɔːr], *m.*, the access, approach.
l'affiche [afiʃ], *f.*, the placard, poster.
l'après-midi [aprɛ midi], *m.*, the afternoon.
les bagages [bagaːʒ], *m. pl.*, the baggage.
le billet [bijɛ], the ticket.
le bulletin [byltɛ̃], the check (*of baggage*).
le chemin de fer [ʃəmɛ̃ də fɛːr], the railroad.
défendu [defɑ̃dy], *adj.*, forbidden, prohibited.
l'employé [ɑ̃plwaje], *m.*, the employé.
enregistrer [ɑ̃rʒistre], to check (*of baggage*).
ensuite [ɑ̃sɥit], *adv.*, afterwards, then, next.
le fumeur [fymœːr], the smoker.
le fumoir [fymwaːr], the smoking-room.
marquer [marke], to mark.
minuit [minɥi], midnight.
la patience [pasjɑ̃ːs], the patience.
peser [pəze], to weigh.
premier [prəmje], *adj.*, first.
regarder [rəgarde], to regard, look at.
second [səgɔ̃], *adj.*, second.
seul [sœl], *adj.*, only, alone.
seulement [sœlmɑ̃], *adv.*, only.
surtout [syrtu], *adv.*, especially, above all.
voyager [vwajaʒe], to travel.

Idioms

le wagon [vagɔ̃]	the (railway) car, coach
ainsi de suite [ɛ̃si d(ə) sɥit]	and so forth, et cetera
en vente [ɑ̃ vɑ̃t]	on sale
aller et retour [ale e rətuːr]	round trip (ticket)
aller seulement [ale sœlmɑ̃]	one way (ticket)
défense de fumer [defɑ̃ːs də fyme]	no smoking
prendre (*not* **acheter**) **un billet**	to buy a ticket
vouloir dire	to mean

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns

175. The forms of the disjunctive personal pronouns are as follows:

	Sing.	*Plur.*
1.	**moi** [mwa]	**nous** [nu]
2.	**toi** [twa]	**vous** [vu]
3.	**lui** [lɥi] (*m.*) **elle** [ɛl] (*f.*) **soi** [swa] (*refl.*)	**eux** [ø] (*m.*) **elles** [ɛl] (*f.*)

176. They are used:

1. Absolutely, without a verb.

Qui est à la porte? — Moi!	Who is at the door? — I.

2. After **ce** + **être**: **c'est, ce sont, c'était,** etc.
The third person plural is commonly used after a third person plural form of the verb.

C'est lui; c'était moi.	It is he; it was I.
C'est vous; ce sera nous.	It is you; it will be we.
But: **Ce sont eux; c'étaient elles.**	It is they (*m.*); it was they (*f.*).

3. After all prepositions.

Avec nous; sans elles, etc.	With us; without them, etc.
C'est à moi.	It is mine (to me).
À eux.	To them (theirs).

4. In compound subjects.

Lui et moi allons en ville.	He and I are going down town.
Jean et lui sont ici.	John and he are here.

5. Replacing a conjunctive pronoun as subject, if the subject is separated from the verb by any word except **ne** and pronoun objects.

Eux seuls vont avec nous.	They alone are going with us.

6. For emphasis, with or without — **-même** [mɛm], '— self.'

Il le fait, lui-même.	He does it himself.
Lui, il le fait tout le temps.	*He* does it all the time.

Le Facteur

A. Reading Exercise

1. Quand je voyage en chemin de fer en France, je tâche toujours d'arriver de bonne heure à la gare. 2. Il faut avoir du temps, si on a des bagages à faire enregistrer. 3. D'abord, il faut prendre son billet et, s'il y a du monde, il faut faire queue devant le guichet. 4. Le guichet est ouvert généralement un peu avant le départ du train. 5. Après avoir fait queue pendant quelque temps, on arrive devant le guichet. 6. Derrière le guichet se trouve l'employé du chemin de fer. 7. C'est lui qui vend les billets. 8. On lui demande une première (classe), pour Tours, aller et retour. 9. Ou on demande: une seconde, aller seulement. 10. Après avoir pris son billet, il faut faire peser les bagages et, après cela, les faire enregistrer. 11. L'employé vous donne alors un bulletin. 12. Avec lui, comme avec tous les employés du chemin de fer, il faut avoir de la patience. 13. Après cela, on attend l'heure du départ. 14. Pour faire passer le temps, on peut regarder les livres qui sont en vente dans les grandes gares. 15. Ou on peut entrer dans le fumoir de la gare. 16. Puis, quand l'heure du départ est arrivée, on cherche le wagon qui est marqué: Première, Seconde, etc. 17. Il y en a où l'on peut fumer; ils sont marqués: Fumeurs. 18. Moi, je monte toujours dans les wagons pour fumeurs. 19. Dans les autres wagons, on voit l'affiche: Défense de fumer. 20. Pour les heures des trains en France, on compte par vingt-quatre heures en commençant à minuit. 21. Deux heures et demie de l'après-midi, c'est pour les trains quatorze heures et demie.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Pourquoi faut-il arriver de bonne heure à la gare. 2. Que faut-il faire d'abord? 3. S'il y a du monde, que faut-il faire? 4. Où prenez-vous les billets? 5. Qui vend les billets? 6. Qu'est-ce que vous lui demandez? 7. Que veut dire « première », « seconde »? 8. Comment dites-vous "round trip" en français? 9. Comment dites-vous "one way"? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il faut faire si vous avez des bagages? 11. Qui vous donne votre bulletin? 12. Comment est-ce qu'on marque les heures des trains? 13. Comment est-ce qu'on dit en français "Six-thirty p.m."? 14. Expliquez-moi « Fumeur ».

C. Oral Exercise

1. It is I, he, she, they, we. 2. Who is at the door? — He. 3. I am going with her, them (*feminine*). 4. He and I are going down town. 5. He, being a better student, knows it. 6. Without her, you cannot go. 7. She and they have not yet arrived. 8. *I* don't like movies. 9. You and I can go with him. 10. She will stay with us herself. 11. He and she cannot go. 12. I alone will be here. 13. Without them, I cannot study. 14. This book is mine. 15. Those books are theirs. 16. I will do it for you myself. 17. Are these books ours? 18. No, they belong to her.

D. Written Exercise

1. When John and I travel, we always arrive early at the station. 2. Then we stand in line before the ticket-window. 3. The man behind the window sells the tickets. 4. It is he who is going to sell them to us. 5. I ask him [for] two, second class, for Tours, round trip. 6. John generally has some baggage. 7. I never have any. 8. It is I who have the baggage weighed. 9. An employé gives us the check. 10. One must always have patience with railroad employés. 11. Now we look for our train. 12. The hours of trains in France are counted from one to twenty-four. 13. A train marked nineteen forty-five, leaves at seven forty-five p.m. 14. The coaches are marked: "First," "Second," etc. 15. And there are some which are marked "Smokers." 16. I usually get into a car for smokers. 17. There are fewer people there. 18. And one can smoke cigarettes, cigars or a pipe as one wishes.

LESSON XXVI

VOCABULARY

le bonsoir [bɔ̃swaːr], (the) good evening.

la cérémonie [seremɔni], the ceremony; **sans —,** infomally.

la connaissance [kɔnɛsɑ̃ːs], the acquaintance, knowledge.

la danse [dɑ̃ːs], the dance, dancing.

la formule [fɔrmyl], the formula.

le garçon [garsɔ̃], the boy, waiter, bachelor.

l'habit [abi], *m.*, the coat, dress-coat
s'incliner [sɛ̃kline], to bow.
intelligent [ɛ̃teliʒɑ̃], *adj.*, intelligent.
jusqu'à [ʒyska], *prep.*, up to, as far as, until.
parmi [parmi], *prep.*, among.
permettre [permɛtr], **de** + *inf.*), to let, allow, permit (to).
la présentation [prezɑ̃tɑsjɔ̃], the introduction.
présenter [prezɑ̃te], to present, introduce
presque [prɛsk], *adv.*, almost, nearly.
répondre (3) [repɔ̃:dr], to answer, respond, reply.
le **smoking** [smoking], the dinner-coat, tuxedo.
la soirée [sware], the evening, evening party, dance.

Idioms

connaître de vue	to know by sight
à merveille [a mɛrvɛ:j]	marvellously.
par-ci par-là [parsi, parla]	here and there, this way and that way.

Conjunctive Personal Pronouns (Continued)

177. When the direct object of the verb is **me, te, se, nous, vous,** it is placed before the verb according to the rule. But in this case the indirect object must follow the verb, preceded by the preposition **à**, and *must be disjunctive in form.*

The word order scheme in this case for all forms of the verb except the affirmative imperative is:

	Dir. obj.							
ne	**me** **te** **se** **nous** **vous**	verb (aux.)	**pas**	(past part.)	**à**	*Dir. indir. obj.*		

Il me présente à vous.	He introduces me to you.
Vous ne m'avez pas présenté à elle.	You have not introduced me to her.

In the affirmative imperative, the scheme is:

verb { *Dir. obj.* **moi** / **toi** / **nous** / **vous** } **à** { *Disj. indir. obj.* }

Présentez-moi à eux. Introduce me to them.

178. Connaître, 'to know,' 'be acquainted with'

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
connaître [kɔnɛːtr] 'to know', 'be acquainted with'	**connaissant** [kɔnɛsɑ̃] 'knowing,' etc.	**connu** [kɔny] 'known,' etc.

4. Future: **connaîtrai** [kɔnɛtre], 'I shall know,' etc.

179. Present Indicative	**180.** Imperfect	**181.** Imperative
'I know,' etc.	'I knew,' etc.	'know,' etc.
connais [kɔnɛ]	**connaissais** [kɔnɛsɛ]	**connais** [kɔnɛ]
connais [kɔnɛ]	**connaissais** [kɔnɛsɛ]	**connaissons** [kɔnɛsɔ̃]
connaît [kɔnɛ]	**connaissait** [kɔnɛsɛ]	**connaissez** [kɔnɛse]
connaissons [kɔnɛsɔ̃]	**connaissions** [kɔnɛsjɔ̃]	
connaissez [kɔnɛse]	**connaissiez** [kɔnɛsje]	
connaissent [kɔnɛs]	**connaissaient** [kɔnɛsɛ]	

A. Reading Exercise

1. Hier soir Jean m'a accompagné à une grande soirée chez Madame Duval. 2. Nous y sommes arrivés à neuf heures et il y avait déjà beaucoup de monde. 3. Presque tous les messieurs étaient en habit. 4. Mais, par-ci par-là, on pouvait en voir qui étaient en smoking. 5. La sœur de Mme Duval, Mademoiselle Lefèvre, y était aussi. 6. Madame Duval m'a presenté à elle et je lui ai présenté Jean. 7. Voici la formule pour faire une présentation: Mademoiselle, voulez-vous me permettre de vous présenter mon ami, Monsieur Jean Faure. 8. Le monsieur s'incline un peu et dit: « Enchanté, Mademoiselle, de faire votre connaissance. » 9. La jeune fille répond: « Monsieur. » 10. Mlle Lefèvre est très jolie

et elle danse à merveille. 11. Il y avait beaucoup de garçons non-accompagnés. 12. Ils se sont présentés à nous sans cérémonie. 13. Parmi eux, il y en avait que je connaissais déjà de vue. 14. Nous avons dansé jusqu'à minuit. 15. Alors on nous a servi un excellent souper. 16. Ensuite il y a eu encore une heure de danse. 17. Il était presque deux heures quand nous nous sommes dit bonsoir. 18. Tout le monde s'est bien amusé, j'en suis sûr.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Où êtes-vous allé hier soir? 2. Avec qui? 3. Y avait-il beaucoup de monde? 4. Qui a donné cette soirée? 5. Y avez-vous trouvé des amis? 6. Quelle est la formule en français pour faire une présentation? 7. Présentez un jeune homme à une jeune fille. 8. Avez-vous beaucoup dansé? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a eu après la danse? 10. Tout le monde s'est bien amusé, n'est-ce pas?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Introduce me to her. 2. Introduce him to me. 3. They will introduce us to them. 4. I gave them to him. 5. He introduced himself to her. 6. Don't introduce us to him. 7. I introduced her to him. 8. Introduce us to them, them to us. 9. I didn't wish to introduce her to him. 10. They were going to introduce you to her. 11. Why didn't you give them to me? 12. Will your brother be with you? 13. Do you know him? 14. Yes, I used to know him very well, but he has forgotten me. 15. I will introduce you to him. 16. He introduced himself to me. 17. I am going to send them to you. 18. I did not give them any. 19. Don't introduce me to her. 20. Introduce us to your friends.

D. Written Exercise

1. Last night we had a very good time. 2. Madame Duval gave an evening party. 3. Nearly all the men wore evening clothes, but tuxedos could be seen here and there. 4. Madame Duval's sister, Mademoiselle Lefèvre, was there. 5. Madame Duval introduced us to her. 6. She is charming and dances marvellously. 7. When one

makes an introduction in French, the gentleman is presented to the lady. 8. Generally she bows a little and says: « Monsieur ». 9. Or she may also say: "Charmed to make your acquaintance." 10. After the introduction, we chatted a while and then we began to dance. 11. I danced many times with Mlle Lefèvre. 12. She is very intelligent and has travelled a good deal. 13. We were served a delicious supper at midnight. 14. After the supper, we danced for an hour more. 15. When we left, after a very delightful evening, it was quite late. 16. I am sure that everyone had a very good time.

LESSON XXVII

VOCABULARY

l'avis [avi], *m.*, the notice, opinion.
la capitale [kapital], the capital.
construire [kɔ̃strɥiːr], to build, construct; **construit** [kɔ̃strɥi], *pp.*, built.
correctement [kɔrɛktəmɑ̃], *adv.*, correctly.
débarquer [debarke], to debark, land.
l'édifice [edifis], *m.*, the building.
espagnol [ɛspaɲɔl], *adj.*, Spanish.
fameux [famø], *adj.*, famous.
italien [italjɛ̃], *adj.*, Italian.
le jardin [ʒardɛ̃], the garden.
jouir (de) [ʒwiːr], to enjoy.
la langue [lɑ̃ːg], the language.
la mer [mɛːr], the sea, ocean.
le milieu [miljø], the center, middle.
le musée [myze], the museum.
l'occasion [ɔkɑzjɔ̃], *f.*, the opportunity, occasion.
passé [pɑse], *adj.*, past, last.
le pays [pei], the country.
plutôt [plyto], *adv.*, rather, sooner.
le port [pɔːr], the port, harbor.
près [prɛ], *adv.*, near; — **de**, *prep.*, near; **à peu —**, nearly, almost.
principal [prɛ̃sipal], *adv.*, principal.
le séjour [seʒuːr], the stay, sojourn.
situé [situe], *pp.*, *adj.*, situated.
le théâtre [teɑːtr], the theatre.
la traversée [travɛrse], the passage, crossing.
visiter [vizite], to visit, examine, inspect.
le voyage [vwajaːʒ], the trip, journey, voyage.

182. **Dire** 'to say,' 'tell'

Requires ***de*** *before infinitive in the sense of 'command,' etc.*

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
dire [di:r], 'to say'	**disant** [dizɑ̃], 'saying'	**dit** [di], 'said'

4. Future: **dirai** [dire], 'I shall say,' 'tell,' etc.

183. Present Indicative	**184.** Imperfect Indicative	**185.** Imperative
'I say,' 'tell,' etc.	'I was saying,' 'telling,' etc.	'say,' 'tell,' etc.
dis [di]	**disais** [dizɛ]	**dis** [di]
dis [di]	**disais** [dizɛ]	**disons** [dizɔ̃]
dit [di]	**disait** [dizɛ]	**dites** [dit]
disons [dizɔ̃]	**disions** [dizjɔ̃]	
dites [dit]	**disiez** [dizje]	
disent [di:z]	**disaient** [dizɛ]	

Countries

186. Names of countries ending in **–e** are, in general, feminine, the chief exception being le **Mexique**, Mexico.

La France	France	**L'Angleterre**, *f.*	England
L'Espagne, *f.*	Spain	**L'Allemagne**, *f.*	Germany

187. Countries ending in a consonant, or a vowel other than **e**, are masculine.

Le Canada	Canada	**Le Portugal**	Portugal
Le Japon	Japan	**Les États-Unis**	The United States

188. The definite article is used with all countries as subject or direct object of a verb.

La France est un beau pays.	France is a beautiful country.
Avez-vous visité l'Italie?	Have you visited Italy?

189. 'To,' 'in,' with the names of countries is expressed by:

1. **en** with the names of all feminine countries in the singular, and French provinces.

En France, en Angleterre.	In France, in England.
En Argentine, en Algérie.	In Argentine, in Algeria.
En Chine, en Bretagne.	In China, in Brittany.

2. **à** + *definite article* for all masculine countries and all countries in the plural.

Au Canada, au Japon, au Mexique, au Portugal.	In Canada, in Japan, in Mexico, in Portugal.
Aux Indes, aux États-Unis.	In India, in the United States.

3. **dans** + *definite article* with the name of any country modified by an adjective or an adjectival phrase.

Dans la France méridionale	In southern France.
Dans l'Amérique du Sud.	In South America.

Cities

190. 'To,' 'at,' 'in,' with names of cities is expressed by **à** without the article, unless the article is an integral part of the name.

	Paris	**À Paris**	In Paris
But:	**La Nouvelle-Orléans**	**À La Nouvelle-Orléans**	In New Orleans
	Le Havre	**Au Havre**	In Havre
	Le Mans	**Au Mans**	At Mans

A. Reading Exercise

1. L'été passé, deux de mes amis ont fait un grand voyage en France. 2. Ils sont partis de New York au mois de juin. 3. Après une traversée très agréable, ils ont débarqué au Havre, le plus grand port de mer de la France. 4. De là, ils sont allés à Paris où ils comptaient ne passer qu'une semaine. 5. Mais il y avait tant de choses à voir qu'ils y sont restés presqu'un mois. 6. On leur avait dit qu'il y faisait bien chaud en été. 7. Mais l'été passé, il y faisait plutôt froid. 8. Heureusement, ils avaient leurs pardessus, et ils les ont portés presque tout le temps. 9. À Paris, ils ont visité les édifices principaux et les musées et ils sont allés aussi plusieurs fois au théâtre. 10. De Paris, ils ont continué leur voyage jusqu'à Tours. 11. Tours, ancienne capitale de la Touraine, se trouve au milieu du pays des

Le Château d'Amboise

châteaux. 12. On dit qu'on parle un excellent français à Tours, et beaucoup d'Américains y vont pour étudier la langue. 13. Mes amis y sont restés longtemps pour voir les châteaux et pour étudier le français. 14. À leur avis, le plus intéressant des châteaux, c'est le château de Chenonceaux, construit par François Premier. 15. Après Chenonceaux, ils aiment surtout le château d'Amboise, situé à Amboise, ville assez fameuse dans l'histoire de la France. 16. Ils n'y ont pas trouvé beaucoup d'Américains et, par conséquent, ils ont eu l'occasion de parler français presque tout le temps. 17. Ils ont beaucoup joui de leur séjour dans ce « jardin de la France ».

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Où est-ce que vos amis ont passé l'été dernier? 2. De quelle ville des États-Unis sont-ils partis? 3. Où ont-ils débarqué? 4. Ont-ils passé beaucoup de temps à Paris? 5. Pourquoi? 6. A-t-il fait chaud à Paris l'été passé? 7. Qu'ont-ils visité à Paris? 8. Où sont-ils allés de Paris? 9. Pourquoi est-ce que Tours est une ville très intéressante? 10. Quel château aimaient-ils le mieux? 11. Ont-ils passé beaucoup de temps à Tours? 12. Y avait-il beaucoup d'Américains à Tours? 13. Qu'ont-ils fait à Tours?

C. Oral Exercise

1. English is spoken in the United States. 2. They speak French in Canada. 3. One says in French: 'In Mexico,' 'In New Orleans,' 'In Canada.' 4. I am telling him to stay here. 5. Don't tell it to him, let's tell it to her. 6. I did not tell it to them. 7. Paris is the capital of France. 8. Tours is the capital of Touraine. 9. Have you ever been in Spain? 10. No, but I have been in England and France. 11. Spanish is spoken in Spain. 12. Italian is spoken in Italy. 13. In southern France the weather is very fine in winter. 14. My friends in France tell me to debark at Havre. 15. We leave from New York. 16. The château was built by Francis First. 17. In my opinion, France is much prettier than Spain. 18. It is almost always cool in England in the fall. 19. Excellent French is spoken in Paris.

D. Written Exercise

1. This summer, we are going to France. 2. We intend to leave New York in June and to land at Havre. 3. From Havre, we can go to Paris immediately. 4. We have been told that it is hot in Paris in summer. 5. But we shall have our overcoats, because it is often cool in the evening. 6. After a few weeks in Paris, visiting the principal buildings and the museums, we shall go to Tours. 7. Tours, former capital of Touraine, is a beautiful city in the garden of France. 8. Near Tours are found almost all the interesting châteaux of France. 9. These châteaux are very old and many of them are very famous. 10. The Château of Amboise, one of the most interesting, is situated very near Tours and we shall probably visit it often. 11. One of my friends in the United States has some acquaintances in Tours. 12. He has given me a letter for them and consequently we are going to have the opportunity to become acquainted with some French people. 13. Besides, excellent French is spoken in Tours and I want to learn to speak French correctly, if I can. 14. It is very difficult to learn to speak it in the United States. 15. In Canada, French is spoken, but it is not so good as the French of Tours.

LESSON XXVIII

VOCABULARY

arranger [arãʒe], to arrange.
l'auteur [otœːr], *m.*, the author.
la coïncidence [kɔẽsidãːs], the coincidence.
curieux [kyrjø], *adj.*, curious.
décrire [dekriːr] (*like* **écrire**), to describe.
demeurer [dəmœre], to live, reside, remain, stay.
la description [deskripsjɔ̃], the description.
donc [dɔ̃ːk], *conj.*, then, therefore, pray.
intéresser [ẽterɛse], to interest; **s'—** (**à** + *inf. or noun*), to be interested in.
justement [ʒystəmã], *adv.*, exactly.
la matinée [matine], the morning, matinée.
naturellement [natyrɛlmã] *adv.*, naturally, of course.
la partie [parti], the part, party, game.

la région [reʒjɔ̃], the region.
remarquable [rəmarkabl], *adj.*, remarkable.
tiens [tjɛ̃], *interj.*, well, look.
l'université [yniversite], *f.*, the university.

IDIOMS

à haute voix [a ot vwa] aloud
il y a trois ans (longtemps) three years (a long time) ago
en effet [ɑ̃n efɛ] in fact, as a matter of fact

191. Écrire, 'to write'

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
écrire [ekri:r], 'to write'	**écrivant** [ekrivɑ̃], 'writing'	**écrit** [ekri], 'written'

4. FUTURE: **écrirai** [ekrire] 'I shall (will) write,' etc.

192. PRESENT INDICATIVE	**193.** IMPERFECT	**194.** IMPERATIVE
'I write,' etc.	'I was writing,' etc.	'write,' etc.
écris [ekri]	**écrivais** [ekrivɛ]	**écris** [ekri]
écris [ekri]	**écrivais** [ekrivɛ]	**écrivons** [ekrivɔ̃]
écrit [ekri]	**écrivait** [ekrivɛ]	**écrivez** [ekrive]
écrivons [ekrivɔ̃]	**écrivions** [ekrivjɔ̃]	
écrivez [ekrive]	**écriviez** [ekrivje]	
écrivent [ekri:v]	**écrivaient** [ekrivɛ]	

195. Lire, 'to read'

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
lire [li:r], 'to read'	**lisant** [lizɑ̃], 'reading'	**lu** [ly], 'read'

4. FUTURE: **lirai** [lire], 'I shall (will) read,' etc.

196. PRESENT INDICATIVE	**197.** IMPERFECT	**198.** IMPERATIVE
'I read,' etc.	'I was reading,' etc.	'read,' etc.
lis [li]	**lisais** [lizɛ]	**lis** [li]
lis [li]	**lisais** [lizɛ]	**lisons** [lizɔ̃]
lit [li]	**lisait** [lizɛ]	**lisez** [lize]
lisons [lizɔ̃]	**lisions** [lizjɔ̃]	
lisez [lize]	**lisiez** [lizje]	
lisent [li:z]	**lisaient** [lizɛ]	

A. Reading Exercise

1. Jean et moi avons passé la matinée dans notre bibliothèque; lui, à écrire des lettres et moi, à lire. 2. Le livre que je lisais était si intéressant que j'ai presque oublié où j'étais. 3. Il y avait dans le livre une très belle description de la Touraine, surtout des châteaux. 4. C'était justement la région où nous avions passé quatre semaines l'année dernière. 5. Les châteaux étaient comme de vieux amis. 6. J'ai trouvé cette description des châteaux si remarquable que j'en ai lu une partie à Jean. 7. Il m'a dit: — Dites donc, savez-vous qui a écrit ce livre? 8. — Non, je ne sais pas qui en est l'auteur. 9. — Tiens, n'avez-vous pas regardé le nom de l'auteur? 10. — Mais non, ça ne m'intéresse guère. Pourquoi? 11. — Eh bien, c'est notre ami le professeur et c'est à lui que j'écris maintenant. 12. Et en effet, j'ai trouvé que l'auteur de ce livre était notre ami de voyage de l'été passé. Quelle curieuse coïncidence!

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Que faisiez-vous ce matin dans la bibliothèque? 2. Qui était avec vous? 3. Lisait-il? 4. À qui écrivait-il? 5. Est-ce que votre livre était intéressant? 6. Comment avez-vous trouvé la description des châteaux? 7. Aviez-vous jamais vu ces châteaux-là? 8. Avec qui aviez-vous fait le voyage au pays des châteaux? 9. Qu'est-ce que votre ami vous a demandé? 10. Qui était l'auteur de ce livre?

C. Oral Exercise

1. They were reading the book. 2. He used to read a great deal. 3. Read me that description. 4. I write to her every day. 5. Don't write to them. 6. Let us write to him. 7. They read all the time. 8. Why are you writing to them? 9. We used to write to them often. 10. I was writing to you when you entered the library. 11. Do not read it to me. 12. Let us read that to them. 13. They were writing the letters. 14. They used to read a great deal. 15. They don't read very much now. 16. Do you ever write to your friends? 17. Do you like to read aloud? 18. I used to read aloud a great deal. 19. Have you ever read this description of the châteaux? 20. No, read it to me, if you have it there. 21. I am

Le Château de Chenonceaux

very much interested in the châteaux. 22. The author has described them very well. 23. Describe them to me. 24. They were reading the descriptions to us. 25. We are writing them a letter.

D. Written Exercise

1. A very curious thing happened to me last night. 2. I had gone to visit a friend of mine, and we were in the library where he was writing a letter. 3. There was a book on the table and I began to read it. 4. It was very interesting and I had almost forgotten that my friend was with me. 5. There was a beautiful description of Touraine in the book and I was delighted with it. 6. All the châteaux which we had visited last summer were described there. 7. It was as if I were seeing old friends. 8. The descriptions were so fine that I read one to my friend, who had made the trip with me. 9. He, of course, had read the book and he asked me if I knew who had written it. 10. I said: "No, I don't know who the author is"; I had forgotten to look at the author's name. 11. "Well, the author is the university professor with whom we made the trip to France last summer. 12. You know he lives near here and I have seen him many times this year." 13. "Well, that is very interesting. I did not know that he lived here. 14. I have always wanted very much to see him again." 15. "Unfortunately, he is not in the city now, but after his return I can arrange a dinner for us three, if you wish. 16. We can have a good time talking about France."

LESSON XXIX

VOCABULARY

l'appartement [apartəmɑ̃], *m.*, the apartment.
autrefois [otrəfwa], *adv.*, formerly.
droit [drwɑ], *adj.*, right, upright.
excepté [ɛksɛpte], *prep.*, except.
installer [ɛ̃stale], to install; **s'—**, to settle.
l'introduction [ɛ̃trɔdyksjɔ̃], *f.*, the introduction.
pauvre [povr], *adj.*, poor.
prier [prie], (**de** + *inf.*), to ask, beg, pray.
le Quartier Latin [kartje latɛ̃], the Latin Quarter.
riche [riʃ], *adj.*, rich.
la rive [riːv], the bank, shore.

IDIOMS

avoir l'intention de [avwaːr lɛ̃tɑ̃sjɔ̃ də]	to intend to
changer d'avis [ʃɑ̃ʒe davi]	to change one's mind.
de plus en plus [də plyz ɑ̃ ply]	more and more
de moins en moins [də mwɛ̃z ɑ̃ mwɛ̃]	less and less
à propos [a prɔpo]	by the way
en ce moment [ɑ̃ sə mɔmɑ̃]	now, at present

199. Numerals

20 **vingt** [vɛ̃]
21 **vingt et un** [vɛ̃t e œ̃]
22 **vingt-deux** [vɛ̃t dø], etc

30 **trente** [trɑ̃ːt]
31 **trente et un** [trɑ̃ːt e œ̃]
32 **trente-deux,** etc.

40 **quarante** [karɑ̃ːt]
41 **quarante et un** [karɑ̃ːt e œ̃]
42 **quarante-deux,** etc.

50 **cinquante** [sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt]
51 **cinquante et un** [sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt e œ̃]
52 **cinquante-deux,** etc.

60 **soixante** [swasɑ̃ːt]
61 **soixante et un** [swasɑ̃ːt e œ̃]
62 **soixante-deux,** etc.

70 **soixante-dix** [swasɑ̃ːt dis]
71 **soixante et** (or -) **onze** [swasɑ̃ːt (e) ɔ̃ːz]
72 **soixante-douze,** etc.

80 **quatre-vingts** [katrə vɛ̃]
81 **quatre-vingt-un** [katrə vɛ̃ œ̃], etc.

90 **quatre-vingt-dix** [katrə vɛ̃ dis]
91 **quatre-vingt-onze** [katrə vɛ̃ ɔ̃ːz], etc.

100 **cent** [sɑ̃]
101 **cent un** [sɑ̃ œ̃], etc.

200. Venir, 'to come

(Auxiliary: **être**)

In sense of to come requires no preposition before following infinitive.

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
venir [v(ə)niːr], 'to come'	**venant** [v(ə)nɑ̃], 'coming'	**venu** [v(ə)ny], 'come'

FUTURE: **viendrai** [vjɛ̃dre], 'I shall (will) come,' etc.

201. Present Indicative	**202.** Imperfect	**203.** Imperative
'I come,' etc.	'I was coming,' etc.	'come,' etc.
viens [vjɛ̃]	**venais** [v(ə)nɛ]	**viens** [vjɛ̃]
viens [vjɛ̃]	**venais** [v(ə)nɛ]	**venons** [v(ə)nɔ̃]
vient [vjɛ̃]	**venait** [v(ə)nɛ]	**venez** [v(ə)ne]
venons [v(ə)nɔ̃]	**venions** [vənjɔ̃]	
venez [v(ə)ne]	**veniez** [vənje]	
viennent [vjɛn]	**venaient** [v(ə)nɛ]	

204. Like **venir** are:

Devenir [dəvniːr], 'to become.'

Qu'est-ce qu'il est devenu? What has become of him?

Revenir [rəvniːr], 'to return,' 'come back.'

Nous sommes revenus à huit heures. We returned at eight o'clock.

Se souvenir [suvniːr] **de** (+ *thing or person*), 'to remember (something *or* someone.)'

Elle s'est souvenue de cette histoire. She remembered this story.

Je me souviens d'elle. I remember her.

Convenir [kɔ̃vniːr], 'to suit.'

Cela ne vous convient pas. That doesn't suit you.

205. Venir de. 1. The present tense of **venir** followed by **de** + *infinitive* = 'have just' + *past participle* in English.

Il vient de partir. He has just left.

2. The imperfect tense of **venir** followed by **de** + *infinitive* = 'had just' + *past participle* in English.

Ils venaient d'arriver. They had just arrived.

A. Reading Exercise

Mon cher ami:

1. Je viens d'arriver à Paris et je suis déjà installé chez nos amis les Martin. 2. Vous vous souvenez des Martin naturellement. 3. Quand vous et moi étions ici, il y a trois ans, nous avions une lettre d'introduction pour eux et ils nous ont invités à dîner. 4. Ils demeuraient alors dans un appartement sur la rive droite, mais

maintenant ils demeurent numéro 43, rue de Vaugirard. 5. Après votre départ d'Angleterre, ils m'ont prié de revenir à Paris et de demeurer chez eux. 6. J'étais bien content d'accepter leur invitation et j'y suis resté un mois. 7. Cette année-ci, avant de partir, je leur ai écrit et ils ont bien voulu me recevoir encore une fois. 8. Il me convient beaucoup mieux d'être chez des gens que je connais et, de plus, j'aime le Quartier Latin. 9. Il me semble qu'au Quartier Latin on est dans un milieu plus français que sur la rive droite. 10. Je m'amuse beaucoup ici à ne rien faire. 11. C'est-à-dire, je vais au théâtre, je visite les musées de temps en temps et je passe beaucoup de temps dans les cafés. 12. Paris est aussi intéressant qu'autrefois et je l'aime de plus en plus. 13. À propos, vous vous souvenez de notre vieil ami M. Gordon, n'est-ce pas? 14. Eh bien, il comptait venir à Paris. 15. Il est en Espagne en ce moment et une lettre que j'ai reçue de lui hier m'apprend qu'il changera peut-être d'avis. 16. Je ne sais pas maintenant s'il viendra ou non. 17. Il ne m'a rien dit excepté qu'il ne pouvait pas venir à Paris maintenant. 18. Il m'a demandé de vos nouvelles; il voulait savoir si vous veniez à Paris cet été. 19. Vous savez qu'il est devenu très riche et qu'il passe son temps à voyager. 20. J'ai l'intention de rester ici un mois et après je vais en Allemagne pour une semaine ou deux. 21. De là, je vais en Angleterre où je resterai jusqu'au 31 août.

Votre bien dévoué,

Charles.

B. Conversation Exercise

(*Imagine yourself the person addressed in the above letter*)

1. De qui avez-vous reçu une lettre? 2. Où est votre ami? 3. Quand étiez-vous à Paris. 4. Qui sont les Martin? 5. Où demeurent-ils maintenant? 6. Pourquoi est-ce que votre ami aime le Quartier Latin? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il fait à Paris? 8. Vous souvenez-vous de Monsieur Gordon? 9. Où l'avez-vous connu? 10. Vient-il à Paris? 11. Où va votre ami en partant de Paris? 12. Quand compte-t-il quitter l'Angleterre?

C. Oral Exercise

1. There are sixty minutes in one hour. 2. I saw thirty pupils in the yard. 3. How many lessons have you written? 4. I have al-

ready written twenty-eight. 5. There are more than fifty in the book. 6. Can you count in French from eighty-one to ninety? 7. I used to know how to do it. 8. Tell me if I have forgotten it. 9. Very well, I am going to write the numbers by tens from thirty to one hundred on the board. 10. Read them aloud, if you please. 11. Does it suit you to stay here? 12. I do not remember them. 13. They were returning to New York when we left. 14. Come here. 15. He has become very rich. 16. There are thirty-one days in the month of July. 17. He is now living [at] 91 Boulevard St. Germain. 18. He used to live formerly [at] 71 rue de Vaugirard. 19. I received news of him two years ago. 20. When is he coming back to the United States?

D. Written Exercise

Write a letter of from 100 to 200 words to a friend. Tell him you are expecting the Martins, who are returning to New York after a year in Europe. Tell where they have been and what they have seen. You are going to have a party for them and you are asking this friend to come. It will be informal, dinner-coats will be worn. You hope he can come, as the Martins wish very much to see him again.

LESSON XXX

VOCABULARY

autrement [otrəmɑ̃], *adv.*, otherwise.
avancer [avɑ̃se], to advance, gain time; — **de,** to be . . . minutes fast (*of watches*).
la chaleur [ʃalœːr], the heat.
contre [kɔ̃ːtr], *prep.*, against.
gagner [gaɲe], to gain, win, earn.
jouer [ʒwe], to play; — **de** + *art.*, to play a musical instrument; — **à** + *art.*, to play a game (*cards*, etc.).
le joueur [ʒwœːr], the player.
le match [matʃ], the match, game (*of sports*).
la montre [mɔ̃ːtr], the watch.
prêt [prɛ] (**à**), *adj.*, ready (to).
le rendez-vous [rɑ̃devu], the engagement, date, appointment.
retarder [rətarde], to delay, be late, lose time; — **de,** to be . . . minutes slow (*of watches*).
le tennis [tɛnis], the tennis.
le terrain [tɛrɛ̃], ground, the court (*tennis*).

Idioms

aller à sa (ma, votre, notre) rencontre [rãkɔ̃:tr]	to go to meet him *or* her (me, you us)
cela (ça) m'est égal [egal]	that's all the same to me, makes no difference to me
en retard [rətaːr]	late (*of persons, trains,* etc.)
tant mieux [tã mjø]	so much the better
à temps [a tã]	in time
au moins [o mwɛ̃]	at least

206. Expressions of Time

1. 'It is' in telling the time of day is **il est.**

Il est quatre heures.	It is four o'clock.
Il est tard.	It is late.

2. 'After' or 'past' is expressed by:

(*a*) **et** before **demie**

Il est trois heures et demie.	It is half past three.

(*b*) **et** or **un** before **quart**

Il est deux heures et (un) quart.	It is quarter past two.

(*c*) **et** or nothing before **minutes.** **Minutes** may also be omitted.

Il est neuf heures (et) vingt (minutes).	It is twenty minutes past nine.

3. 'Of' or 'before' is expressed by **moins** = 'less.' The hour is given first, followed by **moins** and the number of minutes, or **quart** (used alone or preceded by **le** or **un**) if it happens to be 'quarter of.'

Il est dix heures moins cinq (minutes).	It is five minutes of ten.
Il est trois heures moins (un) quart.	It is quarter of three.

4. **Demi,** 'half' is invariable when preceding the noun, to which it is attached by a hyphen. After the noun, it agrees like any other adjective.

une demi-heure	a half hour
une heure et demie	an hour and a half

5. **midi** [midi], 'noon.'

à midi	at noon

6. **minuit** [minųi], 'midnight.'

à minuit et demi	at half past twelve (midnight)

7. **précis** [preci], *adj.*, 'precise,' 'exactly,' 'sharp.'

à minuit précis	at midnight sharp
à six heures précises	at six o'clock sharp

Falloir

Requires no preposition before the following infinitive.

207. Falloir [falwaːr], 'to be necessary.'

This verb is used only as an impersonal verb, and hence only in the third person singular.

Present	**il faut,** 'it is necessary'
Imperfect Ind.	**il fallait,** 'it was necessary'
Future	**il faudra,** 'it will be necessary'
Past Indef.	**il a fallu,** 'it has been necessary'

Il me faut rester ici.	I must stay here (It is necessary to me to stay here).
Il lui faudra partir.	He will have to go.

Note. — The indirect pronoun object of **falloir** (that is, **me** and **lui** in the above examples) is commonly omitted where the sense can be gathered from the context.

Il faut me lever (*not* **il me faut me lever**). I must get up.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Demain matin j'ai l'intention de jouer au tennis avec un ami.
2. Il m'a dit d'être prêt de bonne heure, parce qu'il y a toujours beau-

coup de monde sur les terrains. 3. Il faudra donc me lever à six heures au moins. 4. Ma montre avance de dix minutes maintenant, mais tant mieux; je serai plus sûr de me lever à temps. 5. Nous comptons partir à sept heures précises et j'espère bien trouver un bon terrain à cette heure-là. 6. Si nous y trouvons deux amis, nous ferons une partie à quatre. 7. Autrement, il faudra jouer l'un contre l'autre. 8. Mais ça m'est égal, car mon ami est un bon joueur; il gagne presque toujours. 9. Nous jouerons une heure et demie ou deux heures. 10. En été il commence à faire chaud à neuf heures et demie du matin. 11. Alors il sera temps de rentrer, parce que je n'aime pas trop la chaleur. 12. D'ailleurs, j'ai un rendez-vous en ville à onze heures moins le quart avec un camarade de classe. 13. Il vient me faire visite et il ne connaît pas très bien la ville. 14. Par conséquent, il faut aller à sa rencontre à la gare. 15. Son train arrive à dix heures quarante, mais il est presque toujours en retard. 16. Mon ami passera une semaine ici et nous ferons beaucoup de parties de tennis ensemble, car il joue à merveille.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Qu'allez-vous faire demain matin? 2. Aimez-vous à jouer au tennis? 3. Allez-vous sortir de bonne heure? 4. Pourquoi? 5. Avec qui jouerez-vous? 6. Fait-il chaud sur le terrain le matin? 7. Pourquoi faudra-t-il rentrer à huit heures et demie? 8. Qui attendez-vous? 9. Pourquoi faut-il aller à la rencontre de votre ami? 10. Combien de temps compte-t-il passer chez vous?

C. Oral Exercise

1. We got up at exactly ten minutes of seven. 2. I had to go to bed early. 3. It was only quarter of ten. 4. They will have to work a great deal. 5. At what time must you get up tomorrow? 6. We must get up at half past six. 7. So much the better, it is beautiful at that hour. 8. It makes no difference to me. 9. We are going to meet them at 4.55 p.m. 10. I hope that the train will not be late. 11. Do you like to play tennis? 12. Yes, very much; I must play again soon. 13. I do not play very often now. 14. Shall you have to go with him? 15. Yes, I shall have to go with him. 16. He does not know the city very well. 17. My watch is

Un Match de Tennis à Cannes

fifteen minutes fast. 18. Your watch is twenty minutes slow. 19. Have you an engagement in town this evening. 20. Yes, with a school friend whom I am expecting.

D. Written Exercise

1. Tomorrow we are going to get up early, because we wish to play tennis. 2. There are always a lot of people on the courts on Sundays and we wish to be there at seven o'clock. 3. Otherwise, we shall have to wait hours perhaps before beginning to play. 4. Fortunately, I like to get up early; so it is all the same to me. 5. I hope we shall find two friends on the courts. 6. Then we four can play. 7. After playing several hours, we shall be ready to come back home. 8. It always begins to get hot early in summer. 9. Moreover, we have an engagement at half past ten. 10. One of our class-mates is coming to the city, and we shall have to go to meet him at the station at 10.35 a.m. 11. It will be his first visit here and he does not know where we live. 12. He intends to spend a week with me before continuing his trip. 13. From here, he is going south where his family lives. 14. He has to be there at the end of this month. 15. We shall be delighted to see him. 16. He too plays tennis very well, and I am sure we shall all have a very good time during his stay here.

LESSON XXXI

VOCABULARY

le côté [kote], the side, direction; **à — de,** beside.

le cours [kuːr], the course (*of study*).

croire [krwaːr], to believe, think; **crois** [krwɑ], *1st sing. pres.*

gauche [goːʃ], *adj.*, left; **à —,** to the left.

général [ʒeneral], *adj.*, general; **en —,** in general.

impossible [ɛ̃posibl], *adj.*, impossible.

jusqu'ici [ʒyskisi], *adv.*, up to here, until now.

libre [libr], *adj.*, free.

louer [lwe], to rent, let.

le mot [mo], the word.

suivre [sɥiːvr], to follow; **suit** [sɥi] *3rd. sing. pres.*

tout [tu], *adv.*, wholly, quite.

vrai [vrɛ] *adj.*, true.

Idiom

donner sur, to open on, give on (*of rooms*, etc.)

Demonstrative Pronouns

208. Invariable Forms:

ce [sə], this, these, that, those, he, she, it, they
ceci [səsi], this
cela [s(ə)la], **ça** [sa], that

209. Variable Forms:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. **celui** [səlɥi],	this one, that one, the one, he.	**ceux** [sø]	these, those, the ones, they.
F. **celle** [sɛl],	this one, that one, the one, she.	**celles** [sɛl]	

210. Usage. Ce [sə] is used as subject of the verb 'to be' (**être**); with **qui** (*as subject*) and **que** (*as object*) to form a compound relative referring to things and meaning 'that which' or 'what.'

C'est moi.	It is I.
Je sais ce que vous faisiez.	I know what (that which) you were doing.
Voici ce qui vous amusera.	Here is what (that which) will amuse you.

211. Ceci [səsi], 'this,' and **cela** [s(ə)la] (*colloquially:* **ça** [sa]), 'that,' are indefinite and refer to a whole idea or phrase or something indicated but not yet named. Never use them when the antecedent of 'this' or 'that' is a definite word already mentioned. In that case, a form of **celui, celle,** etc. must be used.

Je n'aime pas ceci.	I do not like this.
Je ne crois pas cela.	I do not believe that.

212. Celui, celle, ceux, celles are always used referring to a definite antecedent, with which they agree in gender and number, and are always followed by:

La Sorbonne

1. a relative pronoun: **qui** or **que**,
2. a preposition: usually **de** (corresponding to the English apostrophe *s* when a noun is understood),
3. **-ci** or **-là** connected with the demonstrative by a hyphen. They serve to distinguish the nearer from the more remote and also serve to translate the English 'the former' and 'the latter,' the order of ideas being reversed as compared with the English.

Celui qui est ici est mon ami.	He who (the one who) is here is my friend.
Celles que vous avez vues.	Those you have seen.
Mes livres et ceux de Jean.	My books and John's.
À qui sont ces plumes? Celle-ci est à moi, celle-là est à Marie.	Whose pens are these? This one is mine, that one is Mary's.
Henri IV et Louis XIII étaient des rois de France; celui-ci était le fils de celui-là.	Henry IV and Louis XIII were kings of France; the latter was the son of the former.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Nous voici enfin à Paris et nous avons déjà passé trois jours à l'hôtel. 2. Maintenant, il faut chercher une pension ou, ce qui est mieux, un appartement. 3. Il est toujours très difficile de trouver ce qu'on désire. 4. Celui que nous avons loué l'année passée n'est plus libre. 5. En cette saison, il est presque impossible de trouver de bons appartements. 6. Mais j'ai plusieurs adresses de pensions et je trouverai peut-être ce que je désire. 7. Celles de la rive gauche sont moins chères en général que celles de la rive droite. 8. Mon frère est très bien installé dans une pension qui se trouve sur la rive gauche, au Quartier Latin. 9. Là, il est tout à fait comme chez lui et il n'y entend pas un mot d'anglais, ce qui est justement ce qu'il veut. 10. Sa pension est assez loin de l'Opéra, mais elle est meilleure que celles que nous avons vues jusqu'ici sur la rive droite. 11. Elle est aussi plus près de la Sorbonne où mon frère suit des cours. 12. Notre ami Jean a une chambre tout près de la pension de mon frère. 13. Sa chambre donne sur la rue Corneille et celle de mon frère donne sur la rue de Vaugirard. 14. Leurs chambres sont très agréables et assez grandes. 15. Et de plus, elles ne sont pas très

loin du Jardin du Luxembourg. 16. Je vais espérer que nous aurons la chance de trouver une pension pas trop loin de celle de mon frère.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Combien de jours avez-vous passés à Paris? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il faut chercher maintenant? 3. Avez-vous loué une pension ou un appartement l'année passée. 4. Est-il très difficile de trouver des appartements? 5. Avez-vous des adresses de pensions? 6. Est-ce que les pensions de la rive droite sont moins chères que celles de la rive gauche? 7. Où est-ce que votre frère est installé? 8. Pourquoi est-ce que votre frère désire une pension près de la Sorbonne? 9. Sur quelle rue donne la chambre de votre ami Jean? 10. Où espérez-vous trouver une pension?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Those who study will be able to speak French. 2. What I wish is a good boarding-house. 3. He to whom I was speaking is my teacher. 4. I do not know what they gave her. 5. This is better than that. 6. My books and my brother's are on the table. 7. The one that I have is very old. 8. Those (*f. pl.*) that you gave me are not good. 9. These (*m. pl.*) are better than those. 10. This one is mine. 11. Henry's (*m. pl.*) are on the table. 12. Those (*f. pl.*) on (**de**) the left bank are cheaper than those on the right bank. 13. John's (*f.*) and those (*f. pl.*) that I saw are here. 14. I do not wish this, I prefer that. 15. It is difficult to find what you wish. 16. I shall give you my brother's (*m.*). 17. The ones (*m. pl.*) that we gave you are better than Mary's. 18. John is my brother, Mary is my cousin; the former is not so good a student as the latter. 19. What he said is what is amusing you, isn't it? 20. The one (*f.*) that I gave you is better than those (*f. pl.*) he gave us. 21. This is true but what he said is not true.

D. Written Exercise

1. We have already spent ten days in Paris. 2. For a week now we have been looking for a boarding-house. 3. I prefer an apartment, but it is very hard to find any in Paris. 4. The one that we had last year is excellent, but it is taken now. 5. However, I have

Jardin et Palais du Luxembourg

some addresses of boarding-houses which John gave me. 6. And this morning I wish to look at those which are on the left bank, because they will be nearer the Sorbonne. 7. You know that I am going to follow some courses there. 8. We are now in the Latin Quarter. 9. Here is a boarding-house which is well situated. 10. The rooms are very large and comfortable. 11. I think there will be enough room for us two. 12. You can (*fut.*) take the room which opens on the rue de Vaugirard. 13. I can (*fut.*) take the one which opens on the rue Corneille. 14. This boarding-house is very near the Luxembourg Garden. 15. We shall be able to pass a lot of time there, reading under the trees where it is always cool. 16. I shall come again tomorrow, for I think that this boarding-house is the one that we want.

LESSON XXXII

VOCABULARY

absolument [apsɔlymɑ̃], *adv.*, absolutely.
aider [ede], (**à** + *inf.*), to aid, help.
l'air [ɛːr], *m.*, the air, appearance.
l'arrivée [arive], *f.*, the arrival.
le **bout** [bu], the end; **au — de,** at the end of.
cesser [sɛse], (**de** + *inf.*), to stop, cease.
le **coup** [ku], the stroke, blow.
observer [ɔpsɛrve], to observe.
le **paysage** [peizaːʒ], the landscape, country(side).
pendant que [pɑ̃dɑ̃ kə], *conj.*, while.
la **poussière** [pusjɛːr], the dust.
prêter [prete], to lend.
puisque [pɥisk(ə)], *conj.*, since, as.
sonner [sɔne], to sound, ring.
le **téléphone** [telefɔn], the telephone.
téléphoner [telefɔne], to telephone.

Idioms

à pied [a pje]	on foot
en plein air [ɑ̃ plɛ̃n ɛːr]	in the open air, out-doors
être en train de [ɛːtr ɑ̃ trɛ̃ də]	to be busy with (at)
tout à coup [tut a ku]	suddenly
passer (**une heure,** *etc.*) **à**	to spend (an hour, etc.) in reading

213. Pleuvoir, 'to rain'

Impersonal verb used only in third person singular.

1. Infinitive	2. Present Participle	3. Past Participle
pleuvoir [plœvwaːr], 'to rain'	**pleuvant** [plœvɑ̃], 'raining'	**plu** [ply], 'rained'

4. Pres. Ind. **il pleut** [plø], 'it rains,' 'is raining,' 'does rain.'
5. Imperfect. **il pleuvait** [plœvɛ], 'it was raining,' 'used to rain,' etc.
6. Future. **il pleuvra** [plœvra], it will rain.'
7. Past. Indef. **il a plu** [ply], 'it has rained.'

Infinitive with Prepositions

214. Some verbs in French require no preposition before a following infinitive, some require the preposition **de,** and some require the preposition **à.**

215. Among the verbs requiring no preposition before a following infinitive are:

aimer mieux, to prefer
aller, to go
compter, to count, intend
désirer, to desire
devoir, to owe; must, ought
faire, to make, do, have (= cause)
falloir, to be necessary, must
laisser, to permit, allow
pouvoir, to be able, can
préférer, to prefer
savoir, to know (how)
voir, to see
vouloir, to will, wish

Il aime mieux rester ici.	He prefers to stay here.
Je compte aller avec vous.	I intend to go with you.
Nous les avons vus partir.	We saw them leave.
Mon père me laisse vendre ses livres.	My father lets me sell his books.

216. Among the verbs requiring **de** before the following infinitive are:

cesser, to cease
demander, to ask
se dépêcher, to hurry
dire, to tell (= command)
essayer, to try
oublier, to forget
permettre, to allow
prier, to ask, beg, urge
tâcher, to try

Il m'a dit de rester. He told me to stay.
J'ai tâché de le faire. I tried to do it.
Elle s'est dépêchée de descendre. She hurried (to come) down stairs.

217. Among the verbs requiring the preposition **à** before the following infinitive are:

aider, to aid, help
aimer [1], to love, like
s'amuser, to have a good time
apprendre, to learn
commencer, to begin
continuer, to continue
inviter, to invite
se mettre, to begin
se préparer, to prepare one's self, get ready

Il s'amuse à lire. He has a good time reading.
Il se met à étudier. He begins to study.

218. Two very common verbs require **par** in the sense of 'by':

commencer, 'to begin' **finir,** 'to end'

Nous avons commencé par faire des emplettes. We began by going shopping.
Nous avons fini par rester. We ended by staying.

219. Certain verbs vary in meaning according to the preposition following them.

venir, 'to come' **venir à,** 'to happen to' **venir de,** 'to have just'

Il vient me voir. He is coming to see me.
Si vous venez à le voir. If you happen to see him.
Mon frère vient de la voir. My brother has just seen her.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Il avait cessé de pleuvoir et j'étais en train d'étudier mes leçons. 2. Tout à coup le téléphone a sonné. 3. C'était mon ami Pierre qui

[1] **Aimer** may be followed by **à** or directly by the infinitive.

avait fini ses leçons et qui voulait venir me voir. 4. Je lui ai dit de venir, s'il le voulait, mais que j'avais un thème à écrire pour le cours d'anglais qu'il fallait absolument finir cet après-midi. 5. — Je vous aiderai, m'a-t-il répondu,[1] vous savez que je suis très fort en anglais. 6. Après cela, nous pourrons faire une promenade en auto. 7. — Bien, et puisque vous venez me voir, n'oubliez pas d'apporter la grammaire que je vous ai prêtée l'autre jour. 8. J'en ai grand besoin maintenant. 9. — Bon, je serai chez vous dans un quart d'heure. 10. J'ai continué à étudier mes leçons en attendant l'arrivée de Pierre. 11. Bientôt, il a sonné à la porte. 12. Il m'a aidé à écrire mon thème et, au bout d'une demi-heure, nous l'avions fini. 13. Alors, nous sommes sortis pour faire notre promenade en auto. 14. C'était le printemps et la campagne était très belle avec les arbres et les fleurs qui commençaient à pousser. 15. Malheureusement, je n'ai pas pu bien observer le paysage, parce que Pierre allait trop vite. 16. Après une bonne heure en plein air, nous sommes rentrés chez moi. 17. J'ai invité Pierre à dîner chez nous et à aller au cinéma après.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Qu'est-ce que vous faisiez quand on vous a téléphoné? 2. Qui était-ce? 3. Que voulait Pierre? 4. N'aviez-vous rien à faire? 5. Que lui avez-vous dit? 6. Et Pierre, que vous a-t-il répondu? 7. Est-ce que Pierre allait venir à pied? 8. Pourquoi voulait-il venir en auto? 9. Où êtes-vous allés faire votre promenade? 10. Quelle saison était-ce? 11. Avez-vous regardé le paysage? 12. Avez-vous invité Pierre à dîner? 13. Qu'avez-vous fait après le dîner?

C. Oral Exercise

1. It has stopped raining. 2. Tell him to stay here. 3. We prefer to go with you. 4. Hurry and get dressed. 5. They invited us to go automobiling. 6. Do you wish to go with him? 7. We were counting on staying at home. 8. If it happens to rain, we shall not go. 9. I will help you to translate the themes. 10. It is beginning to rain now. 11. Do you wish to telephone him? 12. He has just telephoned me. 13. I like to go automobiling in the country. 14. Are

[1] After direct quotations, French requires the inversion of subject and predicate.

the roads good in Spring? 15. I amuse myself reading. 16. I will tell him to come here. 17. They used to like to write letters. 18. I must read the newspaper. 19. We are trying to learn to speak French. 20. I ask you to send it to him. 21. He is continuing reading. 22. I forgot to give it to him. 23. He is going to learn to play tennis. 24. He begins by reading and he ends by writing. 25. Before leaving, I shall know how to speak French.

D. Written Exercise

1. This morning Pierre telephoned me while I was studying my lessons. 2. It had stopped raining and he invited me to go automobiling with him. 3. I told him that I had some exercises to write, but that he could come and see me, if he wished (it). 4. He said he would help me to write the exercises. 5. "Very well," said I, "don't forget to bring your grammar, for I shall need it." 6. In fifteen minutes he arrived, and we spent nearly an hour in writing the exercises. 7. After having finished them, we took a long auto ride in the country. 8. I asked Pierre not to go too fast, as I wanted to see everything. 9. There is nothing prettier than the country in spring. 10. The trees were all in bloom. 11. The roads were very good and it was neither too hot nor too cold. 12. We saw many automobiles, but, as it had rained, there was not much dust. 13. After having spent an hour or two in the woods, we returned to my house for luncheon. 14. It was late, but my family had not forgotten to wait for us. 15. After luncheon, Pierre and I went to a movie.

LESSON XXXIII

VOCABULARY

abriter [abrite], to shelter
la basse-cour [bas kuːr], the poultry-yard, barnyard.
le bœuf [bœf], the ox, beef.
le canard [kanar], the duck.
le champ [ʃɑ̃], the field.
le chat [ʃa], the cat.
le chien [ʃjɛ̃], the dog.
la dinde [dɛ̃ːd], the turkey.
l'écurie [ekyri], *f.*, the stable (*for horses*).
entre [ɑ̃ːtr], *prep.*, between.
entretenir [ɑ̃trətniːr], to keep up.

l'étable [etabl], *f.*, the stable (*for cows*, etc.).
fournir (2) [furniːr], to furnish.
le fromage [frɔmaːʒ], the cheese.
le lever [ləve], the rising; **au — du soleil,** at sun-rise.
loger [lɔʒe], to lodge, keep.
le lycée [lise], the lycée.
l'oie [wa], *f.*, the goose.
la pluie [plɥi], the rain.
le poulailler [pulaje], the chicken-house; 'coop' (*of a theatre*).
la poule [pul], the hen, chicken.
le poulet [pulɛ], the chicken.
propre [prɔpr], *adj.*, own, clean.
protéger [prɔteʒe], to protect.
la quantité [kɑ̃tite], the quantity, number.
rencontrer [rɑ̃kɔ̃tre], to meet, find.
rôder [rode], to roam.
le vacarme [vakarm], the noise.
la vache [vaʃ], the cow.
la vie [vi], the life.
le voisin [vwazɛ̃], the neighbor.
la volaille [vɔlaːj], the poultry.

Idioms

par exemple [par egzɑ̃pl]	for example, for instance
de plus [də ply]	besides, in addition, moreover

220. Possessive Pronouns

Singular

	M.	*F.*	
1 pers.	**le mien** [mjɛ̃]	**la mienne** [mjɛn]	mine
2 pers.	**le tien** [tjɛ̃]	**la tienne** [tjɛn]	thine
3 pers.	**le sien** [sjɛ̃]	**la sienne** [sjɛn]	his, hers, its, one's own
1 pers.	**le nôtre** [noːtr]	**la nôtre** [noːtr]	ours
2 pers.	**le vôtre** [voːtr]	**la vôtre** [voːtr]	yours
3 pers.	**le leur** [lœːr]	**la leur** [lœːr]	theirs

Plural

	M.	*F.*	
1 pers.	**les miens** [mjɛ̃]	**les miennes** [mjɛn]	mine
2 pers.	**les tiens** [tjɛ̃]	**les tiennes** [tjɛn]	thine
3 pers.	**les siens** [sjɛ̃]	**les siennes** [sjɛn]	his, hers, its, one's own
1 pers.	**les nôtres** [noːtr]	**les nôtres** [noːtr]	ours
2 pers.	**les vôtres** [voːtr]	**les vôtres** [voːtr]	yours
3 pers.	**les leurs** [lœːr]	**les leurs** [lœːr]	theirs

Note. — **Le** and **les** contract with **de** and **à**, e.g., **du mien, aux siennes,** etc.

Les Travaux de la Ferme

221. Use. The possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun indicating the thing possessed, and in person with the possessor, and are used in general as in English.

J'ai ma plume et la vôtre. I have my pen and yours.

222. After **être,** possession is regularly expressed by **à** + a noun or a disjunctive pronoun. When a distinction of ownership or emphasis is desired, the possessive pronoun may be used after **être.**

Ce chapeau est à moi. This hat is mine.
Ce chapeau est le mien. This hat is (the one that is) mine.

223. The English idiom 'a friend of mine,' etc., may be translated by **un de mes amis** or **un ami à moi.**

A. Reading Exercises

1. En général nous passons l'été dans une ferme qui est à mon cousin. 2. C'est une belle ferme, assez grande et pas très loin de notre ville. 3. Après une année au lycée, il est très agréable de passer les vacances en plein air. 4. Et, de plus, il y a toutes sortes de choses intéressantes à voir dans une ferme. 5. Par exemple, il y a les animaux; et mon cousin en a beaucoup. 6. Il a un très beau chien, plus grand que le mien. 7. Dans une ville il est plus commode d'avoir un petit chien et le nôtre est très petit. 8. Mon cousin a quatre grands chevaux pour faire les travaux de la ferme. 9. Leur écurie est toujours très propre. 10. À côté de l'écurie il y a une étable, où s'abritent les vaches et les bœufs. 11. Les vaches fournissent beaucoup de lait et on en fait du beurre et du fromage que mon cousin vend en ville. 12. Derrière l'étable se trouve la basse-cour, où il y a une quantité de poules, de canards, d'oies et de dindes. 13. On peut se figurer le vacarme que fait toute cette volaille au lever du soleil. 14. On loge la volaille dans des poulaillers. 15. Ainsi elle est protégée contre les chats, qui rôdent la nuit, et contre la pluie, quand il fait mauvais temps. 16. Il y a beaucoup à faire pour bien entretenir une ferme comme la sienne. 17. Il faut se lever de bonne heure et travailler toute la journée.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Où passez-vous les vacances en général? 2. À qui est cette ferme? 3. Aimez-vous la vie en plein air? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a d'intéressant à voir dans une ferme? 5. Où est-ce qu'on loge les chevaux? 6. Les chevaux, que font-ils dans une ferme? 7. Que trouve-t-on à côté de l'écurie? 8. Y a-t-il des vaches? 9. Que donnent-elles? 10. Quelles autres sortes d'animaux y a-t-il? 11. Où est-ce qu'on loge la volaille? 12. Pourquoi? 13. Faut-il travailler beaucoup pour bien entretenir une ferme?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Where are your books? 2. Here are mine. 3. His are on the desk. 4. Is this one yours? 5. No, this one is John's. 6. That one is Mary's. 7. These pens are mine, those are yours. 8. A friend of mine is going with me. 9. My cousin's farm is very pretty. 10. Ours is larger. 11. His is not very far from here. 12. Where is yours? 13. Ours is between the woods and the lake. 14. It is prettier than my cousin's. 15. Whose pen is this? 16. It is mine, not his. 17. Where is his? 18. His is with yours on the table. 19. These pens are theirs. 20. Those are ours. 21. These are mine. 22. I don't want hers, I want yours. 23. Give me John's. 24. Don't give me Mary's. 25. Here is hers.

D. Written Exercise

1. The holidays began last week. 2. We always spend ours in the country and yesterday we went to my cousin's farm which is not far from here. 3. We arrived in the morning and my cousin met us at the station. 4. I am very fond of animals, so I went right away to see the horses, when we arrived at the farm. 5. Unfortunately, they were not in the stable. 6. My cousin said that they were working in the fields. 7. But I saw the cows and the oxen. 8. He has twenty cows, and they furnish milk to all the neighbors. 9. Besides, my cousin makes butter and cheese which he sells in town. 10. The butter which we usually buy in town is not always good. 11. But his is always excellent and it is always fresh. 12. In the barnyard there

were lots of chickens and ducks, which I saw after looking at the cows. 13. There were also some geese and a few turkeys. 14. On some farms the poultry stays in the barnyard all night. 15. But my cousin puts his in chicken-houses, in order to shelter them from the rain. 16. He has a very large dog, which sleeps (*use* **se coucher**) near the chicken-houses. 17. The dog helps to protect the poultry from animals which roam at night. 18. We have a dog at home, but ours is much smaller than my cousin's. 19. In order to keep up his farm, my cousin works very hard. 20. He has to get up early and he is busy nearly all day.

LESSON XXXIV

VOCABULARY

le cercueil [sɛrkœːj], the casket, coffin.
chanter [ʃɑ̃te], to sing.
la cour [kuːr], the court.
la dépense [depɑ̃s], the expenditure.
l'égalité [egalite], *f.*, the equality.
le gouvernement [guvɛrnəmɑ̃], the government.
insulter [ɛ̃sylte], to insult.
irrespectueux [irɛspɛktyø], *adj.*, disrespectful.
la joie [ʒwa], the joy.
la liberté [libɛrte], the liberty.
le luxe [lyks], the luxury.
le malheur [malœːr], the misfortune.
manquer [mɑ̃ke], to be lacking; miss, fail.
mil [mil], *adj.*, thousand (*used only in dates*).
la misère [mizɛːr], the wretchedness, misery.
la mort [mɔːr], the death.
la nation [nɑsjɔ̃], the nation.
le peuple [pœpl], the people, lower classes.
plaindre [plɛ̃ːdr], to pity; **se —**, to complain.
la protestation [prɔtɛstɑsjɔ̃], the protest, protestation.
le règne [rɛɲ], the reign.
régner [reɲe], to reign.
remarquer [rəmarke], to notice.
respirer [rɛspire], to breathe.
la révolution [revɔlysjɔ̃], the revolution.
rire [riːr], to laugh.
le roi [rwa], the king.
le siècle [sjɛkl], the century.
terminer [tɛrmine], to end, finish, terminate.

Past Definite

Past Definite of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*, *être*, *avoir*

224. 'I gave,' 'did give,' etc.	**225.** 'I finished,' 'did finish,' etc.	**226.** 'I sold,' 'did sell,' etc.
donn **ai** [dɔne]	fin **is** [fini]	vend **is** [vãdi]
donn **as** [dɔna]	fin **is** [fini]	vend **is** [vãdi]
donn **a** [dɔna]	fin **it** [fini]	vend **it** [vãdi]
donn **âmes** [dɔnɑm]	fin **îmes** [finim]	vend **îmes** [vãdim]
donn **âtes** [dɔnɑt]	fin **îtes** [finit]	vend **îtes** [vãdit]
donn **èrent** [dɔnɛːr]	fin **irent** [finiːr]	vend **irent** [vãdiːr]

227. 'I was,' etc.		**228.** 'I had,' etc.	
fus [fy]	**fûmes** [fym]	**eus** [y]	**eûmes** [ym]
fus [fy]	**fûtes** [fyt]	**eus** [y]	**eûtes** [yt]
fut [fy]	**furent** [fyːr]	**eut** [y]	**eurent** [yːr]

229. The Past Definite or Preterit Tense is the narrative past tense. It does not, like the imperfect, which is the descriptive tense, emphasize a duration of action or a customary action. It implies the action was completed, came to an end.

230. Use. It is used only in formal writing or formal address. In ordinary conversation and in informal writing (letters, etc.) it is entirely replaced by the Past Indefinite. The student should learn to recognize it but should not use it in informal translation.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Louis XIV régna soixante-douze ans. 2. Son règne se termina en 1715. 3. Malheureusement il y eut de grandes misères à la fin de son règne. 4. Le peuple manquait de pain et vendait tout pour en avoir. 5. Le gouvernement ne s'intéressait guère aux misères du peuple. 6. Il y avait toujours de grosses dépenses pour le luxe de la cour. 7. Les gens de la cour ne pensaient qu'à s'amuser. 8. Mais le peuple commençait à se plaindre de ses malheurs. 9. On parlait un

peu partout de liberté et d'égalité. 10. Après la mort du roi, la nation respira un peu. 11. Dans la ville, et même à la cour, on remarquait une joie irrespectueuse. 12. Le cercueil même du roi fut insulté. 13. On chantait, on riait partout. 14. Ainsi commença le siècle de la Révolution par une protestation contre le siècle de Louis XIV.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Combien d'années Louis XIV régna-t-il? 2. Quand est-ce que son règne commença? 3. Y avait-il des misères à la fin de son règne? 4. De quoi est-ce que le peuple manquait? 5. À quoi pensaient les gens de la cour? 6. Est-ce que le peuple commençait à se plaindre? 7. De quoi parlait-on partout? 8. Quand est-ce que le règne de Louis XIV finit? 9. Pourquoi y avait-il une joie irrespectueuse à la mort du roi? 10. Dans quel siècle commença la Révolution?

C. Oral Exercise

(Give forms in the Past Definite)

1. We gave. 2. They finished. 3. You sang. 4. There were. 5. He was. 6. They sold. 7. The reign lasted a long time. 8. It finished in 1715. 9. What did I give? 10. They sang a good deal. 11. The nation breathed again. 12. What did he sell? 13. We sold many books. 14. He was there. 15. I did not have it. 16. They had it. 17. You were there. 18. What did you give? 19. We finished the lesson. 20. They were with us.

D. Written Exercise

1. Louis XIV reigned a long time. 2. At the end of his reign there was much misery in France. 3. There was hardly any bread. 4. The people sold everything in order to get some. 5. The government did not wish to do anything to help them. 6. In the court the same luxury and expense continued. 7. After the death of the king the nation began to breathe again. 8. The joy in the city, and in the court too, was almost disrespectful. 9. Even the king's coffin was insulted. 10. There was singing and laughter (one sang and laughed) everywhere. 11. Everyone had the idea that the death of the king was the end of their miseries. 12. The joy of the people was a protest against the reign of Louis XIV.

LESSON XXXV

VOCABULARY

la centaine [sɑ̃tɛn], the hundred, about a hundred.
le chapeau [ʃapo], the hat.
la chemise [ʃəmiːz], the shirt.
le choix [ʃwa], the choice, selection.
le col [kɔl], the collar; **faux —** [fo kɔl], (detachable) collar.
commander [kɔmɑ̃de], (**de** + *inf.*), to order, command.
le complet [kɔ̃plɛ], the suit.
désorganiser [dezɔrganize], to disorganize.
essayer [esɛje], to try (on).
l'étoffe [etɔf], *f.*, the material, goods.
le feutre [føːtr], the felt (hat).
le goût [gu], the taste.
gris [gri], *adj.*, gray.
la manchette [mɑ̃ʃɛt], the cuff.
mou [mu], (**mol,** *m., before a vowel,* **molle,** *f.*) *adj.*, soft.
néanmoins [neɑ̃mwɛ̃], *adv.*, nevertheless.
la paire [pɛːr], the pair.
pressé [prɛse], *adj.*, hurried, in a hurry.
le prix [pri], the price.
remplir (2) [rɑ̃pliːr], to fill.
la rue [ry], the street.
le soulier [sulje], the low shoe.
le tailleur [tɑjœːr], the tailor.
le vêtement [vɛtmɑ̃], the garment; *pl.*, clothing, clothes.

IDIOMS

à la mode [a la mɔd]	in style, fashionable
sur mesure [syr məzyːr]	to measure, to order
à bon marché [a bɔ̃ marʃe]	cheap (*lit.*, 'at a good market')
tout fait [tu fɛ]	ready-made

231. *Ce* and *Il* as subject of *Être*

1. 'He,' 'she,' 'they' are translated by **il, ils, elle, elles** when the verb **être** is followed by an adjective or an unmodified noun.

Il est bon.	He is good.
Elle est française.	She is French.
Elles sont amies.	They are friends.

2. 'It,' 'this,' 'that' are usually translated by **ce** when the verb **être** is followed by an adjective or an adverb. [Cf. § 123.]

La Rue de Rivoli

In the case of an adjective **il** or **elle** may replace **ce**. With **il** or **elle** the adjective agrees; with **ce**, the adjective is invariable.

C'est difficile.	It is difficult.
C'est bien.	It is well.
C'est long (*or* **elle est longue**), **cette leçon.**	It is long, this lesson.

3. 'It,' impersonal, is **il**. [Cf. § 123.]

Il est facile de faire cela.	It is easy to do that.

4. 'It,' 'this,' 'that,' 'these' 'those,' 'he,' 'she,' 'they' are translated by **ce** in all other cases, that is, **être** followed by (*a*) modified noun, (*b*) pronoun, (*c*) proper noun, and (*d*) superlative.

(*a*)	**C'est un ami de mon père.**	He is a friend of my father.
(*b*)	**C'est lui, elle, moi; ce sont (c'est) eux.**	It is he, she, I; it is they.
(*c*)	**C'était Marie.**	It was Mary.
(*d*)	**C'est le plus beau de tous.**	It is the most beautiful of all.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Nous allons faire un grand voyage et, par conséquent, j'ai besoin de plusieurs sortes de vêtements d'hommes. 2. Je n'aime pas à faire des emplettes tout seul et, après le petit déjeuner, j'ai téléphoné à un ami pour lui demander s'il voulait m'accompagner. 3. Il m'a dit qu'il n'avait rien à faire et qu'il voulait bien aller avec moi. 4. Il est venu me chercher et nous sommes partis tout de suite. 5. Dans les rues et dans les magasins il y avait beaucoup de monde. 6. Le service dans les grands magasins était un peu désorganisé. 7. Mais si on n'était pas trop pressé, on finissait par être servi. 8. D'abord, j'ai acheté des souliers. 9. Ils sont chers ces jours-ci, mais, néanmoins, il fallait en acheter. 10. Après cela, nous avons regardé des chapeaux. 11. Les chapeaux mous sont à la mode maintenant. 12. J'ai acheté un feutre gris. 13. Ensuite, j'ai choisi des cravates et des chemises blanches à col et à manchettes. 14. Les cravates étaient très belles et il y en avait des centaines. 15. Il était très difficile d'en faire un choix. 16. Mon ami a acheté des chemises de couleur qu'il aime mieux que les blanches. 17. Il est facile

d'en trouver à tous les prix. 18. Presque tout le monde porte des chaussettes de laine maintenant. 19. Nous en avons vu de toutes sortes. 20. J'aime surtout les grises et j'en ai choisi trois paires. 21. Puis j'ai essayé des complets tout faits. 22. Je n'en ai pas trouvé à mon goût et j'en ai commandé un sur mesure. 23. Il sera prêt dans quinze jours. 24. Ce sera un complet très joli, parce que l'étoffe en est excellente. 25. Après une journée bien remplie, nous sommes rentrés à la maison.

B. Conversation

1. De quoi aviez-vous besoin? 2. Pourquoi? 3. Où êtes-vous allé pour faire des emplettes? 4. Avec qui? 5. Y avait-il beaucoup de monde dans les magasins? 6. Qu'avez-vous acheté d'abord? 7. Quels chapeaux sont à la mode en cette saison? 8. Préférez-vous les chemises de couleur ou les chemises blanches? 9. Quelles sortes de chemises sont à la mode maintenant? 10. Combien de cravates avez-vous achetées? 11. Avez-vous acheté un complet? 12. Achetez-vous des complets tout faits ou sur mesure? 13. Quand est-ce que votre complet sera prêt?

C. Oral Exercise

1. It is Mary who gave it to me. 2. They are my books. 3. That is easy to translate. 4. It is we whom you saw. 5. It is easy to sing that song. 6. He is the taller of the two. 7. He is my brother. 8. They are friends. 9. She is French and he is English. 10. He is a doctor. 11. They are better than he. 12. She is the best student. 13. They are expensive now. 14. They will be cheaper in the fall. 15. They are my cousins. 16. It is you who told me so, isn't it? 17. Those are his books on the table. 18. I did not know that it was she. 19. It is easy to do that. 20. That is easy to do.

D. Written Exercise

1. I am going to take a long trip. 2. Consequently, I am going to buy a lot of things. 3. Where can one buy men's clothes? 4. It is in this store, I think. 5. Can one buy good shoes here? 6. Yes, but they are very expensive. 7. Nevertheless, I need some, and I think I shall buy them here. 8. I wish to get some cravats too; I shall need several. 9. These are pretty, aren't they? 10. Yes, but

I don't like the colors. 11. You know that I like gray cravats better. 12. Here are some gray ones, and they are not very expensive. 13. Do you need any shirts now? 14. Yes, I am going to buy some with collars and cuffs. 15. They are quite in style now. 16. But I don't see any white ones, and I don't like colored shirts. 17. I shall look for them in another store. 18. And now, I must get a suit. 19. Do you want one ready-made or made to order? 20. I have never been able to find ready-made suits which I like. 21. I shall order one, if I can have it without waiting too long. 22. This material is pretty, isn't it? 23. Yes, I like it very much and I think I shall select it. 24. The tailor says he can make it right away, and I shall not have to wait. 25. And now I think I have finished for today, and we can go home for dinner.

LESSON XXXVI

VOCABULARY

amener [amne], to bring.
la **cheminée** [ʃəmine], the chimney, fire-place.
décider [deside], (**de** + *inf.*), to decide (to).
déranger [derãʒe], to disturb.
la **douzaine** [duzɛn], the dozen.
environ [ãvirɔ̃], *adv.*, about, approximately.
le **feu** [fø], the fire.
fixer [fikse], to fix, appoint.
franchement [frãʃmã], *adv.*, frankly.
gai [ge], *adj.*, gay, lively, merry.
le **groupe** [grup], the group, party.
le **monde** [mɔ̃d], the world; **tout le —**, everybody.
neiger [nɛiʒe], to snow.
organiser [ɔrganize], to organize.
le **piano** [pjano], the piano.
réussi [reysi], *adj.*, successful.
le **sandwich** [sãdwitʃ], the sandwich.
le **succès** [syksɛ], the success.
superbe [syperb], *adj.*, superb, marvellous.
le **traîneau** [trɛno], the sleigh.
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje], *adv.*, gladly, willingly, with pleasure.

Idioms

à l'heure [a lœːr], on time
de ma (sa, leur) **part** [də ma (sa, lœːr) par], for my (his *or* her, their) part, from me (him *or* her, them)
faire clair de lune [fɛːr klɛːr də lyn], to be moonlight
de bonne humeur [də bɔn ymœːr], in a good humor

Conditional Tenses

232. The Simple Conditional Tense of all regular verbs is formed by adding to the full form of the infinitive, the endings of the imperfect indicative. The final e of verbs like **vendre** is dropped.

Conditional of *donner, finir, vendre, être, avoir*

233. 'I should (would) give,' etc.	**234.** 'I should finish,' etc.	**235.** 'I should sell,' etc.
donner **ais** [dɔnərɛ]	finir **ais** [finirɛ]	vendr **ais** [vãdrɛ]
donner **ais** [dɔnərɛ]	finir **ais** [finirɛ]	vendr **ais** [vãdrɛ]
donner **ait** [dɔnərɛ]	finir **ait** [finirɛ]	vendr **ait** [vãdrɛ]
donner **ions** [dɔnərjõ]	finir **ions** [finirjõ]	vendr **ions** [vãdriõ]
donner **iez** [dɔnərje]	finir **iez** [finirje]	vendr **iez** [vãdrie]
donner **aient** [dɔnərɛ]	finir **aient** [finirɛ]	vendr **aient** [vãdrɛ]

236. 'I should be,' etc.		**237.** 'I should have,' etc.	
ser **ais** [sərɛ]	ser **ions** [sərjõ]	aur **ais** [ɔrɛ]	aur **ions** [ɔrjõ]
ser **ais** [sərɛ]	ser **iez** [sərje]	aur **ais** [ɔrɛ]	aur **iez** [ɔrje]
ser **ait** [sərɛ]	ser **aient** [sərɛ]	aur **ait** [ɔrɛ]	aur **aient** [ɔrɛ]

238. The Simple Conditional Tense of all irregular verbs is made up of the stem of the future plus the endings of the imperfect indicative.

	Future	Conditional
aller, 'to go':	**j'irai**	**j'irais** [irɛ], etc.
avoir, 'to have':	**j'aurai**	**j'aurais** [ɔrɛ], etc.
connaître, 'to know':	**je connaîtrai**	**je connaîtrais** [kɔnɛtrɛ], etc.
dire, 'to say':	**je dirai**	**je dirais** [dirɛ], etc.
écrire, 'to write':	**j'écrirai**	**j'écrirais** [ekrirɛ], etc.
être, 'to be':	**je serai**	**je serais** [sərɛ], etc.
faire, 'to do, make':	**je ferai**	**je ferais** [fərɛ], etc.
lire, 'to read':	**je lirai**	**je lirais** [lirɛ], etc.
pleuvoir, 'to rain':	il pleuvra	il pleuvrait [plœvrɛ], etc.
pouvoir, 'to be able'	**je pourrai**	**je pourrais** [purɛ], etc.

savoir, 'to know':	**je saurai**	**je saurais** [sɔrɛ], etc.
venir, 'to come':	**je viendrai**	**je viendrais** [vjẽdrɛ], etc
voir, 'to see':	**je verrai**	**je verrais** [vɛrɛ], etc.
vouloir, 'to wish';	**je voudrai**	**je voudrais** [vudrɛ], etc.

239. The Perfect Conditional of all verbs is made up of the Simple Conditional of the auxiliary plus the past participle of the verb in question.

J'aurais vendu.	I would have sold.
Il aurait lu.	He would have read.
Vous auriez écrit.	You would have written.

Conditional Sentences

240. Conditional sentences normally consist of two parts: a conditional clause introduced by **si,** 'if,' and a result or main clause.

241. As the English verb form in the conditional clause may vary (i.e., 'should have,' 'were to have,' etc.), it is best to determine first what the tense is in the result clause. From that, the tense in the conditional clause is determined by the following table:

Tense in *Result* or *Main Clause*	Tense in *If* or *Conditional Clause*
Future, Present or Imperative	Present
Conditional	Imperfect Indicative
Conditional Perfect	Pluperfect Indicative

242. The sequence of tenses in conditional sentences is, then, as follows:

J'irai avec vous,	**si j'ai le temps.**
I shall go with you,	if I have time.
J'irais avec vous,	**si j'avais le temps.**
I should go with you,	if I had, should have, were to have the time.
Je serais allé avec vous,	**si j'avais eu le temps.**
I would have gone with you	if I had had the time.

A. Reading Exercise

1. — Voudriez-vous aller avec nous faire une promenade en traîneau dimanche soir? 2. Je voudrais bien vous inviter, mais si vous n'aimez pas les parties de traîneau, dites-le-moi franchement. 3. — Mais oui, j'aime beaucoup cela, s'il ne fait pas trop froid. 4. Vous savez que j'attends mon cousin samedi soir. Puis-je l'amener? 5. — Certainement, si j'avais su qu'il serait ici, je l'aurais invité moi-même. 6. Vous le ferez de ma part, n'est-ce pas? 7. — Volontiers. À quelle heure comptez-vous partir? 8. — Nous allons partir de chez moi à huit heures, si cela vous convient. 9. Nous serons environ une douzaine, je crois. 10. S'il fait clair de lune, nous nous amuserons bien. 11. Après la partie de traîneau nous aurons un bon souper chez moi . . . 12. Dimanche soir il a fait un temps superbe, assez de neige et pas trop froid. 13. Nous sommes partis presque à l'heure fixe. 14. Tout le monde était très gai et nous aurions voulu rester dehors jusqu'à minuit. 15. Mais à dix heures et demie nous avons commencé à penser à ce bon souper. 16. Nous avions tous bien faim. 17. Nous sommes donc rentrés et nous avons eu un bon souper. 18. Après cela, un de mes amis a joué du piano. 19. Nous aurions chanté et dansé, s'il n'avait pas été si tard. 20. Tout le monde a dit que la soirée était très réussie. 21. Nous avons décidé de faire une autre promenade en traîneau, s'il fait beau dimanche prochain.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Aimez-vous les parties de traîneau? 2. Avez-vous accepté l'invitation de votre ami? 3. Qui attendiez-vous samedi? 4. À quelle heure allait-on partir? 5. Combien de personnes y avait-il? 6. Êtes-vous partis à l'heure? 7. Quel temps faisait-il? 8. Pourquoi auriez-vous voulu rester plus longtemps dehors? 9. À quelle heure êtes-vous rentrés? 10. Qu'avez-vous fait alors? 11. Est-ce que la soirée était réussie? 12. Comptez-vous faire encore des parties de traîneau comme celle-là?

C. Oral Exercise

1. If we can, we shall go with you. 2. If I knew where he lived, I would tell you. 3. They would have written him, if they had known

Sports d'Hiver aux Pyrénées

that he was sick. 4. She could go with you, if she were here. 5. You will read this book, if you can, will you not? 6. They would have liked to go with us, if they had not left the city. 7. If it should rain, we would stay home. 8. I would sell them to you, if they were mine. 9. He would have finished his lessons, if he had not been sick. 10. If it were I, I would see him. 11. I could have gone with you, if I had known it. 12. They will be here, if they are invited. 13. If it had been cold, we would have gone sleighing. 14. If it were to snow, we would go sleighing. 15. I will tell him, if I see him. 16. If we have time, we shall write you. 17. I would give it to you, if I had it. 18. He would go with us, if he were not so busy. 19. I should like very much to go to France. 20. They would have known what it was necessary to do.

D. Written Exercise

1. You know that I have two guests at my house now. 2. They are from the South, and they have never seen so much snow before. 3. I thought it would be a good idea, if we were to have a sleighing party Saturday night. 4. I was sure that they would have a very good time. 5. If I had known that my cousin was returning from school, I would have invited him to go with us too. 6. But I thought that he had not yet returned, since I had not seen him. 7. I thought that he would have come to see me, if he had been in town. 8. There would have been plenty of room, I am sure. 9. We left about eight o'clock. 10. It was very cold Saturday night, and it was moonlight, as it had stopped snowing at six o'clock. 11. We would have liked to start on time, but it is always very difficult when there are a lot of people in the party. 12. Everyone was in a good humor, and they all had a fine time. 13. We would not have returned before midnight, if we hadn't known that there were sandwiches and coffee at my house. 14. And there was a fine fire in the fire-place, too. 15. After eating, we should have liked to play the piano and dance, as no one was tired. 16. But it was very late, and I knew that that would disturb the neighbors. 17. My southern guests enjoyed the party very much, as it was something new for them. 18. If the weather is good, we shall have another sleighing party next week.

LESSON XXXVII

VOCABULARY

l'affaire [afɛːr], *f.*, the affair, thing; *pl.*, business.
la disposition [dispozisjɔ̃], the disposal, service.
entier [ɑ̃tje], *adj.*, entire.
l'étude [etyd], *f.*, the study.
expédier [ɛkspedje], to send.
fort [fɔːr], *adj.*, strong, hard.
importer [ɛ̃pɔrte], to be of importance, to matter; **n'importe** [nɛ̃pɔrt], it doesn't matter, no matter.
l'itinéraire [itinerɛːr], *m.*, the itinerary.
là-bas [la bɑ], *adv.*, yonder, over there.
la malle [mal], the trunk.
la moitié [mwatje], the half.
le plancher [plɑ̃ʃe], the floor.
retrouver [rətruve], to find again.

Idioms

faire une malle [fɛːr yn mal], to pack a trunk
passer un examen [pɑse œ̃n egzamɛ̃], to have (stand, take) an examination
quelque part [kɛlkə paːr], somewhere

Present Subjunctive

Present Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre, être, avoir*

243.	**244.**	**245.**
'(that) I (may) give,' 'let me give,' etc.	'I (may) finish,' etc.	'I (may) sell,' etc.
(que) je donn **e** [(kə) ʒə dɔn]	fin ***iss*** **e** [finis]	vend **e** [vɑ̃ːd]
(que) tu donn **es** [(kə) ty dɔn]	fin ***iss*** **es** [finis]	vend **es** [vɑ̃ːd]
(qu')il donn **e** [(k)il dɔn]	fin ***iss*** **e** [finis]	vend **e** [vɑ̃ːd]
(que) nous donn **ions** [(kə) nu dɔnjɔ̃]	fin ***iss*** **ions** [finisjɔ̃]	vend **ions** [vɑ̃djɔ̃]
(que) vous donn **iez** [(kə) vu dɔnje]	fin ***iss*** **iez** [finisje]	vend **iez** [vɑ̃dje]
(qu')ils donn **ent** [(k)il dɔn]	fin ***iss*** **ent** [finis]	vend **ent** [vɑ̃ːd]

246.

'I (may) be,' etc.

sois [swa]	**soyons** [swajɔ̃]
sois [swa]	**soyez** [swaje]
soit [swa]	**soient** [swa]

247.

'I (may) have,' etc.

aie [ɛ]	**ayons** [ɛjɔ̃]
aies [ɛ]	**ayez** [ɛje]
ait [ɛ]	**aient** [ɛ]

NOTE. — The conjunction **que**, 'that,' is required, even when omitted in English.

Je suis content que vous l'aimiez. I am glad (that) you like him.

248. Use. The Subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses after:

1. Verbs expressing: doubt, emotion, wish, will, such as:

douter [dute], to doubt
être fâché [ɛːtrə faʃe], to be angry, sorry
être heureux [ɛːtrə œrø], to be happy, glad
être content [ɛːtrə kɔ̃tɑ̃], to be content, pleased
regretter [rəgrɛte], to regret, be sorry
vouloir [vulwaːr], to wish
désirer [dezire], to desire

Je doute qu'il soit ici.	I doubt that he is here.
Il est fâché que vous ayez son livre.	He is angry that you have his book.
Je suis heureux qu'il finisse ses leçons.	I am glad that he is finishing his lessons.
Nous regrettons que vous soyez malade.	We regret that you are sick.
Voulez-vous qu'il vende les choses?	Do you wish him to sell the things.

2. **il faut** [il fo], **il est nécessaire** [il ɛ nesesɛːr], it is necessary

Il faut que vous étudiiez vos leçons.	You must study your lessons.
Il est nécessaire que nous soyons là.	It is necessary that we be there.

3. Certain conjunctions, such as:

quoique, bien que [kwakə, bjɛ̃kə], although
pour que [pur kə], in order that
avant que [1] [avɑ̃ kə], before

[1] Usually takes redundant **ne** in clause following it.

Quoique (bien que) vous soyez ici, il étudiera.	Although you are here, he will study.
Pour qu'il ait le livre, il faut le lui donner.	In order that he may have the book, you must give it to him.
Dites-le-lui avant que nous n'arrivions.	Tell it to him before we arrive.

249. Generally, if the subject of the verb in the main clause is the same as the subject of the verb in the subordinate clause, the infinitive construction is used. Otherwise, **que** with the subjunctive must be used.

Compare the following:

1. Subjects in the two clauses the same:

They regret not being here. (They regret that they are not here.)	**Ils regrettent de ne pas être ici.**
In order to finish it, I shall stay here. (In order that I may finish it, I shall stay here.)	**Pour le finir, je resterai ici.**

2. Subjects in the two clauses different:

They regret his not being here. (They regret that he is not here.)	**Ils regrettent qu'il ne soit pas ici.**
In order that he may finish it, I shall stay here.	**Pour qu'il le finisse, je resterai ici.**

250. **Il faut** and **il est nécessaire de** may take the infinitive construction when the subject is impersonal, when the subject is 'one,' or when the subject is not expressed but is understood from the context.

Il est nécessaire de bien étudier.	It is necessary to (*or* one must) study well.
Jean, est-il temps de partir? Oui, il faut partir.	John, is it time to go? Yes, we must go.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Ce matin je veux faire ma malle, parce que je vais faire un petit voyage. 2. — Voulez-vous que je vous aide? 3. — Oui, si vous voulez. J'ai déjà mis la plupart de mes vêtements dans la malle. 4. Quant aux autres, ils sont là-bas sur le plancher. 5. Vous savez qu'il faut que ma malle soit à la gare avant midi et je n'ai pas beaucoup de temps. 6. Quoique j'aie arrangé toutes mes affaires, j'ai peur d'avoir oublié quelque chose. 7. — Je voudrais que vous me donniez votre itinéraire. 8. — Avec plaisir. D'abord, je compte faire une visite à une tante à Tours. 9. Après cela, avant de revenir, je passerai quelques jours chez un ami de collège à Bordeaux. 10. Je suis bien fâché que vous ne m'accompagniez pas. 11. — Moi aussi, mais il faut que je termine mes études avant les vacances. 12. Alors je serai à votre entière disposition. 13. Si vous voulez que je vous retrouve quelque part, je serai enchanté de le faire. 14. Avant que vous n'arriviez chez votre ami de collège, j'aurai passé mes examens. 15. — Bon, je vous écrirai pour vous dire où nous pourrons nous retrouver. 16. — Très bien, et maintenant occupons-nous de la malle. 17. Avez-vous assez de chemises? 18. — Oui, j'en ai au moins une douzaine et voici des cravates neuves que j'ai achetées hier. 19. — N'oubliez pas les mouchoirs et les faux-cols. 20. — Non, je ne les oublierai pas. Voilà, c'est fini. 21. Il faut l'expédier tout de suite à la gare pour la faire enregistrer. 22. Nous pourrons prendre mon billet en même temps.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Pourquoi voulez-vous que votre ami vous aide? 2. Qu'allez-vous faire? 3. Quand est-ce qu'il faut que votre malle soit à la gare? 4. Avez-vous oublié quelque chose? 5. Pourquoi votre ami veut-il votre itinéraire? 6. Voudriez-vous que votre ami vous accompagne? 7. Où comptez-vous aller d'abord? 8. Et de là, où allez-vous? 9. Pourquoi est-ce que votre ami ne peut pas vous accompagner? 10. Veut-il vous retrouver plus tard? 11. Nommez les vêtements qui se trouvent dans la malle. 12. Qu'est-ce que vous allez faire à la gare?

C. Grammatical Exercise

Supply the correct form of the verb whose infinitive is found in parentheses: 1. Quoiqu'il (être) malade, il sera ici. 2. Il faut que vous (étudier) vos leçons. 3. Avant qu'il ne (finir) ses leçons, je vous montrerai les miennes. 4. Je regrette que vous ne me (vendre) pas vos livres. 5. Il est nécessaire que vous (avoir) le cahier. 6. Il veut que nous (être) ici. 7. Désirez-vous qu'ils (avoir) les livres? 8. Je suis fâché qu'elle ne vous (accompagner) pas. 9. Il veut que vous lui (montrer) les exercices. 10. Pour que nous (parler) français, il faut que nous (travailler) beaucoup. 11. Je suis content qu'il vous (avoir) donné ses livres.

D. Oral Exercise

1. I have to be there at six o'clock. 2. He is sorry you are sick. 3. He is sorry you have been sick. 4. Although I have the book, I will not give it to you. 5. He regrets that you are giving it to him. 6. He wishes to be with us. 7. He wishes us to be with him. 8. Before you sell it to him, show it to me again. 9. It is necessary for him to be here. 10. I don't wish you to show it to him. 11. We must study our lessons. 12. Do you have to study them now? 13. In order that he may have the book, I must give it to him. 14. They have to work very hard. 15. He has to sell his house. 16. He doesn't wish you to sell it. 17. Although they are sick, they will be here. 18. I am very glad that you will accompany us. 19. We regret selling the house. 20. They are glad to go with us.

E. Written Exercise

1. I am packing my trunk and my friend wants to help me. 2. My trunk has to be at the station an hour before the departure of the train. 3. In order that I may finish it, I have all my things here. 4. I have already put (the) half of them in the trunk. 5. — Have you forgotten anything? 6. — No, and I am glad that you are here to help me. 7. Do you want me to give you my itinerary? 8. — Yes, if you please, and I should like to go with you. 9. — I am sorry that you are so busy with your studies. 10. I will write you, in order that you may have my address. 11. When you have

finished your studies, you can meet me *en route*. 12. — I would be very glad to do that. 13. Where are you going at first? 14. — I expect to go to my aunt's at Tours. 15. Later, I shall spend a few days with a school friend in Bordeaux. 16. Although I have not seen him since last year, we were very good friends in college, and he has invited me to visit him. 17. — Perhaps I can meet you there. 18. Are you sure you have forgotten nothing? 19. — Yes, everything is in the trunk. 20. We must go to the station now to buy my ticket. 21. Then I will have the trunk checked.

LESSON XXXVIII

VOCABULARY

appeler [aple], to call, name; **s'—**, to be called, named.
l'argot [argo], *m.*, the slang.
le baccalauréat [bakalɔrea], the bachelor's degree.
le bachot [baʃo], (*school slang*), the bachelor's degree.
le classique [klasik], the classic; *adj.*, classic, classical.
la conférence [kɔ̃ferɑ̃:s], the lecture.
consister [kɔ̃siste], to consist (**en, dans** + *noun*).
le diplôme [diplo:m], the diploma.
la direction [direksjɔ̃], the direction.
l'enseignement [ɑ̃sɛɲəmɑ̃], *m.*, the instruction.
l'instruction [ɛ̃stryksjɔ̃], *f.*, the instruction.
les mathématiques [matematik], *f. pl.*, the mathematics.
le membre [mɑ̃:br], the member.
le ministre [ministr], the minister.
moderne [mɔdɛrn], *adj.*, modern.
Pâques [pɑk], Easter.
la période [pɛrjɔd], the period.
le « pion » [pjɔ̃], (*school slang*), the proctor.
public [pyblik], (*f.*, **publique** [pyblik]), *adj.*, public.
questionner [kɛstjɔne], to quiz, question.
quoi [kwa], *int. pron.*, (*refers to things as obj. of prep.*), what.
le répétiteur [repetitœr], the quiz-master.
la répétition [repetisjɔ̃], the private lesson, rehearsal.
ressembler à [rəsɑ̃ble a], to resemble.
réussir [reysi:r], (**à** + *inf.*), to succeed in.
la science [sjɑ̃:s], the science.
scolaire [skɔlɛ:r], *adj.*, scholarly, (of the) school.
la surveillance [syrvɛjɑ̃:s], the surveillance.
le texte [tɛkst], the text, book.

Idioms

échouer à un examen [eʃwe a œ̃n egzamɛ̃], to fail in an examination
le jour de l'an [lə ʒur də lɑ̃], New Year's Day
réussir à un examen [reysiːr a œ̃n egzamɛ̃], to pass an examination

251. Synopsis of Regular Verbs

1. First Conjugation

donner	donn **ant**	donné	je donne	je donn **ai**
(*Inf.*)	(*Pres. Part.*)	(*Past Part.*)	(*Pres. Ind.*)	(*Past Def.*)
donner **ai**	donn **ais**	[**avoir**]	donne	donn **asse**
(*Fut.*)	(*Impf. Ind.*)	(*Compound Tenses*)	(*Imptv.*)	(*Impf. Subj.*)
donner **ais**	donn **e**			
(*Cond.*)	(*Pres. Subj.*)			

2. Second Conjugation

finir	fin ***iss*** **ant**	fini	je finis	je finis
finir **ai**	fin ***iss*** **ais**	[**avoir**]	finis	finis **se**
finir **ais**	fin ***iss*** **e**			

3. Third Conjugation

vendr **e**	vend **ant**	vendu	je vends	je vendis
vendr **ai**	vend **ais**	[**avoir**]	vends	vendis **se**
vendr **ais**	vend **e**			

Formation of Tenses

252. The Principal Parts of any regular verb comprise:

Infinitive, Present Participle, Past Participle, 1st Person Singular of Present Indicative, 1st Person Singular of Past Definite.

253. The remaining tenses are formed as follows:

1. The Future and the Conditional from the Infinitive by adding **ai** and **ais** respectively to the whole Infinitive (the final **e** of verbs of the third conjugation is dropped).

2. The Imperfect Indicative and the Present Subjunctive from the Present Participle by changing the ending **–ant** to **–ais** and **–e** respectively.

3. All compound tenses from the Past Participle with the aid of the auxiliaries **avoir** or **être.**

4. The Imperative (informal form) is the same as the first person singular, Present Indicative, without the subject pronoun; the Imperative (usual form) and the 'let us' form are the same as the second person plural and the first person plural Present Indicative, respectively, without the subject pronouns.

5. The Imperfect Subjunctive from the Past Definite by changing (in the first conjugation) the **–ai** to **–asse;** and by adding (in the second and third conjugation) **–se** to the Past Definite.

A. Reading Exercise

1. En général, les jeunes gens en France terminent leurs études dans un lycée. 2. Les lycées ressemblent un peu à nos « Junior Colleges ». 3. Ils sont sous la direction du Ministre de l'Instruction Publique. 4. Dans les lycées on étudie les sciences, les mathématiques, les langues classiques et modernes, l'histoire, etc. 5. L'enseignement consiste en cours et en conférences. 6. À Tours, presque tous les garçons de la ville vont au Lycée Descartes. 7. Ils sont âgés de dix à dix-sept ans. 8. Le travail du jour commence à huit heures du matin et continue jusqu'à quatre ou cinq heures du soir. 9. Il y a six heures d'étude par jour où les élèves préparent leurs leçons sous la surveillance d'un répétiteur, appelé par les élèves un « pion ». 10. Les classes sont généralement petites et les professeurs peuvent questionner tous les élèves tous les jours. 11. Dans les cours d'anglais on parle anglais presque tout le temps. 12. Au bout de trois ans d'instruction, les élèves le parlent assez bien. 13. Dans ces classes on trouve comme textes les classiques anglais. 14. Les élèves et les professeurs sont toujours amis. 15. Souvent les professeurs connaissent assez bien les familles de leurs élèves. 16. Dans les lycées il y a trois périodes de vacances: huit jours au jour de l'an, quinze jours à Pâques et les grandes vacances en été. 17. Après avoir fini leurs études, les élèves se présentent aux examens du baccalauréat. 18. En argot scolaire, on dit « bachot ». 19. Les élèves qui ont réussi à leurs examens de baccalauréat peuvent alors continuer leurs études à l'université.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Où est-ce que les jeunes Français terminent, en général, leurs études? 2. Avons-nous des lycées aux États-Unis? 3. Qu'avons-nous qui ressemble un peu aux lycées? 4. À quel lycée vont les jeunes gens de Tours? 5. À quelle heure commence le travail du jour? 6. Combien d'heures d'étude y a-t-il, en général, par jour? 7. En quoi consiste l'enseignement? 8. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une conférence, une répétition? 9. Est-ce que les classes sont très grandes? 10. Dans les cours d'anglais parle-t-on français? 11. Les professeurs et les élèves, sont-ils amis? 12. Combien de périodes de vacances y a-t-il par an? 13. Nommez-les-moi. 14. Quel diplôme est-ce qu'on donne aux élèves à la fin de leurs études?

C. Oral Exercise

1. We shall give them the book. 2. They would give them to us, if they had them. 3. Has he sold the house? 4. They were finishing their lessons. 5. I used to sell books. 6. Give it to me. 7. Let's not sell our books. 8. Let's give them to him. 9. Bring it at once, in order that we may give it to him. 10. You have to finish your lesson. 11. Although he sells them to me, I shall not sell them to you. 12. Finish the exercise. 13. Don't sell them to her. 14. I am sorry you are finishing your studies. 15. We had sold it to them. 16. Have you finished your vacation? 17. Let's finish our lessons. 18. We are finishing them. 19. He has sold his grammar. 20. Sell it to him, give them to us, finish it. 21. Did he fail in his examinations? 22. They would not give them back to us. 23. She was explaining it to me. 24. The apple trees are ripening. 25. Send it to me.

D. Written Exercise

1. Most of the boys in France finish their studies at a Lycée. 2. These schools are under the direction of the Minister of Public Instruction. 3. We have no Lycées in the United States, although the Lycée resembles our Junior College. 4. The boys in the Lycée work very hard. 5. The first class is usually at eight o'clock in the morning. 6. And they stay at school until five or six in the evening.

7. During the day, there are generally five or six study hours. 8. Consequently, the students have enough time to prepare their lessons. 9. Mathematics, sciences, history, classical and foreign languages are usually taught. 10. In the modern language courses, the students begin to speak the language almost immediately. 11. After three or four years, they generally speak it very well. 12. There are three vacation periods: New Year's, Easter and the long vacation in summer. 13. After having finished their course, the students have to take their examinations. 14. If they pass, they are given the bachelor's degree, called in slang « bachot ». 15. One must have the bachelor's degree in order to continue his studies in a University.

LESSON XXXIX

VOCABULARY

l'acier [asje], *m.*, the steel.
l'aiguille [egɥiːj], *f.*, the needle.
l'appétit [apeti], *m.*, the appetite.
automatique [otɔmatik], *adj.*, automatic.
le club [klyb], the club.
le devoir [dəvwaːr], the duty, task.
le disque [disk], the disk, record.
enlever [ɑ̃lve], to remove, take away.
la fibre [fibr], the fiber.
le fox-trot [fɔkstrɔt], the fox-trot.
le gramophone [gramofɔn], the phonograph.
le lieu [ljø], the place.
le lycéen [liseɛ̃], the student of a Lycée.
la main [mɛ̃], the hand; **à la —**, by hand.
le mécanisme [mekanism], the mechanism, attachment.
l'orchestre [ɔrkɛstr], *m.*, the orchestra.
remonter [rəmɔ̃te], to wind, re-ascend.
la réunion [reynjɔ̃], the meeting, assembly.
le salon [salɔ̃], the drawing-room, living-room.
le tapis [tapi], the rug, carpet.

Idioms

à cause de [a koːz də]	because of
avoir lieu [avwaːr ljø]	to take place

Orthographic Changes

254. Verbs in **–cer** add a cedilla (¸) to the **c** whenever the **c** is followed by **a** or **o**:

commencer [kɔmãse], 'to begin,' 'commence'
commençons **commençais,** etc. **commençai,** etc.

255. Verbs in **–ger** insert an **e** after the **g** before **a** or **o**:

manger [mãʒe], 'to eat'
mangeons **mangeais,** etc. **mangeai,** etc.

256. Verbs in **–oyer** change **y** to **i** before mute **e**:

employer [ãplwaje], 'to employ,' 'use'
emploie **emploierai,** etc. **emploierais,** etc.

257. Verbs in **–ayer** and **–eyer** may change the **y** to **i** before a mute **e** or may retain the **y**:

payer [pɛje], 'to pay,' 'pay for'
paie or **paye** **paierai** or **payerai,** etc. **paierais** or **payerais,** etc.

Present Subjunctive

258. The endings of all verbs except **avoir** and **être** in the Present Subjunctive are:

–e	**–ions**
–es	**–iez**
–e	**–ent**

259.	**260.**	**261.**
aller, 'to go'	**faire,** 'to do,' 'make'	**pouvoir** 'to be able,' 'can'
'that I may go,' etc.	'that I may do,' 'make,' etc.	'that I may be able,' etc.
aill **e** [ɑːj]	fass **e** [fɑːs]	puiss **e** [pɥis]
aill **es** [ɑːj]	fass **es** fɑːs]	puiss **es** [pɥis]
aill **e** [ɑːj]	fass **e** [fɑːs]	puiss **e** [pɥis]
all **ions** [aljõ]	fass **ions** [fasjõ]	puiss **ions** [pɥisjõ]
all **iez** [alje]	fass **iez** [fasje]	puiss **iez** [pɥisje]
aill **ent** [ɑːj]	fass **ent** [fɑːs]	puiss **ent** [pɥis]

A. Reading Exercise

1. Mon père vient de me donner un très beau gramophone. 2. Il m'a donné aussi des disques avec des morceaux classiques. 3. Lui et ma mère aiment beaucoup la musique classique, mais moi, j'aime mieux la musique de danse. 4. Par conséquent, je suis allé en ville hier pour acheter d'autres disques. 5. On les paye beaucoup moins chers que les classiques. 6. J'ai acheté aussi des aiguilles en acier pour les disques. 7. On emploie souvent des aiguilles en fibre pour les morceaux classiques, mais pour danser il faut que ça sonne plus haut et les aiguilles en acier sont meilleures. 8. Presque tous les soirs, après le dîner, j'invite des camarades à venir danser. 9. Nous avons toujours une grande heure pour nous amuser avant de commencer nos devoirs pour le lendemain. 10. Quand mes amis arrivent, nous enlevons les deux tapis du salon et voilà une bonne salle de danse. 11. Nous commençons toujours par un fox-trot. 12. Après chaque morceau, il faut remonter le gramophone. 13. Il y a des gramophones avec un mécanisme automatique qui les remonte. 14. Mais le nôtre n'en a pas et il faut le remonter à la main. 15. De temps en temps, on emploie une nouvelle aiguille. 16. Le samedi soir nous pouvons danser plus tard et souvent ma mère prépare un petit souper. 17. Après deux ou trois heures de danse, nous avons tous grand appétit et nous mangeons beaucoup. 18. Nous avons organisé un petit club parmi les lycéens. 19. Mes deux sœurs et deux de mes cousines en sont membres aussi. 20. Les réunions du club ont toujours lieu le samedi soir. 21. Le lieu de ces réunions est presque toujours chez moi à cause de mon gramophone et parce qu'il y a plus de place pour danser dans notre salon.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Que faites-vous en hiver après le dîner? 2. Aimez-vous à danser? 3. Qu'est-ce que votre père vous a donné comme cadeau? 4. Aimez-vous les morceaux classiques? 5. Est-ce que les disques sont très chers? 6. Avez-vous une salle de danse chez vous? 7. Que faites-vous pour en avoir une? 8. Quelles sortes d'aiguilles y a-t-il pour les gramophones? 9. Pourquoi employez-vous les aiguilles en acier pour danser? *10. Quelle espèce de club avez-vous organisé

parmi vos amis du Lycée? 11. Y a-t-il d'autres membres que les Lycéens? 12. Que faites-vous le samedi soir? 13. Pourquoi danse-t-on plutôt chez vous que chez vos amis? 14. Qu'est-ce qu'on fait après la danse?

C. Oral Exercise

1. They were eating. 2. You are beginning. 3. What does he use? 4. How much do you pay for records? 5. I do not pay very much. 6. We used to pay a good deal. 7. I used to eat too much. 8. They used to begin. 9. I would not pay so much. 10. We shall use our books. 11. They would not use theirs. 12. We shall pay for them. 13. We have arranged a dinner. 14. We eat our meals at home. 15. We are beginning to speak French. 16. They would begin now. 17. He used to eat, arrange, use, pay. 18. He will eat, use, pay. 19. Open your book, in order that I may use it. 20. He does not like records with dance music, although he pays for them.

D. Oral Exercise

1. It is necessary that he do it. 2. Although you can leave, I shall have to stay. 3. They want us to go with them. 4. In order that he may study his lessons, I shall give him my book. 5. I am glad that he is going with us. 6. Before he does it, give him this. 7. I am sorry he is not taking a walk with us. 8. Do you wish me to go with you? 9. You must take a nap. 10. Before we go shopping, send it to him. 11. I am glad that she can stay here. 12. I shall stay with the children, so that you can pack your trunk. 13. He doubts that I can do it. 14. We are glad he is going with them. 15. Although he does it, I shall do it too.

E. Written Exercise

1. My sister and I are very fond of dancing. 2. Unfortunately, we have no piano at home, but my father has just bought us a phonograph. 3. He also gave us a lot of records. 4. He and mother like the records with classical pieces better than the others. 5. But my sister and I prefer the records with dance music. 6. So, yesterday morning I went down town to buy some. 7. One doesn't pay very much for these records, consequently I bought about ten. 8. I also bought some needles. 9. I always use steel needles for the dance

music and fiber needles for the classical pieces. 10. Last night after dinner I took up the rugs in the living-room. 11. I had already invited some friends to dance, as we always have an hour of dancing after dinner before beginning our tasks for the next day. 12. I wound up the phonograph and put on one of the new fox-trots. 13. It was a very fine record, played by an orchestra. 14. We all enjoyed the dance very much. 15. After each piece, I wound up the phonograph. 16. Ours has no automatic attachment for winding it, and one must do it by hand. 17. From time to time, I use a new needle. 18. Next Saturday night, we shall dance again at my house. 19. We shall have more time then. 20. Mother said she would prepare a supper for us after the dance and we expect to have a very good time.

LESSON XL

VOCABULARY

l'ascenseur [asɑ̃sœːr], *m.*, the elevator.
le bain [bɛ̃], the bath; **salle de —s,** the bathroom.
le chasseur [ʃasœːr], the bell-boy, "buttons."
le chocolat [ʃɔkɔlɑ], the chocolate.
la clef [kle], the key.
les confitures [kɔ̃fityːr], *f. pl.*, the preserves.
l'espèce [ɛspɛs], *f.*, the kind, sort.
geler [ʒəle], to freeze.
grillé [grije], *adj.*, toasted; **le pain —,** the toast.
inscrire [ɛ̃skriːr], (*like* **écrire**), to inscribe.
le lit [li], the bed.
mener [məne], to lead, take.
la note [nɔt], the bill.
particulier [partikylje], *adj.*, private.
le pourboire [purbwaːr], the tip.
la profession [prɔfɛsjɔ̃], the profession.
se promener [prɔmne], to take a walk, walk, promenade.
le registre [rəʒistr], the register.
le taxi [taksi], the taxi, taxi-cab.
la valise [valiːz], the valise, satchel.

Idioms

le café au lait [kafe o lɛ], hot milk and coffee (*usually poured at same time into a cup*)
ce n'est pas (**ça ne vaut pas**) **la peine** [pɛn], it isn't worth while (the trouble)
en face [ɑ̃ fas], opposite (*of location*)

Orthographic Changes (Continued)

262. Verbs whose ending is **–eler, –ener, –eter, –ever,** etc., (that is, whose stem vowel is mute **e**) change this mute **e** to **è** before a syllable containing a mute **e.**

This change takes place in:

1. Present Indicative and Subjunctive, first, second and third persons singular and third person plural.

geler [ʒəle] 'to freeze'	**mener** [məne] 'to take'	**acheter** [aʃte] 'to buy'	**lever** [ləve] 'to raise'
gèle, etc.	**mène,** etc.	**achète,** etc.	**lève,** etc.

2. Future and Conditional, all forms:

gèlerai, etc.	**mènerai,** etc.	**achèterai,** etc.	**lèverai,** etc.
gèlerais, etc.	**mènerais,** etc.	**achèterais,** etc.	**lèverais,** etc.

Note. — **Jeter** [ʒəte], 'to throw' and **appeler** [aple], 'to call,' double the **t** and **l** respectively in the above cases instead of changing the mute **e** to **è**:

jette, jetterai, jetterais **appelle, appellerai, appellerais**

263. Verbs whose stem vowel is **é,** change **é** to **è** in the Present Indicative and Subjunctive, first, second and third persons singular, and third person plural, but retain the **é** in the Future and Conditional.

céder [sede], 'to yield'	**cède,** etc.	**céderai,** etc.	**céderais,** etc.
régner [reɲe], 'to reign'	**règne,** etc.	**régnerai,** etc.	**régnerais,** etc.
espérer [ɛspɛre], 'to hope'	**espère,** etc.	**espérerai,** etc.	**espérerais,** etc.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Quand on entre dans un des grands hôtels à Paris, il faut aller d'abord au bureau. 2. Là, on dit à un employé quelle sorte de chambre on veut. 3. C'est-à-dire, une chambre à un lit ou une chambre à deux lits. 4. Il y a aussi des chambres avec salle de bains. 5. Ces chambres-là sont naturellement plus chères que les autres. 6. Après avoir choisi la chambre, on inscrit son nom, sa profession et son adresse dans le registre. 7. Alors le chasseur prend

les valises et vous mène à l'ascenseur. 8. Arrivé dans la chambre, on donne un pourboire au chasseur. 9. Il vous demande: — À quelle heure est-ce que Monsieur veut son petit déjeuner? 10. — Je me lève en général de bonne heure. 11. Apportez-le-moi à huit heures, s'il vous plaît. 12. — Très bien, Monsieur. Le chasseur sort et on ferme la porte à clef. 13. Quelquefois on veut fumer des cigarettes avant de se coucher et on n'en a pas. 14. Appellera-t-on le chasseur? 15. Mais, non, ce n'est pas la peine, on peut attendre jusqu'à demain matin. 16. Alors on en achètera au bureau de tabac, en face de l'hôtel. 17. On sert le petit déjeuner dans la chambre. 18. C'est un repas assez léger: du café au lait ou du chocolat, du pain grillé et des confitures. 19. Après le petit déjeuner, on descend et, s'il fait beau, on se promène un peu. 20. En général, on laisse la clef de la chambre au bureau en sortant. 21. S'il ne fait pas beau, on achète un journal et on entre dans le fumoir pour lire. 22. En quittant l'hôtel pour continuer son voyage, on paie la note au bureau. 23. Le chasseur descend les bagages et appelle un taxi.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. En entrant dans un grand hôtel, où va-t-on d'abord? 2. Quelles sortes de chambres y a-t-il? 3. Après avoir choisi une chambre que fait-on ensuite? 4. Qu'est-ce que le chasseur vous demande peut-être? 5. À quelle heure est-ce que vous vous levez en général? 6. Où sert-on le petit déjeuner? 7. Où est-ce qu'on achète du tabac? 8. S'il ne fait pas beau, qu'est-ce qu'on peut faire? 9. En sortant, où met-on la clef? 10. En quittant l'hôtel, où paie-t-on la note. 11. Qui descend les bagages?

C. Oral Exercise

1. His name is John. 2. I am buying a book. 3. Take me there. 4. He is taking me there. 5. We are taking a walk. 6. He wants me to take a walk. 7. I shall call a taxi. 8. He is throwing that away. 9. We shall buy it for Mary. 10. Are you taking a walk? 11. Is he calling me? 12. They will buy the books. 13. It is freezing, isn't it? 14. They want him to buy the books. 15. I am sorry he is taking her there. 16. He would buy it, if you wanted.

it. 17. If he arrives, I shall call you. 18. He is sending it to me. 19. I don't want him to send it to her. 20. That is not worth while. 21. I am calling, throwing, buying, paying, sending.

D. Written Exercise

1. I am going to the hotel to look for a room. 2. Do you wish to go with me? 3. When I enter, I shall go to the desk. 4. The clerk will say to me: What kind of room do you want? 5. I shall say: I want a room with two beds, with a bath, if there are any. 6. Then he will call the bell-boy. 7. The bell-boy will take us to the elevator. 8. He will also carry our baggage. 9. You know that [in] the morning he will bring our breakfast to our room, so we shall tell him at what hour we rise. 10. I always get up at seven o'clock. 11. I know that is quite early for you. 12. But I always go walking in the morning, if the weather is fine. 13. If we need any cigarettes, we shall buy them down stairs or we shall call the bell-boy. 14. In the morning when we go out, we shall leave the key at the desk. 15. Lunch will be served in the dining-room at noon, consequently we shall have to be back at that hour. 16. We shall return by eleven-thirty. 17. When we leave the hotel, we shall pay the bill at the desk. 18. The bell-boy will bring down the baggage. 19. Then he will call a taxi. 20. If we have (the) time, we shall do a little shopping before we go to the station to take our train.

LESSON XLI

VOCABULARY

l'ameublement [amœbləmɑ̃], *m.*, the furnishing.

assurer [asyre], to assure.

la **baignoire** [bɛɲwaːr], the bath-tub; box (*in a theatre*).

le **cabinet** [kabinɛ]: — **de travail,** the study.

la **chaise à bascule** [ʃɛːz a baskyl], the rocking-chair.

la **chambre à coucher** [ʃɑ̃ːbr a kuʃe], the bedroom.

le **compagnon** [kɔ̃paɲɔ̃], the companion; — **de chambre,** room-mate.

compléter [kɔ̃plete], to complete.

composer [kɔ̃poze], to compose; **se — de,** to be composed of.

le dortoir [dɔrtwaːr], the dormitory.
la douche [duʃ], the shower bath.
le fauteuil [fotœːj], the arm-chair.
fier [fjɛːr], *adj.*, proud.
là-dedans [la dədɑ̃], *adv.*, within, in it.
le lustre [lystr], the chandelier.
la machine [maʃin], the machine; **la — à écrire,** the typewriter.
le matériel [materjɛl], the material.
le mur [myr], the wall.
la pièce [pjɛs], the room (*in general*); piece.
le placard [plakaːr], the cupboard, closet (*built in*).
portatif [pɔrtatif], *adj.*, portable.
la rivière [rivjɛːr], the river, stream.
le sport [spɔːr], the sport.

Idioms

de sorte (façon, manière) que, *conj.* (*requires subjunctive in future time*) so that, in such a way that
le long de [lə lɔ̃ də], *prep.*, along

264. Relative Pronoun

Subject	Antecedent a person	Antecedent a thing
'who,' 'which,' 'that'	**qui** [ki]	**qui**
Direct Object 'whom,' 'which,' 'that'	**que** [kə]	**que**
Possessive 'whose,' 'of which,' 'of whom'	**dont** [dɔ̃]	**dont**
Object of other prepositions than **de** 'for,' 'with,' etc., 'whom,' 'which'	**qui**	*M.* *Sing.* **lequel** [ləkɛl] *Plu.* **lesquels** [lekɛl]; *F.* **laquelle** [lakɛl] **lesquelles** [lekɛl]

L'homme qui est ici. The man who is here.
Le livre que je vois. The book which I see.
Le crayon avec lequel j'écris la lettre. The pencil with which I am writing the letter.
La table sur laquelle se trouve le livre. The table on which the book is found.

265. Relative pronouns are required in French, even when omitted in English.

Les plumes que je lui ai données.	The pens (which) I gave him.

266. Lequel, laquelle, etc., may be used for clearness or to avoid ambiguity in place of any of the other forms of the relative. They refer to the more remote of two possible antecedents.

La sœur de mon ami laquelle est souffrante.	My friend's sister who is sick.

'Whose'

267. 1. **Dont** is equivalent to **de** + a relative pronoun, and translates the English 'whose,' 'of whom,' 'of which,' etc.

Dont must be immediately followed by the subject of the verb in the clause introduced by it and the noun which it modifies must be preceded by the definite article.

Les livres dont je parle.	The books of which I am speaking.
L'homme dont je connais le fils.	The man whose son I know.
Le monsieur dont les enfants sont ici.	The gentleman whose children are here.

2. When, in English, 'whose,' 'of whom,' 'of which' modifies a noun which is the object of a preposition, **dont** cannot be used. Instead, a form of **qui** (*of persons*) or **lequel** (*of persons or things*) must be used.

L'homme avec la fille de qui (duquel) je parlais.	The man with whose daughter I was speaking.
Le bureau dans le tiroir duquel se trouve le livre.	The desk in the drawer of which is the book.

NOTE. — **Lequel, lesquels** and **lesquelles** combine with **de** and **à** giving **duquel, desquels, desquelles; auquel, auxquels, auxquelles.**

268. The adverb **où** is often used instead of a relative pronoun preceded by a preposition meaning 'to,' 'at,' or 'in.'

La maison où (dans laquelle) je demeure.	The house where I live.

A. Reading Exercise

Mon cher ami:

1. Enfin me voici installé dans un joli petit appartement dans le dortoir du collège. 2. Il se compose de trois pièces: une salle de bains, une chambre à coucher et un cabinet de travail. 3. Par la fenêtre du cabinet on voit à gauche une petite rivière sur laquelle donne ma chambre à coucher. 4. En entrant dans l'appartement, on trouve en face de la porte trois fenêtres dont l'une, celle du milieu, est plus grande que les autres. 5. Le long des murs j'ai une assez grande bibliothèque. 6. Je vous assure que je n'ai pas assez de livres pour la remplir. 7. Mais j'aurai de la place pour mon matériel de sport. 8. Au milieu du cabinet il y a un joli lustre sous lequel je vais mettre mon bureau. 9. Et sur le bureau il y aura de la place pour ma machine à écrire portative. 10. Quatre fauteuils et une chaise à bascule complètent l'ameublement. 11. Dans la salle de bains il y a une douche dont je suis très fier. 12. C'est beaucoup plus commode en été que la baignoire. 13. La chambre à coucher a deux lits et deux placards pour les vêtements. 14. Vous ne saviez peut-être pas que mon cousin va habiter avec moi. 15. C'est le frère de cette jeune fille avec qui vous avez dansé bien des fois au club l'été passé. 16. Ainsi, vous voyez que je suis très bien ici. 17. Donnez-moi de vos nouvelles.

Votre dévoué,

Jean.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. D'où est-ce que Jean écrit à son ami? 2. Sur quoi donne sa chambre à coucher? 3. Combien de fenêtres y a-t-il dans son cabinet de travail? 4. A-t-il une bibliothèque? 5. Où va-t-il mettre son bureau? 6. Et la machine à écrire? 7. Aura-t-il du matériel de sport? 8. Quelles espèces de chaises y a-t-il? 9. Y a-t-il une salle de bains? 10. Qu'y a-t-il là-dedans? 11. Est-ce que Jean occupera la chambre seul?

C. Oral Exercise

1. The books I sent him. 2. The man with whom I took a walk. 3. My friend's mother who is sick. 4. The man of whom I was talking. 5. The books which are on the table. 6. The river on

which my room opens. 7. The friend for whom I bought these books. 8. My cousin's father who is here now. 9. My uncle whose son is with me in college. 10. The notebook in which I write my exercises. 11. The book in which I was writing. 12. My aunt's daughters to whom I shall introduce you. 13. The friend for whom I did that. 14. The books without which I cannot study. 15. I saw the boys to whom you introduced me. 16. My cousin whose sister you know. 17. The men whom I saw yesterday. 18. My father's house to which we are going. 19. The girls of whom we were talking. 20. The pencil with which I am writing.

D. Written Exercise

My dear friend:

1. Here I am at last in college. 2. This morning I selected an apartment in the dormitory. 3. It is a very nice apartment, and I shall have three rooms: study, bedroom and bathroom. 4. The river on which my study opens is beautiful and it will be cool here in the spring. 5. My study is quite large. It has three windows, a large book-case and a chandelier. 6. I am going to put the desk father gave me in the center of the room under the chandelier. 7. Opposite the door, on entering, is a large fire-place. 8. We shall need that when it begins to get cold. 9. In the bedroom there are two beds, of which one is mine and the other my room-mate's. 10. By the way, did you know that Mlle Lefèvre's brother, whom you saw at my house this summer, will be with me? 11. He finally decided to come and he took his examinations last week. 12. He said they were not very hard and he thinks that he has passed them. 13. He has not arrived here yet, but I am expecting him soon. 14. Well, I shall continue the description of my apartment. 15. In the bedroom there are two large cupboards for our clothes. 16. Then there is the bathroom with a very fine shower. 17. There is nothing more agreeable in the spring after a tennis match than a good shower. 18. I do not intend to go home for the Christmas holidays. 19. Try to arrange your affairs so that you may come here. 20. Well, I have some other letters which I must write now. 21. Write me soon and tell me all the news.

Your friend,

John.

LESSON XLII

VOCABULARY

aîné [ɛne], *adj.*, elder, eldest.
l'arrière-petite-fille [arjɛːr ptit fiːj], *f.*, the great granddaughter.
l'arrière-petit-fils [arjɛːr pti fis], *m.*, the great grandson.
l'avocat [avɔka], *m.*, the lawyer.
la banlieue [bɑ̃ljø], the suburbs.
la belle-sœur [bɛl sœːr], the sister-in-law.
cadet [kadɛ], *adj.*, younger.
la clientèle [kliɑ̃tɛl], the clientèle, clients.
le contraire [kɔ̃trɛːr], the contrary; **au —**, on the contrary.
le droit [drwɑ], the law; **École de —**, law school.
la femme [fam], the woman, wife.
la grand'mère [grɑ̃ mɛːr], the grandmother.
le grand-père [grɑ̃ pɛːr], the grandfather.
habiter [abite], to live in.
le mari [mari], the husband.
le mariage [marjaːʒ], the marriage, wedding.
marier [marje], to give in marriage; **se — avec,** to wed, marry.
modeste [mɔdɛst], *adj.*, modest.
la nièce [njɛs], the niece.
nombreux [nɔbrø], *adj.*, numerous.
le petit-fils [pti fis], the grandson.
la petite-fille [ptit fiːj], the granddaughter.
que [kə], *adv.*, how.
raffoler de [rafɔle də], to be fond of, crazy about.

Idioms

un cadeau de noces, [nɔs], a wedding present (gift)
faire un voyage de noces [nɔs], to go (be) on a wedding trip
le garçon d'honneur [garsɔ̃ dɔnœːr], the best man (*at a wedding*)

Relative Pronoun (Continued)

269. The compound relative referring to things ('that which,' 'what') has the following forms (*Cf.* § 210):

Subject	**ce qui** [sə ki]	that which, what
Direct Object	**ce que** [sə kə]	that which, what
Object of **de** (*understood*)	**ce dont** [sə dɔ̃]	that of which
Object of other Prepositions	**ce** + *preposition* + **quoi** [kwa]	that (to, with, etc.) which

Je ne sais pas ce qui vous amuse.	I don't know what amuses you.
Savez-vous ce qu'il a trouvé?	Do you know what he found?
Ce dont je parle.	That of which I am speaking.
Ce avec quoi je travaille.	That with which I am working.

270. The compound relative referring to persons ('he who,' 'she who,' 'the one who,' 'those who,' etc.) is made up of the Demonstrative Pronoun (see § 209), and **qui, que, dont:**

SUBJECT	**celui (celle, ceux, celles) qui**
DIRECT OBJECT	**celui** (" " ") **que**
OBJECT OF **de** (*understood*)	**celui** (" " ") **dont**
OBJECT OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS	**celui** (" " ") + *preposition* + **qui**

Celui qui est ici.	He who is here.
Celles que nous avons vues.	Those whom we saw.
Ceux dont je parle.	Those of whom I speak.
Celle avec qui j'étudie.	The one with whom I study.

Verbal Idioms

271. Penser, 'to think.'

1. **penser à** = 'to concentrate one's mind on,' 'occupy one's mind with.'

Je pense à mon voyage.	I am thinking of my trip.
À quoi pensez-vous?	Of what are you thinking?

2. **penser de** = 'to have an opinion of.'

Que pensez-vous de ce livre?	What do you think of this book?

272. 1. **Faire** + *infinitive* = 'to make,' 'cause,' 'have' + infinitive or past participle in English.

Je l'ai fait venir.	I had him come.
Il a fait construire cette maison.	He had this house built.
Faites-le parler.	Have him speak.

2. **Se faire faire** = 'to have something done for oneself.'

Je me suis fait faire un complet.	I had a suit made (for myself).

273. The past participle of **faire** when followed by an infinitive is invariable.

Les maisons que j'ai fait construire. The houses which I had built.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Nous sommes quatre enfants dans notre famille. 2. Mais je dirais plutôt deux enfants et deux grands garçons. 3. Il y a ma petite sœur âgée de douze ans, mon frère cadet, âgé de quinze ans, moi qui ai vingt ans, et mon frère aîné qui aura vingt-huit ans le trente et un mars. 4. Il s'est marié il y a trois ans, et il a une petite fille qui est ma nièce. 5. Mon frère aîné a fait ses études au lycée et, après cela, il a continué ses études à l'École de Droit de l'Université de Paris. 6. Maintenant il est avocat et il a déjà une clientèle assez nombreuse. 7. Il n'habite pas Paris, mais il s'est fait construire avant son mariage une jolie petite maison à Suresnes, dans la banlieue. 8. Mais nous autres nous demeurons toujours à Paris chez mon père et ma mère. 9. Notre grand-père et notre grand'mère, les parents de ma mère, demeurent chez nous aussi. 10. Ils aiment beaucoup leurs trois petits-fils et leur petite-fille. 11. Mais celle dont ils raffolent c'est leur arrière-petite-fille. 12. Et en effet, c'est une enfant bien charmante et très intelligente. 13. Je me souviens comme d'hier du mariage de mon frère. 14. Qu'il était fier de sa petite femme! 15. Et ma belle-sœur, elle aussi, était fière de son mari, mais d'une façon beaucoup plus modeste. 16. Moi, quoique je n'avais que dix-sept ans, j'étais le garçon d'honneur, ce dont j'étais très fier. 17. Pendant leur voyage de noces, mon père, ma mère et moi, nous nous sommes occupés de l'ameublement de leur maison à Suresnes, ce qui nous a bien amusés. 18. Naturellement, nous n'avons fait que suivre les idées de ma belle-sœur, mais néanmoins, c'était très intéressant. 19. Et voici ce à quoi je pensais: dans cinq ou six ans j'aurais une jolie petite femme à moi, et je ne la connaissais pas encore.

B. Conversation

1. Combien d'enfants y a-t-il dans votre famille? 2. Quel âge ont vos deux frères? 3. Et votre petite sœur, quel âge a-t-elle?

4. Quand est-ce que votre frère aîné s'est marié? 5. Où demeure-t-il? 6. Qui demeure avec vous? 7. Quel âge a votre nièce? 8. Vous souvenez-vous bien du mariage de votre frère? 9. Y avez-vous assisté? 10. Qui s'est occupé de l'ameublement de la maison de votre frère? 11. À quoi pensiez-vous?

C. Oral Exercise

1. What I need is a book. 2. I do not know what is amusing him. 3. It is what I like best. 4. The one who studies learns. 5. The one I saw was French. 6. I shall give it to the one who is here. 7. Those that you have are mine. 8. We do not know what they are doing. 9. Do you know of what he is thinking? 10. What I was speaking of does not interest you. 11. She who was here is his sister. 12. Those who came stayed. 13. I shall have him come. 14. He is the one of whom I was speaking. 15. We do not know what was amusing them. 16. The one I saw this morning is your cousin. 17. I have had a suit made (for myself). 18. Make them study. 19. They know what they are doing. 20. Did you know what was on the table? 21. He is thinking of the wedding. 22. What did you think of this story? 23. We are thinking of those who were here. 24. What were you thinking of when I came into the room? 25. I was thinking of the trip I made last year.

D. Written Exercise

1. My brother has three children, two girls and a boy. 2. The youngest is a little girl, aged five years, the other little girl is seven years old. 3. They are my nieces and they are very charming children. 4. The boy is the oldest. 5. He will be ten next August and he has already begun his studies. 6. He goes to the lycée here. He expects to be a lawyer like his father. 7. What interests him most in school is history, although he is very good in languages. 8. When my brother was married, I was only twelve years old. 9. I wanted to be his best man, but one can hardly be best man at twelve years. 10. So a very good friend of his, the one of whom I have often spoken to you, was best man. 11. My sister-in-law is very pretty and she was certainly very proud of her

husband that day. 12. We remember it as if it were yesterday. 13. It was a beautiful day in April and the house was full of spring flowers. 14. As [a] wedding gift my grandfather and grandmother gave my brother a house in Paris. 15. While my brother and his wife were on their wedding trip, my mother looked after the furnishing of their house. 16. Of course she knew what my sister-in-law wanted in the house. 17. But my mother wanted to arrange everything before their return. 18. Twelve years have passed since that day. 19. And now I too am thinking of my own house and of a little wife whom I have not yet met. 20. But that will come and she of whom I think will, I hope, resemble my sister-in-law.

LESSON XLIII

VOCABULARY

les alliés [alje], *m. pl.*, the allies.
l'avènement [avɛnmɑ̃], *m.*, the accession.
la bataille [batɑːj], the battle.
le commencement [kɔmɑ̃smɑ̃], the beginning.
la date [dat], the date.
dater [date], to date.
développer [devlɔpe], to develop.
éclater [eklate], to break out, break forth.
l'empereur [ɑ̃prœːr], *m.*, the emperor.
l'empire [ɑ̃pir], *m.*, the empire.
l'époque [epɔk], *f.*, the epoch.
la guerre [gɛːr], the war.
guillotiner [gijɔtine], to guillotine.
l'importance [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃ːs], *f.*, the importance.
important [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃], *adj.*, important.
l'intérêt [ɛ̃terɛ], *m.*, the interest.
le monarque [mɔnark], the monarch.
national [nasjɔnal], *adj.*, national.
le président [prezidɑ̃], the president.
la prise [priːz], the capture.
proclamer [prɔklame], to proclaim.
le progrès [prɔgrɛ], the progress.
la république [repyblik], the republic.
succéder [syksɛde], to succeed.
le successeur [syksɛsœːr], the successor.
troisième [trwazjɛm], *adj.*, third.
le trône [tron], the throne.
la victoire [viktwaːr], the victory.

IDIOM

le **coup d'état** [ku deta], the *coup d'état* (a violent or illegal change in government)

Cardinal Numbers (Continued)

274. A hyphen regularly joins compound numerals under 100, except where **et** is used. **Et** is used in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, and optionally in 71.

vingt et un	21
vingt-trois	23
cinquante et un	51
soixante et onze (*or* **soixante-onze**)	71

275. 1. The final consonants of **cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix, dix-sept, dix-huit, dix-neuf** are silent when these numerals qualify nouns beginning with consonants. They form the liaison before words beginning with vowels.

neuf livres [nø li:vr] **neuf hommes** [nœv ɔm]

2. The **t,** sounded in **vingt** from 21 to 29, is silent from 81 to 99, and is silent also in **cent.**

cent hommes [sɑ̃ ɔm]

276. **Cent** and **quatre-vingt** take **s** when followed immediately by a noun (or adjective + noun) which they measure, or when they are used as nouns of number.

trois cents francs	three hundred francs
quatre-vingts bonnes plumes	eighty good pens
les deux cents	the two hundreds
les quatre-vingts	the eighties
BUT: **deux cent onze**	two hundred and eleven
quatre-vingt-trois	eighty-three

277. The indefinite article is not used with **cent** or **mille.** It is used with **million** [miljɔ̃], 'million,' and **milliard** [miljaːr], 'billion,' both of which also must be followed by **de.**

cent hommes	a hundred men
mille hommes	a thousand men
un million d'hommes	a million men
un milliard de dollars	a billion dollars

278. Use of Cardinal Numerals

With the exception of **premier**, 'first,' cardinals are used to indicate days of the month and numerical titles in which the number follows. Observe that the preposition 'of' in dates and the definite article in titles are omitted.

le premier (**deux, trois,** etc.) **juin**	the first (second, third, etc.) of June
Charles Premier	Charles [the] First
Louis Quatorze	Louis [the] Fourteenth
leçon trois	lesson three

Dates

279. **Mil** [mil] and not **mille** [mil] is used in dates between 1000 and 2000 of the Christian era.

en mil huit cent quinze	in 1815
BUT: **l'an mille, l'an deux mille**	the year 1000, the year 2000

280. However, dates are usually expressed by hundreds as in English, except 18—, where **mil** is preferred.

en dix-neuf cent quatorze	in 1914
mil huit cent quarante-huit	1848

281. Note the following idiomatic expressions in dates:

Quel jour du mois est-ce (sommes-nous) aujourd'hui?	What is the date of today?
C'est aujourd'hui le seize mai.	Today is May 16th.
Ce sera demain le dix-sept.	Tomorrow will be the 17th.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from today.
Il y a huit jours, quinze jours.	A week, two weeks ago.

Present Subjunctive

282. dire	**283. voir**	**284. savoir**
'that I may say,' etc.	'that I may see,' etc.	'that I may know,' etc.
dise [diz]	**voie** [vwa]	**sache** [saʃ]
dises [diz]	**voies** [vwa]	**saches** [saʃ]
dise [diz]	**voie** [vwa]	**sache** [saʃ]
disions [dizjɔ̃]	**voyions** [vwajɔ̃]	**sachions** [saʃjɔ̃]
disiez [dizje]	**voyiez** [vwaje]	**sachiez** [saʃje]
disent [diz]	**voient** [vwa]	**sachent** [saʃ]

A. Reading Exercise

1. Plusieurs dates de l'histoire moderne présentent un certain intérêt pour les étudiants français. 2. Cette époque commence à l'avènement de François Ier, en 1515, et se continue jusqu'à nos jours. 3. C'est sous le règne de ce roi que s'est développé la période qu'on appelle la Renaissance. 4. Henri II, fils de François Ier, se maria avec Catherine de Médicis. Ils eurent trois fils qui se succédèrent sur le trône. 5. C'est sous le règne de leur fils, Charles IX, qu'eut lieu, en 1572, la St. Barthélemy. 6. Son frère, Henri III, lui succéda et à sa mort, en 1589, Henri IV, roi de Navarre, monta sur le trône. 7. Son fils, Louis XIII, est moins fameux que son premier ministre, le Cardinal de Richelieu. 8. Son successeur fut le Grand Monarque, Louis XIV, qui régna de 1643 à 1715. 9. Après celui-ci, nous avons son arrière-petit-fils, Louis XV, puis le malheureux Louis XVI, sous lequel éclata la Révolution. 10. Le 14 juillet 1789, date de la prise de la Bastille, est la date de la fête nationale française. 11. Louis XVI lui-même fut guillotiné pendant la Révolution, en 1793. 12. En 1802 c'est l'Empire avec les succès de Napoléon, puis la fin du premier Empire, après la bataille de Waterloo, en 1815. 13. Les successeurs de Napoléon furent Louis XVIII et Charles X et, après la Révolution de 1830, Louis Philippe fut proclamé roi des Français. 14. Une courte révolution en 1848 amena la seconde République dont le président fut Louis Napoléon, neveu du grand Napoléon. 15. Par son coup d'état du 2 décembre 1851, Louis Napoléon se fit nommer président pour deux ans et l'année d'après il

se fit proclamer empereur, sous le nom de Napoléon III. 16. Après la guerre de 1870–71 avec l'Allemagne, Napoléon III alla en Angleterre. 17. C'est de cette guerre que date la troisième République qui dure encore aujourd'hui. 18. La victoire des alliés dans la Grande Guerre de 1914 a rendu à la France, l'Alsace et la Lorraine, perdues en 1870–71.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Par quelle date commence l'époque moderne en France? 2. Qui était le roi à cette époque-là? 3. Quelle est l'importance de la date 1572? 4. De quel roi Richelieu était-il le premier ministre? 5. Qui était «le Grand Monarque»? 6. Combien d'années a-t-il régné? 7. Quelle est la date de la fête nationale française? 8. Qui était le roi de France au commencement de la Révolution? 9. À quelle époque régna Napoléon Bonaparte? 10. Quelle est l'importance des dates 1830, 1848, 1852? 11. Quand a eu lieu la guerre avec les Allemands? 12. Qu'est-ce que la France a perdu? 13. Quelle est la date de la Grande Guerre? 14. Qui a gagné cette guerre?

C. Oral Exercise

1. 1515, 1572. 2. 1643, 1715. 3. 1616, 1660. 4. 1815, 1861. 5. 1870, 1898. 6. 17, 21, 32, 43. 7. 31, 42, 53. 8. 41, 52, 63. 9. 51, 62, 73. 10. 61, 72, 83. 11. 71, 82, 93. 12. 81, 92, 103. 13. 589, 1793. 14. Henry III, Charles IX. 15. Louis XIV, Napoleon III. 16. Francis I, George V. 17. July 4, 1776. 18. April 19, 1861. 19. July 4, 1789. 20. February 12, 1921.

D. Oral Exercise

1. Although I know many dates in French history, I shall continue to learn some. 2. Before I tell you what I am going to do, tell me where you have been. 3. In order that he may see his faults, I shall speak to him of them. 4. I am sorry that you do not know where he is. 5. Do you wish me to tell you what I think of him? 6. I shall have to see him before he goes to France. 7. We regret that you do not know anything about it. 8. In order that one may know French history, one must study it a great deal.

9. He wishes me to have them come. 10. I am glad that he knows that you are here. 11. What day of the month is it? 12. It is Monday, the tenth of November. 13. Tomorrow will be the eleventh. 14. I shall be there a week from tomorrow. 15. I saw him two weeks ago.

E. Written Exercise

1. One finds many dates in the history of France which are important. 2. The modern epoch begins with Francis I. 3. His dates are 1515–1547. 4. His son, Henry II, is the next king. 5. And it is under Charles IX, one of Henry's sons, that the St. Bartholomew takes place. 6. Under Henry IV, who begins to reign in 1589, France makes great progress (*pl.*). 7. Then we have Henry's son, Louis XIII, whose minister was Cardinal Richelieu. 8. After him, comes Louis XIV, the Great Monarch, who reigns from 1643 to 1715. 9. Next we have Louis XV, then Louis XVI, who reigns up to the Revolution in 1789. 10. He was guillotined in 1793. 11. The epoch of Napoleon Bonaparte begins at this time. 12. It ends with the battle of Waterloo in 1815. 13. Then there are the three kings: Louis XVIII, Charles X and Louis-Philippe. 14. After Louis-Philippe, Louis Napoleon is proclaimed president. 15. By the *coup d'état* of 1851 he becomes emperor, as Napoleon III. 16. After the war of 1870, the republic is again proclaimed. 17. The republic of today dates from 1871. 18. France had lost Alsace and Lorraine in 1871, but, after the Great War of 1914, they (*f.*) are given back to France.

LESSON XLIV

VOCABULARY

l'ananas [ananɑ], *m.*, the pineapple.
l'artichaut [artiʃo], *m.*, the artichoke.
les asperges [aspɛrʒ], *f. pl.*, the asparagus.
la banane [banan], the banana.
le boucher [buʃe], the butcher.
le céleri [selri], the celery.
la côtelette [kotlɛt], the chop.
l'épicier [episje], *m.*, the grocer.
éviter [evite], to avoid.
la foule [ful], the crowd.
la fraise [frɛːz], the strawberry.

les fruits [frqi], *m. pl.*, the fruit.
magnifique [maɲifik], *adj.*, magnificent.
le marché [marʃe], the market.
l'orange [ɔrɑ̃ʒ], *f.*, the orange.
les petits pois [pti pwɑ], *m. pl.*, the (green) peas.
le poivre [pwavr], the pepper.
les provisions [provizjɔ̃], *f. pl.*, the provisions, supplies.
le radis [radi], the radish.
le raisin [rezɛ̃], the grape, grapes.
le roquefort [rɔkfɔr], Roquefort cheese.
rose [roz], *adj.*, pink.
le sel [sɛl], the salt.
le sucre [sykr], the sugar.
le thé [te], the tea.
le veau [vo], the calf, veal.

IDIOMS

avoir l'air de + *infinitive*, to look as if
avoir l'air + *adjective* agreeing with subj. of **avoir**, to look + *adjective*

Vous avez l'air de vous amuser. You look as if you were having a good time.
Elle a l'air fatiguée. She looks tired.

Ordinal Numbers

285. Ordinals are formed in general by adding **-ième** to the cardinals. Final **e** is dropped, **cinq** adds a **u**, and **neuf** changes **f** to **v** before the ending **-ième**.

1st	**premier** [prəmje]	7th	**septième** [sɛtjɛm]
2d	**second** [səgɔ̃]	8th	**huitième** [qitjɛm]
	deuxième [døzjɛm]	9th	**neuvième** [nœvjɛm]
3d	**troisième** [trwazjɛm]	10th	**dixième** [dizjɛm]
4th	**quatrième** [katriɛm]	11th	**onzième** [ɔ̃zjɛm]
5th	**cinquième** [sɛ̃kjɛm]	21st	**vingt et unième** [vɛ̃t e ynjɛm]
6th	**sixième** [sizjɛm]	22d	**vingt-deuxième** [vɛ̃t døzjɛm]
		etc.	

NOTE. – **Deuxième** is used instead of **second** in all compounds.

le vingt-deuxième the twenty-second

286. Ordinals, which are like other adjectives in inflection and agreement, usually precede the noun. Cardinals precede ordinals.

les cinq premières leçons the first five lessons

Fractions

287. In fractions the numerator is regularly a cardinal and the denominator, an ordinal; but

$\frac{1}{2}$ = **un(e) demi,** / **une** (*or* **la**) **moitié,** $\frac{1}{3}$ = **un tiers,** and $\frac{1}{4}$ = **un quart.**

$\frac{1}{5}$, **un cinquième** $\frac{3}{8}$, **trois huitièmes**
$\frac{5}{16}$, **cinq seizièmes** $\frac{10}{100}$, **dix centièmes,** etc.

288. Demi [dəmi], 'half,' as an adjective is invariable before the noun and is joined to it by a hyphen.

une demi-heure	a half hour

289. Moitié [mwatje], 'half,' is used as the equivalent of the English 'the half of' expressed or understood.

la moitié de la ville	(the) half (of) the city

290. Collective Numerals. Certain nouns formed from numerals by the addition of the ending **–aine** have a collective force:

une dizaine [dizɛn], about ten
une vingtaine [vɛ̃tɛn], about twenty
une trentaine [trɑ̃tɛn], about thirty
une quarantaine [karɑ̃tɛn], about forty
une cinquantaine [sɛ̃kɑ̃tɛn], about fifty
une soixantaine [swasɑ̃tɛn], about sixty
une centaine [sɑ̃tɛn], about a hundred

These nouns take **s** in the plural and require **de** before a following noun:

Il y a une vingtaine d'élèves dans la classe.	There are about twenty pupils in the class.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Ce matin ma mère m'a dit d'aller en ville pour acheter des provisions. 2. Nous avions besoin de toutes sortes de choses et, par conséquent, j'y suis allée dans notre auto. 3. C'était la première

Le Marché aux Légumes à Nice

fois que j'étais jamais allée faire des emplettes. 4. Je suis sortie de la maison à huit heures et demie, parce qu'il fallait arriver en ville de bonne heure. 5. Plus tard dans la matinée, les magasins seraient pleins et les commis, très occupés. 6. Je suis allée d'abord acheter des légumes. 7. C'est le printemps et on peut trouver maintenant beaucoup de légumes verts. 8. J'ai vu des asperges qui semblaient délicieuses, et j'en ai acheté. 9. Le commis m'a dit qu'il avait des petits pois très frais et j'en ai acheté aussi. 10. Ensuite, j'ai choisi des radis roses et du céleri bien blanc. 11. Les artichauts étaient magnifiques, mais très chers. 12. Néanmoins, comme je les aime beaucoup, j'en ai acheté une demi-douzaine. 13. Ensuite, j'ai cherché des fruits. 14. Je suis entrée dans deux magasins, mais sans succès. 15. Enfin, dans le troisième j'ai trouvé des ananas, des bananes, des oranges et du raisin. 16. J'ai acheté une douzaine d'oranges et deux ananas. 17. Il y avait aussi des fraises. 18. Si elles n'avaient pas été si chères, j'en aurais acheté aussi. 19. Il me fallait aussi de la viande et du fromage. 20. Comme viande, j'ai trouvé de très bonnes côtelettes de veau. 21. Puisque nous allions avoir des amis à dîner, j'ai acheté aussi deux poulets. 22. Et à la fin, j'ai trouvé de très bon roquefort, que la famille aime beaucoup.

B. Conversation

1. Qu'avez-vous fait ce matin? 2. Pourquoi êtes-vous allée faire des emplettes? 3. Faites-vous cela souvent? 4. Pourquoi fallait-il arriver de bonne heure dans les magasins? 5. Où êtes vous allée d'abord? 6. Quelles espèces de légumes avez-vous achetées? 7. Nommez quelques légumes qu'on trouve dans les magasins au printemps. 8. Avez-vous acheté des fruits? 9. Quelles sortes de fruits avez-vous achetées? 10. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas acheté de fraises? 11. Qu'avez-vous acheté comme viande? 12. Avez-vous acheté de la volaille? 13. Quelle sorte de fromage préférez-vous?

C. Oral Exercise

1. This is the forty-fourth lesson. 2. I have not studied the first lesson. 3. The second time that I saw him he was with you. 4. She went away last night. 5. Send me some. 6. I have already

sent you about thirty. 7. The first three exercises are very difficult. 8. He wants me to send them a dozen and a half. 9. There were about a hundred persons at the station. 10. I shall give you half of it. 11. I saw about fifty students in the room. 12. They would have sent you some, if you had not gone away. 13. Name in French a few kinds of vegetables. 14. Two-thirds; three-quarters. 15. We shall send you about ten of them. 16. He looks as if he wanted to stay here. 17. I would not have gone away, if I had known it. 18. I do not know what he is going to do. 19. He has about a hundred books in his office. 20. Name in French the kinds of fruit which you like.

D. Written Exercise

1. I went shopping today for my mother. 2. It was the first time that I had been shopping alone and I had lots of fun. 3. I got up very early, in order to avoid the crowd. 4. I had to buy vegetables and meat for lunch and dinner. 5. It is spring, and there were all sorts of vegetables in the stores. It was hard to choose. 6. The asparagus looked delicious and the green peas had just arrived in (the) market. 7. So I bought some of both. 8. Then I also bought some radishes and celery. 9. There were artichokes too, but they were too high and I didn't get any. 10. Next I looked for fruit. 11. Oranges, grapes, pineapples and many other kinds were in the stores. 12. There were also a few strawberries. 13. I bought a dozen oranges and three pineapples. 14. Then I had to get some meat, so I went to the butcher's. 15. I bought six veal chops for luncheon. 16. As we were going to have guests for dinner, I also bought two chickens. 17. When I was leaving the butcher's, I remembered that I had to go to the grocer's. 18. Mother had told me not to forget salt, pepper, sugar and tea. 19. I had now bought everything we needed, except some cheese. 20. I like all kinds of cheese, but I selected Roquefort, since we all like that kind. 21. Then I returned home with all my provisions.

LESSON XLV

VOCABULARY

accrocher [akrɔʃe], to hang up.
allo [alo], *interj.*, hello.
l'appareil [aparɛːj], *m.*, the apparatus, telephone (*instrument*).
coller [kɔle], to glue, 'flunk'; **être collé,** to be 'flunked,' to 'flunk'.
complètement [kɔ̃plɛtmɑ̃], *adv.*, completely.
la copie [kɔpi], the copy (*of papers, examinations*, etc.).
le cuistre [kɥistr], the pedant.
le foyer [fwaje], the lobby.
l'honneur [ɔnœːr], *m.*, the honor.
la parole [parɔl], the word.
le récepteur [resɛptœːr], the (telephone) receiver.
remettre [rəmɛtr], to postpone.
représenter [rəprezɑ̃te], to represent.
la scène [sɛːn], the scene, stage.
la téléphoniste [telefɔnist], the telephone operator.
le vaudeville [vodvil], the light comedy.
la veine [vɛːn], the luck, chance.

Idioms

manquer la classe, to miss class, 'cut'
cela (ça) ne fait rien, that makes no difference
comme ci, comme ça, pretty good, fairly well
le coup de téléphone, the telephone (bell *or* call)
comment vous portez-vous? how are you, how do you do? (*formal*)
comment allez-vous? how are you, how do you do? (*less formal*)
comment ça va? how are you, how goes it? (*informal*)
c'est de la blagne [sɛ də la blag], that's a joke, you're fooling

291. Interrogative Pronouns

	Referring to persons	Referring to things
Subject	**qui,** 'who' **qui est-ce qui,** 'who'	**qu'est-ce qui,** 'what'
Direct object	**qui,** 'whom' **qui est-ce que,** 'whom'	**que,** 'what' **qu'est-ce que,** 'what'
Object of preps.	**qui,** 'whom' **qui est-ce que,** 'whom'	**quoi,** 'what

Referring to both persons and things

	Sing.	*Plur.*	
Masc.	**lequel**	**lesquels**	'which,' 'which one'
Fem.	**laquelle**	**lesquelles**	

Qui (*or* **qui est-ce qui**) **est ici?**	Who is here?
Qu'est-ce qui vous amuse?	What is amusing you?
Qui voyez-vous? / **Qui est-ce que vous voyez?**	Whom do you see?
Qu'avez-vous? / **Qu'est-ce que vous avez?**	What have you?
À quoi pensez-vous?	Of what are you thinking?

292. **Lequel, laquelle,** etc., agree in gender and number with the antecedent and are never followed directly by a noun.

Laquelle est votre sœur?	Which one is your sister?
Desquels parlez-vous?	Of which ones are you speaking?
Auquel donnez-vous le livre?	To which one are you giving the book?

293. **Qu'est-ce que c'est que** or **qu'est-ce que:** 'what (sort of thing) is'?

These two forms are used directly before an article and a noun and ask for a definition. They must be distinguished from the interrogative adjective **quel, quelle,** etc., meaning 'which' or 'what' (in the sense of 'which').

Qu'est-ce que c'est que le Louvre?	What is the Louvre?
BUT: **Quelle est la leçon?**	What (= which) is the lesson?

294. 'Whose' in questions is **à qui** for ownership and **de qui** for relationship. **Dont** can not be used interrogatively.

À qui est ce livre?	Whose book is this?
De qui est-elle la fille?	Whose daughter is she?

295. **Interrogative Adjective**

	Sing.	*Plur.*	
Masc.	**quel**	**quels**	'what,' 'what a,' 'which'
Fem.	**quelle**	**quelles**	

296. These adjectival forms are followed directly by the noun they modify or are used as predicate adjectives with the verb **être.**

Quelle leçon avons-nous?	What lesson do we have?
Quel est le livre que vous avez là?	What is the book you have there?
Quel temps superbe!	What superb weather!
Quelle jolie fleur!	What a pretty flower!

A. Reading Exercise

La scène représente le salon chez Henri Martin. Le téléphone sonne deux ou trois fois.

Henri: Ah! Voilà un coup de téléphone. Allo.

Jean: (Son ami de collège) Allo.

H: Qui est à l'appareil?

J: C'est moi, Jean.

H: Comment ça va, mon vieux.

J: Bien, merci, et vous?

H: Comme ci, comme ça.

J: Vous savez, il y a une heure que je tâché de vous appeler. La téléphoniste m'a dit toujours — « Pas libre. » Qu'allez-vous faire ce soir?

H: Ce soir? Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui? J'ai complètement oublié.

J: C'est le seize. Pourquoi?

H: Parce que j'ai un rendez-vous pour le dix-sept. Mais, je n'ai rien à faire ce soir.

J: Voulez-vous aller au théâtre avec moi?

H: Où ça?

J: Aux Variétés.

H: Qu'est-ce que c'est que les Variétés. Je n'y ai jamais été.

J: C'est un théâtre de vaudeville.

H: Oui, alors. Je le veux bien. Où est-ce que je vous retrouverai?

J: Au foyer à huit heures.

H: Bon. . . . Eh! à propos. Avez-vous réussi à l'examen d'histoire la semaine passée?

J: Je ne sais pas. Est-ce que le professeur a rendu les copies?

Moi, vous savez, j'ai manqué la classe hier. Il faisait si beau que j'ai fait une petite promenade en auto avec une amie.

H: Laquelle? Est-ce que c'était Mlle Dupont?

J: Ah, non, pas elle. C'était une de mes cousines.

H: Une de vos cousines? Ah, c'est de la blague, ça . . .

J: Non, vraiment, parole d'honneur . . . Avez-vous réussi à votre examen?

H: Non, ce cuistre m'a collé, mais cela m'est égal. Ce n'était pas très important et il y aura un autre examen plus tard. Il a rendu nos copies hier.

J: Mais, vous n'avez pas de veine, vous . . . Eh bien, à ce soir à huit heures.

H: Oui. Au revoir.

J: Au revoir.

Henri accroche le récepteur.

B. Conversation Exercise

Give a telephone conversation in which the line is busy at first, then you get your party and invite him to meet you for lunch tomorrow at one-thirty. If it rains, you will postpone the engagement. The weather is so beautiful you wish to go automobiling in the country after lunch. You will be back for dinner, etc.

C. Oral Exercise

1. Who is here? 2. Whom have you seen? 3. What do you want? 4. Which one is your brother? 5. What is the lesson? 6. With whom was he talking? 7. Of what are you thinking? 8. What is amusing you now? 9. What is a grammar? 10. What were they going to do? 11. To whom are you writing? 12. What can he do? 13. What book is that? 14. Whose books are these? 15. Which are you going to take? 16. Who are waiting for me? 17. What gave you the idea? 18. What do you need? 19. What day is today? 20. What is the Louvre?

D. Written Exercise

1. Yesterday morning the telephone rang while I was eating breakfast. 2. I went to the receiver: Hello. 3. The operator answered me: Line's busy. 4. I hung up the receiver, and in a

moment the telephone rang again. 5. It was my friend John. 6. — Hello, how are you? — Oh, fine, how are you? 7. — Pretty good. What are you doing tonight? 8. — Tonight? What day is today? 9. — It's the 14th. Why? 10. — Because I had forgotten the date. I have an engagement for the 15th. 11. — Well, I am going to the theatre and I would like to have you with us. 12. — Us? Who's going with you? 13. — My two cousins (*fem.*). I want you to meet them. 14. — Cousins? You are joking. 15. — No, on my word. Will you go with us? 16.— With which one am I going? 17. — What does that matter to you? 18.— I just wanted to know. 19. — You're going with Marie. By the way, did you pass the examination? 20. — No, I flunked; I don't have any luck. 21. — Well, I cut today. Did the professor give back the examination papers? 22. — Yes, but I didn't see yours. 23. — Well, it doesn't matter. I will expect you tonight. Meet me in the lobby of the Variétés at eight o'clock. 24. — Fine. I'll be there. Goodbye. Until tonight.

LESSON XLVI

VOCABULARY

l'avance [avɑ̃:s], *f.*, the advance; **d'—,** beforehand; **en —,** before time, early.
la cuisine [kɥizin], the kitchen, cooking.
délicat [delika], *adj.*, delicate, delicious.
le dessert [desɛ:r], the dessert.
discuter [diskyte], to discuss.
divertir [divɛrti:r], to divert, amuse.
l'entrée [ɑ̃tre], *f.*, the entrée (*served between the fish and the roast*); entrance.
le hors-d'œuvre [ɔr dœ:vr], the hors-d'œuvre, appetizer (*the first course at a dinner*).
le fond [fɔ̃], the bottom, back.
la laitue [lɛty], the lettuce.
l'olive [ɔli:v], *f.*, the olive.
la pâtisserie [patisri], the pastry.
réserver [rezɛrve], to reserve.
le ris de veau [ri d vo], the sweetbread.
le rôti [roti], the roast (*meat*).
la salade [salad], the salad.
tendre [tɑ̃:dr], *adj.*, tender.
tôt [to], *adv.*, soon.

IDIOMS

dans ce cas [kɑ] in this (that) case
à part aside, apart

297. Compound Tenses

(Summary)

1. **Past Indefinite** = Present Tense of the Auxiliary + Past Participle. It is used in general like the English simple past, emphatic past with 'did' or the present perfect.

Il est parti.	He left, did leave, has left.
Nous avons écrit la lettre.	We wrote, did write, have written the letter.

2. **Pluperfect Tense** = Imperfect Tense of the Auxiliary + Past Participle. It is used in general like the English pluperfect or past perfect.

Il était arrivé quand vous êtes parti.	He had arrived when you left.
Nous le lui avions déjà envoyé.	We had already sent it to him.

3. **Future Perfect** = Future Tense of the Auxiliary + Past Participle. It is used in general like the English future perfect.

Mardi nous l'aurons fini.	We shall have finished it Tuesday.

4. **Conditional Perfect** = Conditional Tense of the Auxiliary + Past Participle. It is used in general like the English conditional perfect.

Je serais allé avec vous, si j'avais eu le temps.	I would have gone with you, if I had had the time.

298. Special Idiomatic Tense Usages

1. **Present Tense.**

(Cf. § 71.) Use the Present Tense in French for an activity that began in the past and is still going on.

English here uses the present perfect tense.

The word order in French is as follows:

(*a*) **il y a** + the time element + **que** + present tense
or (*b*) present tense + **depuis** + time element

Il y a dix minutes que je suis ici. **Je suis ici depuis dix minutes.**	I have been here ten minutes.
Depuis quand attendez-vous?	How long have you been waiting?

2. **Imperfect Tense.**

Use the Imperfect Tense in French for an activity that began in the past and was still going on when something else happened. The 'when' clause is frequently omitted, though always understood.

English here uses the pluperfect (past perfect) tense.

The word order in French is as follows:

(*a*) **il y avait** + the time element + **que** + imperfect tense + 'when' clause

or (*b*) imperfect tense + **depuis** + time element + 'when' clause

Il y avait une demi-heure que je lisais, quand il est entré dans la chambre.	I had been reading a half hour, when he entered the room.
J'étudiais le français depuis deux mois quand, etc. . . .	I had been studying French two months, when, etc. . . .
Depuis quand étiez-vous là?	How long had you been there?

3. **Future and Future Perfect Tenses.**

When futurity is implied in English after such conjunctions as 'when' or 'as soon as,' the Future or the Future Perfect is required in French according to the following scheme:

English		French	
'when' / 'as soon as'	+ present tense	**quand** or **lorsque** / **aussitôt que**	+ future tense
'when' / 'as soon as'	+ present perfect	**quand** or **lorsque** / **aussitôt que**	+ future perfect

When he arrives, I shall give it to him.	**Quand il arrivera, je le lui donnerai.**
As soon as he has gotten up, you will see him.	**Aussitôt qu'il se sera levé, vous le verrez.**

NOTE. – 1. English 'when' equivalent to 'whenever' is not an implied future, but refers in general to an habitual act. In this case, the tense in French corresponds to the tense in English.

I always see him when he comes here.	**Je le vois toujours quand il vient ici.**

2. When the future is implied in English, the main clause in English is usually in the future tense or is an imperative.

Tell him so when he comes here.	**Dites-le-lui quand il viendra ici.**
When I go to Paris, I shall see him.	**Quand j'irai à Paris, je le verrai.**

A. Reading Exercise

1. Mes deux cousines sont chez nous depuis trois jours. 2. Nous les attendions depuis deux semaines. 3. Mais malheureusement leur mère a été très malade et elles sont arrivées quelques jours en retard. 4. Pour les divertir un peu, nous avons dîné et dansé en ville hier soir. 5. Il y a un très bon hôtel ici où la cuisine est excellente et on y danse tous les soirs. 6. Ma mère et moi nous avions arrangé cette soirée en ville, même avant l'arrivée de mes cousines. 7. Et nous avions commandé le dîner d'avance. 8. Mes deux frères, mon père et un de nos amis nous ont accompagnés de sorte que nous étions huit. 9. Quand nous sommes arrivés à l'hôtel à sept heures, il y avait beaucoup de monde dans la grande salle à manger. 10. Heureusement, nous avions réservé une table où j'avais fait mettre des fleurs. 11. Au fond de la salle à manger il y avait un orchestre qui jouait des morceaux de danse et nous avons dansé pendant le dîner. 12. Nous avons commencé par des hors-d'œuvre. 13. Il y en avait beaucoup, mais j'ai choisi des radis, des olives et du céleri. 14. Je n'ai pas commandé de potage, parce qu'il faisait trop chaud. 15. Comme entrée, nous avons choisi des ris de veau avec des petits pois. 16. C'est un plat très délicat que j'aime beaucoup. 17. En cette saison, il n'y a rien de meilleur que des poulets comme rôti. 18. Ils étaient très tendres et délicieux. 19. En France on sert les légumes à part et nous avons pris des artichauts, parce que nous les aimons beaucoup. 20. On nous a servi une bonne salade de laitue et pour le dessert, des pâtisseries avec du fromage et du café noir. 21. Après le dîner, nous avons dansé jusqu'à minuit et ensuite nous sommes rentrés, après avoir passé une soirée tout à fait agréable.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Depuis quand vos cousines sont-elles chez vous? 2. Quand sont-elles arrivées? 3. Pourquoi ont-elles remis leur visite? 4. Qu'aviez-vous arrangé avant leur arrivée? 5. Où êtes-vous allés? 6. Qui vous a accompagnés? 7. Par quoi avez-vous commencé votre dîner? 8. Nommez-moi en français quelques hors-d'œuvre? 9. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas pris de potage? 10. Nommez les plats principaux d'un dîner. 11. Qu'avez-vous fait après le dîner? 12. Êtes-vous rentrés de bonne heure?

Le Café de la Paix

C. Oral Exercise

1. He would have gone with you. 2. We selected two vegetables. 3. I didn't give them to you. 4. On Tuesday, I shall have finished the work. 5. When I have finished, I shall go with you. 6. We haven't been able to find them. 7. I am sorry that he has been sick. 8. Although they have not studied their lessons, they will be in school. 9. We didn't get home early. 10. They gave them to us. 11. I didn't see them there. 12. We would have had a good time, if he had arrived. 13. We shall have finished it. 14. I knew that he had been here. 15. If you had not given them to me, I would have bought his. 16. When I have seen him, I will send him to you. 17. I believed that they had done it. 18. When he arrived, I did not see him. 19. We wanted to stay there three days. 20. You would not have gone out, if you had known it.

D. Oral Exercise

1. As soon as he comes, I shall tell him what you said. 2. We had been waiting for them for an hour, when they arrived. 3. How long have you been studying French? 4. I have been studying it for six months. 5. We shall go with you, as soon as we are ready. 6. I see him every morning, when I go to school. 7. How long had you been there when I saw you? 8. When he has read the book, he will give it to us. 9. We had been in Paris three months, when we received your letter. 10. When I see him, he always asks me for news of you. 11. We had been working for two hours. 12. If I had known they were here, I would not have come. 13. They would go with you, if you invited them. 14. As soon as I tell him the story, he will remember it. 15. Tell him to stay here when he comes.

E. Written Exercise

1. Two of my friends will arrive next week. 2. They had said that they would arrive Tuesday morning, but yesterday we received a letter from them saying they were not able to come so soon. 3. One of them had been sick for a week, so it was necessary to postpone the visit. 4. However, we are expecting them soon. 5. Mother and I have arranged a dinner at a hotel in town and we think it will be

very pleasant. 6. I will invite my two brothers and one of their friends to go with us. 7. The dinner will be excellent, I am sure, because the hotel is the best in town. 8. We shall begin with hors-d'œuvre: radishes, olives and celery. 9. Then I shall order some soup. 10. It will perhaps be cool; in this case there is nothing better than soup. 11. After the soup, we shall have as entrée sweetbreads and green peas. 12. The sweetbreads will be delicious, I know, and I am very fond of them. 13. For the roast we shall have chicken, which is very fine at this season. 14. The salad will be lettuce and for the dessert we shall have pastry. 15. We shall end the dinner with coffee and cheese. 16. It will probably not be very late, then, and we shall dance a while. 17. If my friends are not too tired, we shall dance until midnight. 18. After dancing so long, we shall undoubtedly be very warm. 19. Perhaps my brother will take us for an auto ride before we go home. 20. I am sure that the evening will be very pleasant.

LESSON XLVII

VOCABULARY

le bal [bal], the ball, dance; **soulier de —,** lady's evening slipper.

le bas [bɑ], the stocking.

la bottine [bɔtin], the high shoe (*for women*).

la chaussure [ʃosyːr], the footwear; **magasin de —,** shoe-store.

clair [klɛːr], *adj.*, clear, light (*of color*).

conduire [kɔ̃dɥiːr], to lead, drive (*of automobiles*, etc.); **se —,** to conduct onself.

convenable [kɔ̃vnabl], *adj.*, fitting, suitable, proper.

le costume [kɔstym], the costume, suit (*for women*).

la couturière [kutyrjɛːr], the dressmaker.

le crêpe [krɛːp], crêpe (*material*).

la difficulté [difikylte], the difficulty.

exactement [egzaktəmɑ̃], *adv.*, exactly.

le gant [gɑ̃], the glove.

juste [ʒyst], *adj.*, just, exact, right; **au —,** exactly.

le linge [lɛ̃ːʒ], the linen goods.

la modiste [mɔdist], the hatter (*for women*).

la pointure [pwētyːr], the size (of shoes or gloves).
promettre [prɔmɛtr], (**de** + *inf.*), to promise.
le rayon [rɛjɔ̃], the ray, shelf, department (*in a store*).
sentir [sɑ̃tiːr], to feel, perceive; **se —,** to feel (*of health*).
le serge [sɛrʒ], the serge (*material*).
stationner [stasjɔne], to be parked (*of automobiles*, etc.).
supposer [sypoze], to suppose.
la toilette [twalɛt], the dress, costume; — **de bal,** ball dress, evening gown.

Idioms

le magasin de nouveautés [magazɛ̃ də nuvote], the department store
aller avec, to go with, match (*of colors*, etc.)
mon affaire (**ton affaire,** etc.), just what I want, am looking for, etc.

299. Devoir, 'to owe,' 'must,' 'ought,' 'be to.' (Cf. § 451.)

Requires no preposition before following infinitive.

devoir	**devant**	**dû**	**dois**	**dus**
devrai	**devais**	**avoir dû**	**dois**	**dusse**
devrais	**doive**		**devons**	
			devez	

Present Indicative		Present Subjunctive	
dois [dwa]	**devons** [dəvɔ̃]	**doive** [dwaːv]	**devions** [dəvjɔ̃]
dois	**devez** [dəve]	**doives**	**deviez**
doit	**doivent** [dwaːv]	**doive**	**doivent**

300. Pouvoir, 'to be able,' 'can.' (Cf. § 458.)

Requires no preposition before following infinitive.

pouvoir	**pouvant**	**pu**	**peux, puis**	**pus**
pourrai	**pouvais**	**avoir pu**		**pusse**
pourrais	**puisse**			

Pres. Ind. Cf. § 119. *Pres. Subj.* Cf. § 261.

301. Savoir, 'to know,' 'know how.' (Cf. § 459.)

Requires no preposition before following infinitive.

savoir	**sachant**	**su**	**sais**	**sus**
saurai	**savais**	**avoir su**	**sache**	**susse**
saurais	**sache**		**sachons**	
			sachez	

Pres. Ind. Cf. § 125. *Pres. Subj.* Cf. § 284.

Devoir

302. **Devoir** implies usually duty, obligation, probability or necessity (resulting usually from duty, obligation, etc.).

Falloir (Cf. § 207) implies necessity.

303. Some tense uses of **Devoir**:

Present	**Il doit être malade.**	He must be (probably is) sick.
	Il doit être ici à deux heures.	He is to be here at two o'clock.
Imperfect	**Il devait être chez moi hier.**	He was to be at my house yesterday.
Past Indef.	**Vous avez dû être malade.**	You must have been sick.
Cond.	**Il devrait aller avec lui.**	He ought to go with him.
Cond. Perf.	**Il aurait dû aller avec lui.**	He ought to (should) have gone with him.

In addition to the above meanings, **devoir** also means 'to owe.'

Il me doit cinq francs. He owes me five francs.

Pouvoir

304. Some tense uses of **Pouvoir**:

Imperfect	**Il ne pouvait pas aller avec moi.**	He could not (was not able to) go with me.
Cond.	**Il pourrait le faire.**	He could (would be able to) do it.
Cond. Perf.	**Il aurait pu le faire.**	He could have (might have) done it.

Savoir

305. Some uses of **Savoir**:

The English 'can,' 'to be able,' in the sense of 'know how' is translated by the proper form of **savoir.**

Il ne sait pas chanter.	He cannot (does not know how to) sing.
Il ne peut pas chanter aujourd'hui.	He cannot sing today (i.e., he may know how, but he has a cold or something else prevents).

Étalage de Marchandises

A. Reading Exercise

1. Ma sœur et ma mère sont allées en ville hier matin. 2. Elles devaient y rencontrer une amie de ma sœur qui allait faire des courses avec elles. 3. Cette amie a dû être malade, parce qu'elle n'est pas venue. 4. Néanmoins, elle aurait dû donner un coup de téléphone à ma sœur, mais je suppose que cela n'était pas possible. 5. Ma mère et ma sœur auraient pu partir de meilleure heure, si elles avaient su que leur amie ne venait pas. 6. Mais elles sont parties après avoir attendu une heure. 7. Elles sont allées d'abord à un magasin de chaussures, pour voir des souliers. 8. Elles n'ont pu y trouver rien à leur goût. 9. Elles sont entrées ensuite dans un grand magasin de nouveautés où, après quelque difficulté, elles ont trouvé le rayon de chaussures. 10. Il y avait des souliers en grande quantité de toutes les modes et à tous les prix. 11. Ma sœur porte des bottines de pointure six, et des souliers de bal de cinq. 12. Après en avoir essayé plusieurs paires elle a trouvé exactement ce qu'elle voulait. 13. Elle est sortie très contente de ses emplettes. 14. Dans un autre magasin ma sœur a acheté du linge. 15. Puis, elle et ma mère sont allées chez une couturière pour commander un costume sur mesure et une toilette de bal pour ma sœur. 16. Le costume est en serge, qui est très à la mode en cette saison, et la toilette est en crêpe gris et très jolie. 17. Elles voulaient acheter des bas qui iraient avec la toilette. 18. Elles sont allées un peu partout, mais il a été impossible d'en trouver. 19. Enfin elles en ont acheté de couleur rose clair, qui vont assez bien avec la toilette. 20. Ensuite, il leur fallait acheter des gants. 21. Ma sœur a dû avoir assez de difficulté à trouver des gants de sa pointure, parce qu'elle a les mains très petites. 22. À la fin, elles sont entrées chez une modiste. 23. Ma sœur ne savait pas lui dire au juste ce qu'elle voulait. 24. Par conséquent, il a fallu regarder des douzaines de chapeaux. 25. Mais elle a fini par en trouver un qui était très beau et bon marché.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Qui est allé en ville hier matin? 2. Est-ce que votre mère et votre sœur attendaient quelqu'un? 3. Pourquoi est-ce que cette amie n'est pas arrivée? 4. Elle leur a téléphoné, n'est-ce pas? 5. Où sont-elles allées d'abord? 6. Y ont-elles trouvé leur affaire?

7. Ensuite où sont-elles entrées? 8. Décrivez le complet et la toilette. 9. Nommez d'autres choses qu'il leur fallait. 10. Comment dites-vous en français 'size', en parlant de souliers ou de gants? 11. Ont-elles eu beaucoup de difficulté à trouver des gants? 12. Où va-t-on pour acheter des chapeaux de femmes?

C. Oral Exercise

1. He is to be here at five-thirty. 2. Why must I wait? 3. You ought not to have done that. 4. I could go with you, if I hadn't another engagement. 5. They could not go with us last night. 6. Can you play the piano? 7. She must have been very tired. 8. They must be very hungry. 9. We ought not to have given it to them. 10. He might have gone with us, if he had been here. 11. May I lend them my exercise-book? 12. They ought to be here now. 13. He can play the piano very well. 14. I am to be at the station early. 15. It must be seven o'clock. 16. It must have been very late. 17. He should have gone with her. 18. If I had been able to go, I would have gone. 19. They used to be able to speak French. 20. We could study more, if it weren't so hot. 21. The automobile is parked in front of the store.

D. Written Exercise

1. I had to go to town with my sister today. 2. She had a lot of shopping to do and I had promised to drive the car for her. 3. We were intending to take one of her friends with us. 4. She telephoned us this morning that she ought not to go, as she did not feel very well. 5. But I told her the weather was very warm and she would feel better if she went out. 6. We went first to a shoe-store to look at some shoes. 7. My sister's size is very small, and she had great difficulty in finding what she wanted. 8. We must have been there for an hour. 9. Then we went to a shop to look at dresses. 10. My sister was able to find a very stylish serge suit. 11. She also ordered a ball dress of gray crêpe. 12. Next, she tried to find some stockings which would match the ball dress. 13. We ought to have gone to a department store. 14. But finally, after going to five or six shops, she was able to find what she wanted. 15. While she was buying the stockings, I waited in the car and smoked. 16. Then we looked for

gloves. 17. And next, we went to a hat-shop where my sister tried on about twenty hats. 18. She could have bought a very pretty one, but it was too expensive. 19. She thought that she ought not to pay so much for one, since she has to buy two. 20. She finally found just what she wanted and it was rather cheap. 21. We could have shopped much longer, but it was already a quarter to six. 22. As dinner was to be at six thirty, we had to go home.

LESSON XLVIII

VOCABULARY

l'acajou [akaʒu], *m.*, the mahogany.
confortable [kɔ̃fɔrtabl], *adj.*, comfortable.
le **divan** [divɑ̃], the divan.
fatigant [fatigɑ̃], *adj.*, fatiguing, tiring.
la **gravure** [gravyːr], the engraving.
le **guéridon** [geridɔ̃], the small table.
mesurer [məzyre], to measure.
le **meuble** [mœbl], the (piece of) furniture.
meubler [mœble], to furnish.
la **peinture** [pɛ̃tyːr], the painting.
placer [plase], to place, put.
le **rideau** [rido], the curtain.
le **secrétaire** [səkretɛːr], the secretary, desk.
le **sofa** [sɔfa], the davenport.
le **store** [stɔːr], the window-shade.
le **tabouret** [taburɛ], the stool.
tapisser [tapise], to paper, hang (with tapestry).

Idioms

de nouveau, again
en attendant [ɑ̃n atɑ̃dɑ̃], (in the) meanwhile
être à l'aise (**à son aise**) [ɛːtr a lɛːz (a sɔ̃n ɛːz)], to be comfortable, at ease (at one's ease)
faire tout son possible (**de son mieux**), to do all (the best) one can (could)

Some Prepositions

306. 'For' = **depuis, pour, pendant.**

1. Action begun in the past and still going on is expressed by the present tense with **depuis** [English uses the present perfect]. Cf. § 298.

Il est ici depuis deux heures. He has been here for two hours.

2. Past action that was still going on when something else happened is expressed by the imperfect tense with **depuis** [English uses past perfect]. Cf. § 298. 2.

Il était là depuis deux heures quand je suis arrivé.	He had been there for two hours when I arrived.

3. Past action completed is expressed by the past indefinite tense with **pendant:**

Il a été ici (pendant) deux heures.	He was here for two hours.

NOTE. **Pendant** may be omitted.

4. For Future time, 'for' is expressed by **pour:**

Il sera ici pour deux heures.	He will be here for two hours.

307. 'In' = **en, dans.**

Je le verrai dans une heure.	I shall see him in (after) an hour.
On peut y aller en une heure.	One can go there in (during) an hour.

308. **De** is used to form adjectival phrases:

une montre d'or	a gold watch
une toilette de soie	a silk dress

309. **Connaître,** 'to know,' 'be acquainted with.' (Cf. § 426.)

connaître	connaissant	connu	connais	connus
connaîtrai	connaissais	avoir connu	connais	connusse
connaîtrais	connaisse		connaissons	
			connaissez	

Pres. Ind. Cf. § 179.

Like **connaître** is **reconnaître** [rəkɔnɛːtr], 'to recognize'.

310. **Tenir,** 'to have,' 'hold,' 'resist.' (Cf. § 415.)

(Like **venir** except aux. is **avoir.** Cf. § 200.)

tenir	tenant	tenu	tiens	tins
tiendrai	tenais	avoir tenu	tiens	tinsse
tiendrais	tienne		tenons	
			tenez	

1. **tenir à** + *infinitive* = 'to insist on'

Il tient beaucoup à le faire. He insists on doing it.

2. **tenir à** + *a noun* = 'to care a great deal for'

Il tient à ce tableau. He cares a great deal for this picture.

311. Venir, 'to come.' (Cf. § 200.)

1. **venir à** + *infinitive* = 'to happen to'

Si vous venez à le voir, dites-le-lui. If you happen to see him, tell him so.

2. **venir de** + *infinitive* = 'to have just'

Present Tense:

Je viens de le voir. I have just seen him.

Imperfect Tense:

Je venais de le voir. I had just seen him.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Je suis chez moi maintenant depuis deux semaines. 2. Ce sont les grandes vacances qui viennent de commencer et pensez-vous si je suis heureux. 3. Les vacances dureront deux mois. 4. Et dans une semaine, je vais partir pour faire une visite à un de mes amis de collège. 5. En attendant, je vais aider ma belle-sœur à choisir des meubles pour son nouvel appartement. 6. C'est pour cela que nous sommes allés faire des courses hier et je vous assure que c'était bien fatigant. 7. De plus, nous sommes rentrés bien en retard pour le dîner. 8. Ce matin nous irons en ville de nouveau. 9. J'espère bien que cette fois nous serons de retour avant le dîner. 10. Ma belle-sœur veut acheter aujourd'hui des meubles pour le salon et pour la bibliothèque. 11. L'appartement est tapissé de papier gris et nous chercherons des tapis de la même couleur. 12. Il faudra choisir aussi des rideaux et faire mesurer les fenêtres pour des stores. 13. Pour le salon nous allons acheter un divan qu'on placera devant la cheminée. 14. Nous voudrions acheter aussi deux ou trois fauteuils

et un guéridon. 15. Au milieu du salon il y aura une grande table en acajou. 16. Nous aurons aussi un tabouret pour que mon frère puisse être à son aise quand il lit. 17. Pour les murs, ma belle-sœur a déjà acheté quelques gravures et des peintures. 18. Dans la bibliothèque il y aura un secrétaire et des rayons qu'on placera le long des murs pour les livres. 19. Devant la cheminée de la bibliothèque mon frère veut mettre un grand sofa. 20. Et comme il a passé beaucoup de temps aux États-Unis, il tient beaucoup à avoir des chaises à bascule. 21. Il est très difficile d'en trouver en France, mais nous ferons de notre mieux. 22. La journée sera bien remplie, mais nous tâcherons de finir nos courses avant l'heure du dîner.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Depuis quand êtes-vous chez vous? 2. Avez-vous des vacances maintenant? 3. Lesquelles? 4. Où allez-vous? 5. Quand allez-vous partir? 6. Que ferez-vous en attendant? 7. Quelles pièces est-ce que votre belle-sœur veut meubler? 8. En quelle couleur est-ce que l'appartement est tapissé? 9. Qu'y aura-t-il dans le salon? 10. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un guéridon? 11. Nommez d'autres choses qui se trouvent généralement dans un salon. 12. Y aura-t-il des tableaux? 13. De quelles espèces? 14. Qu'est-ce qu'il y aura dans la bibliothèque? 15. Voit-on souvent des chaises à bascule en France?

C. Oral Exercise

1. We have just seen them. 2. He will come tomorrow. 3. I used to know your friend. 4. They were coming home last night. 5. He insisted on staying here. 6. How long had he been here when you arrived? 7. I shall come for two weeks. 8. Will you insist on seeing them? 9. She would not have come, if she had known it. 10. He had just given them to her. 11. At what time will they come? 12. They would come today, if they were not sick. 13. Come here. 14. Do they know you? 15. I shall recognize him when I see him. 16. He wants you to come this afternoon. 17. I am sorry he is not coming. 18. We will see you in five minutes. 19. We can do it in a week. 20. Hadn't you just arrived when we saw you yesterday?

D. Written Exercise

1. We are having our long vacation now and I am very glad of it. 2. I have been home for three weeks. 3. I am waiting for a letter from a friend whom I am going to visit and then I shall go away. 4. He lives in the country not far from here and I shall be able to get there in an hour by automobile. 5. Meanwhile, I am spending a lot of time in reading. 6. Yesterday I had been reading for half an hour when my sister-in-law came in. 7. She was going shopping and she asked me to go with her. 8. My brother is busy all day at the office and never has the time to go with her. 9. She was buying some furniture for her new apartment and she wanted me to help her select it. 10. Yesterday we bought the furniture for the living-room. 11. Today we are going to furnish the library. 12. We are going to buy a davenport which will be put in front of the fire-place. 13. Then we shall get some arm-chairs and some rocking-chairs, if we can find any. 14. It is not easy to find rocking-chairs in Paris, but I think I know where to go. 15. My brother will select the desk, which will be in mahogany. 16. We are going to look at book-shelves and we shall need a lot of them, as my brother has a great many books. 17. He insists on being comfortable when he reads, consequently we shall have to find a stool for him. 18. He also insists on not having too many pictures in his library. 19. We shall probably select an engraving and one painting. 20. On the floor there will be several rugs, which are to go with the gray walls. 21. I am sure that everything will be arranged with taste.

LESSON XLIX

VOCABULARY

admirer [admire], to admire.
balayer [balɛje], to sweep.
la bobine [bɔbin], the spool.
desservir [desɛrviːr], to clear (*the table*).
égarer [egare], to mislay, misplace; **s'—**, to get lost.
enfiler [ɑ̃file], to thread (*a needle*).
épousseter [epuste], to dust.
le fil [fil], the thread, wire.
le gâteau [gɑto], the cake.
gentil [ʒɑ̃tiːj], (*f.* **gentille** [ʒɑ̃tiːj]), *adj.*, nice, kind.

les lunettes [lynɛt], *f. pl.*, the spectacles, glasses.
nettoyer [netwaje], to clean.
l'ordre [ɔrdr], *m.*, the order.
le **panier** [panje], the basket; — **à ouvrage,** sewing-basket.
perfectionner [pɛrfɛksjɔne], to perfect.
la **préparation** [preparɑsjɔ̃], the preparation.
profiter de [prɔfite], to profit by, make the most of.
le **raccommodage** [rakɔmɔda:ʒ], the mending.
raccommoder [rakɔmɔde], to repair, mend.
reposer [rəpoze]: **se —,** to rest.
repriser [rəprize], to darn, mend.
surveiller [syrvɛje], to look over, watch over.
la **vaisselle** [vɛsɛl], the plates, dishes.
vers [vɛ:r], *prep.*, towards, about.

Idioms

faire la cuisine [fɛ:r la kɥizin], to cook, do the cooking
au sujet de [o syʒɛ də], about, concerning, on the subject of
tant bien que mal [tɑ̃ bjɛ̃ kə mal], fairly well, rather well

312. Indefinite Pronouns

chacun [ʃakœ̃], *m.* } each (one), every (one)
chacune [ʃakyn], *f.* }
on [ɔ̃], one, they, people
quiconque [kikɔ̃:k], whoever, whosoever
quelqu'un [kɛlkœ̃], *m. sing.* }
quelqu'une [kɛlkyn], *f. sing.* } some one, somebody, some, any one, anybody, any, a few.
quelques-uns [kɛlkəzœ̃], *m. pl.* }
quelques-unes [kɛlkəzyn], *f. pl.* }
quelque chose [kɛlkə ʃo:z], *m.*, something, anything

Usage

313. 1. **chacun, chacune** are used only in the singular.

Chacun va à ses affaires. Each one goes to his business.

2. **quiconque** is invariable.

Quiconque le fera sera mon ami. Whoever will do it will be my friend.

3. **quelque chose** is construed as masculine.

Quelque chose est arrivé. Something has happened.

a. Like **rien, quelque chose** must always be followed by **de** before a following adjective. The following adjective is always masculine.

quelque chose de beau something beautiful

314. **Mettre,** 'to put,' 'put on,' 'place.' (Cf. § 436.)

mettre	**mettant**	**mis**	**mets**	**mis**
mettrai	**mettais**	**avoir mis**	**mets**	**misse**
mettrais	**mette**		**mettons**	
			mettez	

1. Idiom: **se mettre à,** 'to begin,' 'commence.'

Il s'est mis à étudier. He began to study.

315. **Prendre,** 'to take,' 'get.' (Cf. § 440.)

prendre	**prenant**	**pris**	**prends**	**pris**
prendrai	**prenais**	**avoir pris**	**prends**	**prisse**
prendrais	**prenne**		**prenons**	
			prenez	

1. Idioms:

a. **s'en prendre à quelqu'un,** 'to blame someone.'

Il s'en est pris à moi. He blamed me.

b. **s'y prendre,** 'to go about it,' 'do it,' 'manage.'

Je vous dirai comment il s'y prend. I shall tell you how he goes about it.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Ce matin, en se levant, ma mère est allée voir si la bonne était arrivée. 2. Elle est entrée dans la cuisine, mais il n'y avait personne là. 3. En ce moment le téléphone a sonné et quelqu'un a dit à ma mère que la bonne était malade et ne pourrait pas venir. 4. Cela voulait dire que nous aurions chacun beaucoup de choses à faire. 5. C'est aujourd'hui mardi, le jour où il faut épousseter et balayer toutes les pièces. 6. De plus, il y a toujours des vêtements à raccommoder et des bas à repriser. 7. Notre petit déjeuner était bien

léger ce matin et après j'ai lavé la vaisselle et j'ai fait les lits. 8. Pendant que ma mère nettoyait les pièces, moi j'ai pris le panier à ouvrage dans lequel il y avait des bobines de fil blanc et de fil noir. 9. J'ai enfilé une aiguille et je me suis mise à raccommoder les vêtements et à repriser les bas et les chaussettes. 10. Tout cela nous a occupées jusqu'au moment où nous avons dû préparer le déjeuner. 11. Après le déjeuner, j'ai aidé ma mère à desservir la table et à laver la vaisselle encore une fois. 12. Alors nous nous sommes reposées un peu, avant de nous mettre de nouveau au travail. 13. Vers cinq heures, il a fallu commencer à préparer le dîner. 14. J'ai mis le couvert et j'ai profité de l'occasion pour apprendre quelque chose au sujet de la cuisine. 15. J'aime beaucoup à faire la cuisine et je sais déjà la faire tant bien que mal. 16. Mais j'étais bien contente de m'y perfectionner et ma mère a été assez gentille pour m'expliquer tout ce qu'elle faisait. 17. Quand mon père est arrivé de son bureau, il a admiré le bon ordre de la maison. 18. On peut se figurer si ma mère et moi étions fatiguées après une telle journée.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Est-ce que la bonne était arrivée quand votre mère est entrée dans la cuisine? 2. Comment avez-vous su que la bonne était malade? 3. Votre mère avait-elle beaucoup de choses à faire? 4. Quel jour de la semaine était-ce? 5. Et votre mère qu'est-ce qu'elle fait généralement le mardi? 6. L'avez-vous aidée? 7. Qu'avez-vous fait? 8. Savez-vous raccommoder les vêtements? 9. Comment dites-vous en français 'mend,' 'darn'? 10. Avez-vous nettoyé les pièces? 11. Qu'avez-vous fait après le déjeuner? 12. Savez-vous préparer un repas? 13. Est-ce que vous et votre mère étiez fatiguées à la fin de la journée? 14. Pourquoi?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Some one has just arrived. 2. I have seen nothing on the table. 3. Whoever wishes (*fut.*) to (*lit.* it.) can set the table every day. 4. Put the stockings here. 5. Do you like to darn? 6. He wants me to put on my hat. 7. No one has arrived. 8. We shall take the train at one o'clock. 9. I didn't take your book. 10. Although some one has taken my book, I shall know my lesson. 11. They

would take ours, if they were here. 12. How shall one go about it? 13. I shall not blame him. 14. We would put them here, if we had them. 15. I saw something on the table. 16. Each one takes this occasion to learn something about cooking. 17. Don't put your pencils here. 18. Let us begin to study. 19. I didn't put anything on the table. 20. The flowers I took are not yours. 21. We shall begin to dance at about nine o'clock.

D. Written Exercise

1. When I got up this morning, mother told me that the servant had not come. 2. Some one had telephoned her that she was sick. 3. We went into the kitchen and found that nothing had been done for breakfast. 4. I helped mother prepare the breakfast and afterwards I washed all the dishes. 5. Unfortunately, today is Tuesday and we always mend the clothes and darn the stockings on Tuesdays. 6. Then too, mother usually makes cake on Tuesdays. 7. However, as she knew that each one of us would be quite busy, she postponed that until tomorrow. 8. First, we made all the beds. 9. Then mother dusted and swept all the rooms. 10. I told her that I would take care of the mending, as I wanted to do all that I could to help her. 11. Unfortunately, I had mislaid my glasses for the moment, and I couldn't thread the needle. 12. After looking everywhere for them, I finally found them in the desk drawer. 13. I darned all the stockings and mended the clothes. 14. I was quite busy until lunch time. 15. After lunch we cleared the table and, while mother rested a little, I read the paper. 16. At five o'clock we began to prepare the dinner. 17. I like to cook very much and mother took this opportunity to show me something about the preparation of a meal. 18. I would have set the table, but mother did it while I stayed in the kitchen and looked after the cooking. 19. Mother came into the kitchen from time to time to see what I was doing. 20. When father came home from the office, everything was in good order. 21. You can easily imagine that after dinner, when we had washed the dishes, we were quite tired.

LESSON L

VOCABULARY

admettre [admɛtr], to admit.
adopter [adɔpte], to adopt.
l'**allure** [alyːr], *f.*, the gait, (rate of) speed.
l'**arrêt** [arɛ], *m.*, the stop.
arrêter [arɛte], to stop; **s'—**, to stop.
l'**autobus** [otɔbys], *m.*, the bus, autobus.
la **carte** [kart], the card, map.
complet [kɔ̃plɛ], *adj.*, complete, full.
compliqué [kɔ̃plike], *adj.*, complicated.
croiser [krwaze], to cross; **se —**, to cross.
la **demande** [dəmɑ̃d], the request, demand.
la **distance** [distɑ̃ːs], the distance.
diviser [divize], to divide.
facultatif [fakyltatif], *adj.*, optional.
fixe [fiks], *adj.*, fixed, certain.
indiquer [ɛ̃dike], to indicate, point out.
l'**intérieur** [ɛ̃terjœːr], *m.*, the interior; **à l'—**, (on the) inside.
le **métropolitain** [metrɔpɔlitɛ̃], the Metro, subway (*in Paris*).
le **moyen** [mwajɛ̃], the means.
obligatoire [ɔbligatwaːr], *adj.*, obligatory.
la **pancarte** [pɑ̃kart], the placard, sign.
parcourir [parkuriːr], to traverse; **parcouru** [parkury], *pp.*
la **plate-forme** [platfɔrm], the platform.
le **point** [pwɛ̃], the point.
le **receveur** [rəsvœːr], the conductor.
la **section** [sɛksjɔ̃], the section.
selon [səlɔ̃], *prep.*, according to.
souterrain [sutɛrɛ̃], *adj.*, underground.
le **système** [sistɛm], the system.
le **tarif** [tarif], the rate, fare.
le **tramway** [tramwɛ], the street-car; — **à vapeur,** steam street-car.
le **transport** [trɑ̃spɔːrt], the transportation.
varier [varje], to vary.
le **voyageur** [vwajaʒœːr], the traveler, passenger.

IDIOM

à l'avant	in front

316. The Subjunctive

1. **In Independent clauses.**

The Subjunctive occurs but rarely in independent clauses. When so used, it denotes a wish or an order.

Vive le roi.	Long live the King.
Que Dieu vous bénisse.	May God bless you.
Qu'il vienne.	Let (have) him come.

2. **In Dependent clauses.**

The Subjunctive occurs in dependent noun clauses, dependent adjective clauses and dependent adverbial clauses.

Noun Clauses

317. The Subjunctive is used in subject clauses after all impersonal verbs that express uncertainty, obligation, emotion, etc., or that do not merely state a fact, e.g.:

il est possible	it is possible	**il faut**	it is necessary
c'est dommage	it is a pity	**il vaut mieux**	it is better
il se peut	it may be		

Il est possible qu'il soit malade.	It is possible he may be sick.
Il vaut mieux que vous restiez ici.	It is better for you to stay here.
Il se peut qu'il vienne.	It may be that he is coming (will come).

318. Some impersonal verbs that take the indicative in affirmations (when they imply a fact) require the subjunctive in interrogations, negations, or conditions (when they imply uncertainty).

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Il est sûr / **Il est probable**	**qu'il vient.**	**Est-il sûr** / **Il n'est pas probable**	**qu'il vienne.**
It is certain / It is probable	that he is coming.	Is it certain / It is not probable	that he is coming.

319. The Subjunctive is used in object clauses after personal verbs expressing:

1. *Doubt* (including denial and also verbs of thinking and believing when doubt is implied by interrogation, negation, or condition).

Je doute	**que ce soit vrai.**	I doubt	that it is true.
Je nie		I deny	
Croyez-vous		Do you believe	
Je ne crois pas		I don't think	

2. *Will* (including desire, command, permission, prohibition and the like with their opposites).

Je voudrais	**qu'il vienne.**	I wish	him to come.
Ordonnez		Order	
Nous permettons		We permit	
Elle défend		She forbids	
Prenez garde	**qu'il ne le fasse.**	Take care	lest he do it.

3. *Emotion* (including joy, anger, fear, sorrow, regret, etc.).

Il est content que vous soyez ici.	He is glad that you are here.
Nous regrettons que vous ne puissiez pas venir.	We regret you cannot come.
Je suis fâché qu'elle soit malade.	I am sorry that she is sick.

a. Note that **être heureux, être content, être enchanté** may be followed by **de ce que** and the indicative as as well by **que** and the subjunctive.

Nous sommes enchantés que vous soyez ici: *or* **Nous sommes enchantés de ce que vous êtes ici.**	We are delighted that you are here.

320. A redundant **ne** is commonly used, though not necessarily, after:

1. Such verbs as **douter, craindre, avoir peur, prendre garde.**

J'ai peur qu'il (ne) soit malade.	I am afraid he is sick.

2. Such conjunctions as **avant que,** 'before,' **de crainte que,** 'for fear that,' **de peur que,** 'for fear that,' **à moins que,** 'unless.'

Je le ferai de peur qu'il (ne) refuse de le faire.	I shall do it for fear that he may refuse to do it.

3. After 'than' in the second member of a comparison when the first member is not negative.

Ce livre est plus interessant que je (ne) pensais.	This book is more interesting than I thought.

La Place de l'Opéra

A. Reading Exercise

1. À Paris, comme dans toutes les grandes villes, il y a plusieurs moyens de transport. 2. D'abord, il y a les tramways électriques, qui ressemblent beaucoup aux nôtres, excepté qu'ils ne s'arrêtent qu'à certains points fixes. 3. Leur itinéraire est divisé en sections et le tarif varie selon la distance parcourue. 4. Dans ces tramways, il y a deux classes: les places à l'avant sont réservées aux voyageurs de première classe et les autres, aux voyageurs de seconde classe. 5. Quand il n'y a plus de place, le receveur accroche une pancarte qui dit « Complet » et on n'admet plus de voyageurs. 6. C'est dommage qu'on n'ait pas adopté cette idée dans nos grandes villes. 7. De cette façon, tout le monde peut s'asseoir. 8. Les autobus ont, eux aussi, deux classes, des places d'intérieur et des places de plate-forme. 9. Pour les autobus il y a des arrêts facultatifs, c'est-à-dire, des points où ils s'arrêtent seulement à la demande des voyageurs. 10. Et de plus, il y a des arrêts obligatoires qu'ils observent toujours. 11. Ces arrêts-ci se trouvent surtout où il y a plusieurs lignes d'autobus qui se croisent. 12. Les tramways et les autobus vont à une allure beaucoup plus rapide qu'aux États-Unis. 13. Ensuite, il y a à Paris des tramways à vapeur qui vont surtout en banlieue. 14. Enfin, il y a le Métropolitain, appelé le Métro, chemin de fer en grande partie souterrain, qui ressemble à notre 'Subway'. 15. Dans chaque wagon on voit une toute petite carte qui indique l'itinéraire et les stations où le Métro s'arrête. 16. Je ne crois pas qu'il y ait un meilleur système de Métro que celui de Paris. 17. On ne trouve pas cette carte dans le 'Subway' de New York et par conséquent il est facile de s'y égarer.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Quels moyens de transport y a-t-il à Paris. 2. Où est-ce que les tramways électriques s'arrêtent? 3. Combien de classes y a-t-il dans les tramways et dans les autobus? 4. Quand ils sont pleins, que fait-on? 5. Avons-nous ce système aux États-Unis? 6. Combien de sortes d'arrêts y a-t-il pour les autobus? 7. Lesquels? 8. Quelle espèce de tramway va en banlieue? 9. Qu'est-ce que c'est que le Métro? 10. Est-il facile de s'égarer à Paris dans le Métro?

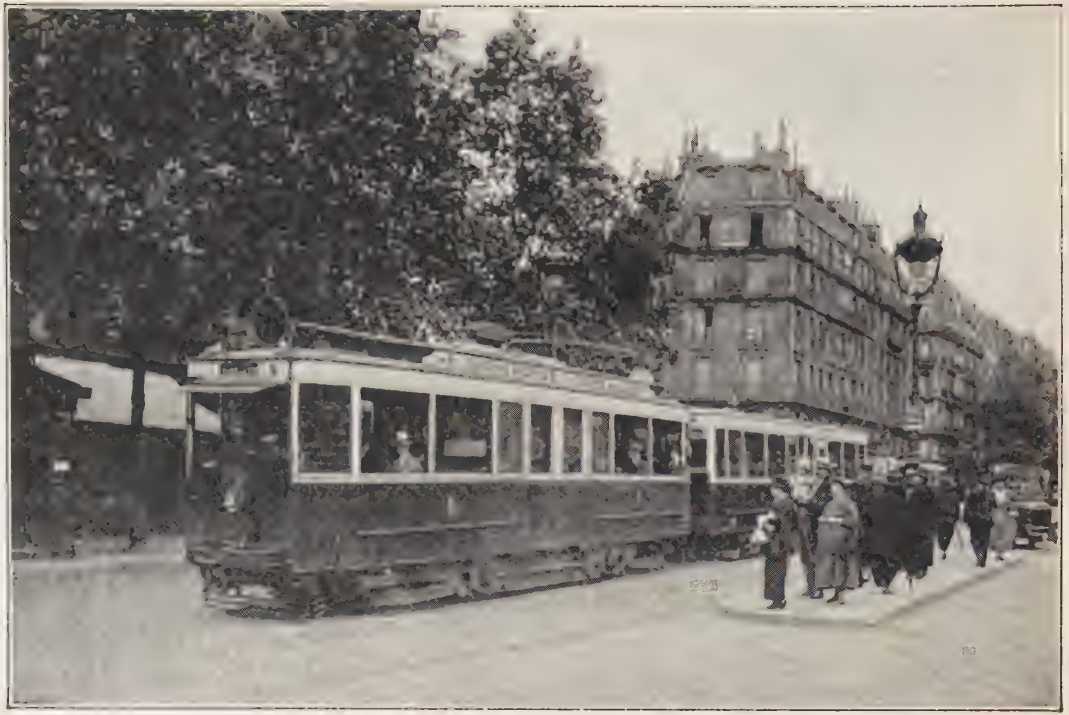
11. Pourquoi pas? 12. Est-il facile de s'égarer à New York dans le 'Subway'? 13. Pourquoi?

C. Oral Exercise

1. It is possible that he may come. 2. Do you think she is coming too? 3. No, I don't believe she will be with him. 4. It is probable that she has gone away. 5. I doubt that they are here. 6. I am afraid they have not yet gone away. 7. It seems that he already knows her. 8. It is a pity that you do not know where he lives. 9. I am afraid that it may rain. 10. I am sorry that you cannot go with us. 11. Take care that he does not see you. 12. Is it certain that he will do it. 13. No, but it is probable that he will do it. 14. If you believe that he is there, you can stay home. 15. He permitted her to have the book. 16. It is not certain that she has the book. 17. One must finish one's work each day. 18. I am sorry that he has not passed his examinations. 19. It may be that he has been sick. 20. He wants us to be here when he returns. 21. They didn't want to stay here so long. 22. Don't you think that they are coming too? 23. I want them to come, but I am afraid they have another engagement.

D. Written Exercise

1. Of all the large cities in the world, it is probable that Paris has the best means of transportation. 2. It may be that the electric cars and autobusses in New York go at a less rapid rate, but the system is so complicated that a stranger can easily get lost there. 3. I regret nearly every day that some of the French ideas concerning means of transportation are not adopted in our country. 4. For example, the electric cars in Paris stop only at fixed points. 5. Their route is divided into sections and the fare varies according to the distance traversed. 6. Besides, there are two classes: first and second. 7. First-class passengers pay more than second-class passengers. 8. This is possible in Paris only because, when there are no more places in the car, the conductor hangs up a sign which says « Complet », that is to say 'Full'. 9. After this, he does not allow any one to enter. 10. The autobusses in Paris have, in general, the same rules as the electric cars. 11. There are two classes and two kinds of stops; one is optional, that is to say the busses stop only for



Le Tramway Électrique — Boulevard St. Michel

passengers who are to get on or off. 12. The other stop is obligatory and all the busses always stop there. 13. Obligatory stops are usually found where several lines of busses cross. 14. When the busses are full, no one can enter. 15. In the « Métro » or Subway one sees in every car a small map of the route and of the stops. 16. So it is always easy to know beforehand where the train is going and what stops it makes. 17. In New York, once in the subway, it is almost impossible to know where your train is going and where it stops. 18. I do not believe that one can get lost very easily in the « Métro » in Paris. 19. In the subway in New York, on the contrary, one is always afraid that one may get lost.

LESSON LI

VOCABULARY

aborder [abɔrde], to accost.
le **bord** [bɔrd], the edge, side.
braquer [brake], to point, direct, look at fixedly.
comprendre [kɔ̃prɑ̃:dr], to understand, comprehend.
couvrir [kuvri:r], to cover; *pp.*, **couvert** [kuvɛ:r], covered, with one's hat on.
se **couvrir** [kuvri:r], to put one's hat on.
la **dame** [dam], the lady.
démodé [demɔde], *adj.*, out of style.
élever [elve], to raise, bring up.
l'**entr'acte** [ɑ̃trakt], *m.*, the interval between the acts, intermission.
envers [ɑ̃vɛ:r], *prep.*, towards, to.
les **jumelles** [ʒymɛl], *f. pl.*, the opera-glasses.
lever [ləve], to raise.
les **mœurs** [mœrs], *f. pl.*, the manners, habits.
la **nuance** [nɥɑ̃:s], the shade (*of meaning, color*, etc.).
obliger [ɔbliʒe], (**de** + *inf.*), to oblige, compel.
omettre [ɔmɛtr], to omit.
ôter [ote], to take off, remove.
la **permission** [pɛrmisjɔ̃], the permission.
poli [pɔli], *adj.*, polite.
la **politesse** [pɔlitɛs], the politeness.
présent [prezɑ̃], *adj.*, present.
respectueux [rɛspɛktɥø], *adj.*, respectful.
saluer [salɥe], to speak to, greet.
tourner [turne], to turn; — **en ridicule** [ridikyl], to ridicule.
le **trottoir** [trɔtwa:r], the sidewalk, pavement.
l'**usage** [yza:ʒ], *m.*, the custom, practice, use.

IDIOMS

vous avez beau partir, there is no use in your going, you are going in vain
d'autre part, on the other hand
se donner la main, to shake hands
de nos jours, nowadays, in our time
le train de vie, the sort of life, way of living
de rigueur [rigœːr], indispensable, obligatory, necessary

The Subjunctive

Sequence of tenses

321. The following sequence of tenses is observed in dependent subjunctive clauses:

Principal Clause	*Dependent Clause*	*Corresponds to the English*
Present, Future, Imperative	Present subj.	Present *or* future
	Perfect subj.	Perfect, past *or* fut. perf.

Je suis fâché qu'il vienne.	I am sorry he is coming (will come).
Je suis fâché qu'il ait été ici.	I am sorry he has been (was) here.
Elle regrettera que son frère n'ait pas été avec elle.	She will be sorry her brother was not with her.
Elle regrettera que son frère ne soit pas avec elle.	She will be sorry her brother is not (will not be) with her.
Exigez qu'il reste ici.	Require him to stay here.
Ne croyons pas qu'il ait fait cela.	Let us not believe that he has done that.

322. If the principal clause is in a past tense, the dependent clause is in the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

These two tenses of the subjunctive like the past definite are rarely used in conversation. To avoid their use, see Lesson LIII.

Adjective Clauses

323. The Subjunctive is used in Adjective Clauses (those introduced by a relative pronoun):

1. When the antecedent of the relative is indefinite.

Je cherche une maison qui ait huit pièces.	I am looking for a house which has eight rooms.

2. After a superlative, that is when the antecedent of the relative pronoun is modified by an adjective in the superlative degree.

C'est le meilleur élève que j'aie dans ma classe.	He is the best student that I have in my class.

3. After a general negation, real or implied.

Il n'y a rien qu'il puisse faire.	There is nothing that he can do.
Où y a-t-il quelqu'un qui puisse faire cela?	Where is there anyone who can do that?

A. Reading Exercise

1. Il n'y a pas de pays au monde où les usages de la politesse soient mieux observés qu'en France. 2. C'est le meilleur endroit qu'on puisse trouver pour remarquer ces usages. 3. Partout et à toutes les heures il faut être respectueux envers tout le monde, et surtout envers les femmes. 4. Dans la rue, un Français salue ses amis, hommes et femmes, en ôtant son chapeau. 5. Il ne reste jamais couvert en parlant à une dame. 6. S'il fume quand il aborde une dame, la politesse demande qu'il jette sa cigarette tout de suite. 7. En accompagnant une dame, il doit, comme chez nous, marcher du côté du bord du trottoir. 8. Entre hommes, on se donne la main chaque fois qu'on se rencontre, usage assez tourné en ridicule en Amérique, mais qui indique un homme bien élevé. 9. Dans un salon, un homme doit toujours se lever quand une dame y entre ou en sort. 10. C'est une politesse qui malheureusement devient de plus en plus démodée aux États-Unis. 11. Mais il n'y a rien qui soit plus de rigueur. 12. Dans les wagons du chemin de fer on doit demander permission aux personnes présentes avant de commencer à fumer. 13. En quittant le wagon, un homme bien élevé lève son chapeau et salue ses compagnons de voyage. 14. D'autre part, les messieurs portent toujours le chapeau pendant les entr'actes au théâtre. 15. Et ce qu'il y a de plus difficile à comprendre pour nous autres Américains, c'est que

non seulement les femmes, ce qui arrive souvent chez nous, mais aussi les hommes braquent leurs jumelles sur les dames pendant l'entr'acte. 16. Ainsi les mœurs varient de pays en pays. 17. Malheureusement, le train de vie qu'on mène de nos jours ne permet guère qu'on observe toutes les nuances des usages de la politesse. 18. Néanmoins, chacun devrait faire de son mieux pour être aussi poli que possible.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Croyez-vous que les usages de la politesse soient bien observés en France? 2. Qu'est-ce que le Français fait en saluant ses amis? 3. Reste-t-il couvert? 4. De quel côté marche-t-il, s'il accompagne une femme? 5. Quand est-ce qu'on se donne la main en France. 6. Quand est-ce qu'un homme bien élevé se lève? 7. Que fait-on si on veut fumer dans un wagon du chemin de fer? 8. Que fait-on aux théâtres en France qu'on ne fait pas chez nous? 9. Est-ce la peine d'observer les usages de la politesse?

C. Oral Exercise

1. There is no one who can help you. 2. There is nothing you can do. 3. I am looking for a man who knows how to speak French. 4. I know a man who knows how to speak French. 5. I have no friend who tells me what he thinks. 6. He is afraid you may be sick (*two ways*). 7. She is the most intelligent woman I know. 8. We do not know a place where we can have a better time. 9. There is the best book that I have ever read. 10. Do you know where I can rent a house that has ten bedrooms? 11. There is no house in this city which has so many bedrooms. 12. It is possible that he knows where there is one. 13. This is the hardest lesson that I have ever studied. 14. He is much more intelligent than you thought. 15. Where can I find a friend who will help me? 16. Here is a friend who will help you. 17. Here is the most interesting book I ever read. 18. The last time that I saw her she was with him. 19. It is the first thing I did. 20. The best student I have is not here today.

D. Written Exercise

1. We look in vain nowadays for a country where all the customs of politeness are always observed. 2. Unfortunately, the sort of life

that we lead obliges us to omit many such things. 3. And yet, we should do all we can in order not to forget them. 4. They indicate the well-bred man better than we think. 5. In Paris these customs of politeness are better observed perhaps than in the United States. 6. There, a Frenchman always takes off his hat in speaking to a friend, man or woman. 7. He also shakes hands with his friends every time that he meets them. 8. In walking with a lady, he walks always on the outside of the pavement. 9. And while speaking to her, he never remains with his hat on. 10. If he is smoking, he throws away his cigarette. 11. When a lady enters or leaves a room, every gentleman should rise. 12. This custom is sometimes ridiculed in America, where it is becoming more and more out of fashion. 13. But there is nothing more obligatory if one wishes to be well bred. 14. Even in smoking cars in France, one should ask the permission of those present before beginning to smoke. 15. Frequently ladies who cannot find any room in other cars have to go into a smoker. 16. In the United States, there are some men who still remain with their hats on (*lit.* covered) in elevators. 17. And many of us remain seated in street-cars while there are ladies standing. 18. You answer, perhaps, that we haven't time for all these courtesies nowadays. 19. Well, then, that means that we haven't time to be gentlemen.

LESSON LII

VOCABULARY

la cabine [kabin], the state-room, cabin.
la cale [kal], the hold (*of a ship*).
se charger [ʃarʒe] (**de** + *inf.* or *noun*), to take charge of, look after.
le compartiment [kɔ̃partimɑ̃], the compartment.
la couchette [kuʃɛt], the berth.
couteux [kutø], *adj.*, expensive, costly.
déclarer [deklare], to declare.
désagréable [dezagreabl], *adj.*, disagreeable.
la douane [dwan], the custom-house.
le douanier [dwanje], the custom-house officer.
s'embarquer [sɑ̃barke], to embark.
ennuyer [ɑ̃nɥije], to weary, bore; **s'—**, to be bored.

l'extérieur [ɛkstɛrjœːr], *m.*, the outside; **à l'—**, (on the) outside.
le facteur [faktœːr], the porter, postman.
la maladie [maladi], the disease.
le passeport [pɑspɔːr], the passport.
personnel [pɛrsɔnɛl], *adj.*, personal.
le plan [plɑ̃], the plan.
le quai [ke], the dock, quay.
simplement [sɛ̃pləmɑ̃], *adv.*, simply.

Idioms

à bord, on board
aux soins de, in care of
en route pour, on the way to
le mal de mer, seasickness

The Subjunctive

Adverbial Clauses

324. The Subjunctive is used in adverbial clauses after:

1. Conjunctions of purpose, such as

afin que, 'in order that'
pour que, 'in order that'
de sorte (manière, façon) que, 'so that'
si . . . que, 'so . . . that'
tellement . . . que, 'so . . . that,' etc.

(Followed by **ne**)

de crainte que, 'for fear that,' 'lest'
de peur que, 'for fear that,' 'lest'

Il fera de sorte qu'il réussisse. He will work so as to succeed.
Je vais partir de peur qu'il ne vienne. I am going to leave lest he come.

Note. — **De sorte (manière, façon) que, si . . . que, tellement . . . que** regularly take the indicative in result clauses.

Il a fait de sorte qu'il a réussi. He worked so that he succeeded.
Il a fait si (tellement) bien qu'il a réussi. He did so well that he succeeded.

2. Conjunctions of proviso or condition, such as

au cas que, 'in case that'
pourvu que, 'provided that'.
à moins que, 'unless' (redundant **ne**)

Je le ferai, pourvu qu'il le fasse aussi. I shall do it, provided he does it too.
Il sera ici, à moins qu'il (ne) soit malade. He will be here, unless he is sick.

OBSERVATION: **au cas que** + the subjunctive is replaced in conversation by **au cas où, dans le cas où** + the conditional.

au cas qu'il parte
dans le cas où il partirait } in case he leaves (should leave)
au cas où il partirait

3. Conjunctions of concession, such as

quoique, 'although' **bien que,** 'although'

Quoique vous restiez, je partirai. Although you stay, I shall leave.

4. Conjunctions of time, such as

avant que, 'before' (redundant **ne**)
jusqu'à ce que, 'until'

Il sera ici avant que vous ne partiez. He will be here before you leave.
Je resterai ici jusqu'à ce que vous reveniez. I shall stay here until you return.
J'y suis resté jusqu'à ce qu'il soit revenu.[1] I stayed there until he returned.

5. Conjunctions of negation, such as

sans que, 'without'

Il le fera sans que vous le sachiez. He will do it without your knowing it.

325. Dormir, 'to sleep' (Cf. 404.)

dormir	**dormant**	**dormi**	**dors**	**dormis**
dormirai	**dormais**	**avoir dormi**	**dors**	**dormisse**
dormirais	**dorme**		**dormons**	
			dormez	

Like **dormir** are conjugated:

s'endormir, to fall asleep, go to sleep
partir, to leave, set out
sentir, to feel
servir, to serve; **se — de,** to make use of
sortir, to go out

[1] In past clauses stating a fact, **jusqu'à ce que** may be followed by the indicative.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Une des manières les plus agréables de passer les grandes vacances, pourvu qu'on soit libre, c'est d'aller en France. 2. Et de nos jours, ce n'est ni très difficile ni très coûteux. 3. Il est important d'avoir un passe-port avant de partir, car il arrive très souvent qu'il faut s'en servir. 4. On fait ses plans assez à l'avance pour qu'on puisse choisir le bateau sur lequel on veut faire la traversée ainsi que la sorte de cabine qu'on préfère. 5. Il y a sur les bateaux de la Compagnie Générale Transatlantique des cabines à l'intérieur et d'autres à l'extérieur. 6. Naturellement, on a beaucoup plus d'air dans les cabines extérieures que dans les cabines intérieures. 7. Il y a aussi des bateaux à trois classes et à une classe. 8. Ceux-ci sont moins chers et ne marchent pas si rapidement que ceux-là. 9. Lorsqu'on est prêt à partir, on fait expédier ses bagages à New York aux soins de la Compagnie. 10. Les bagages dont on n'a pas besoin pendant la traversée sont marqués « Cale ». 11. Ceux dont on a besoin pendant la traversée sont mis sous la couchette dans la cabine. 12. La vie à bord est tout à fait agréable, à moins qu'on ne souffre du mal de mer. 13. C'est une maladie bien desagréable mais pas sérieuse et personne n'en est jamais mort. 14. Pendant le voyage, on lit, on fait des promenades, on joue aux cartes et on a faim presque toujours. 15. On fait souvent la connaissance de gens assez intéressants. 16. Les six ou huit jours de traversée passent assez vite. 17. Après avoir débarqué au Havre, c'est une bonne idée d'appeler un facteur. 18. Il se charge des bagages sans qu'on ait à s'en occuper davantage. 19. Puis il, faut passer à la douane où le douanier demande si on a quelque chose à déclarer. 20. Si on a du tabac ou des cartes, il vaut mieux les déclarer tout franchement. 21. Si on n'en a pas, on dit simplement: je n'ai que des effets pour mon usage personnel. 22. Après la visite de la douane, le facteur installe les bagages dans le wagon du chemin de fer. 23. On lui donne un pourboire et on part pour Paris.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Voudriez-vous passer les grandes vacances en France? 2. Est-il très couteux de faire la traversée? 3. Que faut-il avoir avant de partir? 4. Pourquoi faut-il avoir un passe-port? 5. Est-ce

Le Paquebot "Paris" de la Compagnie Générale Transatlantique

qu'on s'en sert beaucoup à présent? 6. Combien de classes y a-t-il sur les bateaux? 7. Combien de sortes de cabines y a-t-il? 8. Lesquelles? 9. Que fait-on pour s'amuser à bord? 10. A-t-on généralement bon appétit sur le bateau? 11. Que fait-on en débarquant au Havre? 12. Comment dit-on en français: "I have nothing to declare, I have only personal effects." 13. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un pourboire?

C. Oral Exercise

1. I shall see him before he leaves. 2. I always read until I fall asleep. 3. Study well, so that you may pass your examinations. 4. In order that I can go with you tomorrow night, I shall have to stay home tonight. 5. For fear that someone may come, we shall not go out. 6. Although I may have seasickness, I like very much the voyage to France. 7. It is the best way that I know of spending a vacation. 8. He left without your knowing it. 9. I shall be happy here, unless you go away. 10. Provided that he is not sick, he will come, I am sure. 11. They went to bed early last night, in order to feel better this morning. 12. He does not think that she is going to France. 13. Paris is the most interesting city that I know. 14. There is no one who cannot have a good time in Paris. 15. He stayed there until they fell asleep. 16. Let him come if he wishes, but I do not think he will be content here. 17. In case he comes, I shall tell him what you said. 18. Tell them to finish their work before they go away. 19. I do not think he will come, because he is afraid they will be here. 20. He tells me not to leave before he arrives. 21. It may be he is sleeping, unless he has left.

D. Written Exercise

1. Nowadays many people go to France to spend the vacation, and, provided that the vacation is long enough, there is nothing more agreeable. 2. The trip is neither as difficult nor as expensive as it used to be. 3. In the first place you must get a passport, for it is always possible that you may need it upon entering France. 4. Then, you should reserve a berth, at least several months beforehand. 5. This is necessary, if you want to make the trip on a certain boat. 6. On every boat there are outside cabins and inside

cabins. 7. The outside cabins are more comfortable and also more expensive. 8 But, if possible, it is worth while paying more, because you can sleep much better in an outside cabin. 9. You should send your trunks to New York in care of the company on whose boat you are making the trip. 10. Trunks that you will need during the trip are marked 'Cabin,' and those that you will need only in France are marked 'Hold.' 11. Then, before you embark, you will find your baggage for the trip under your berth. 12. The sort of life that one leads on board is nearly always pleasant, provided that one does not suffer from seasickness. 13. One can read, rest, play cards, and nearly every night on the larger boats there is dancing. 14. There are always some interesting people on board, so that the trip is completed before you begin to be bored. 15. When you land at Havre, it is a good idea to call a porter, many of whom you will see on the dock. 16. He will look after your baggage, until you find a custom officer and then he will take you to the train for Paris. 17. If you have nothing to declare, you tell the officer frankly that you have only personal things. 18. Then you go to your train and the porter will find a compartment for you, if you wish. 19. Then, when you are settled with your valises in the train, you give him a tip. 20. About five hours after the train starts, you are in Paris.

LESSON LIII

VOCABULARY

l'ambassadeur [ɑ̃basadœːr], *m.*, the ambassador.

apercevoir [apɛrsəvwaːr], to perceive (*by the senses*); **s'—**, to be aware of, perceive (*by the mind*).

le **but** [by], the end, aim, goal.

la **carrière** [karjɛːr], the career.

le **conseil** [kɔ̃sɛːj], the advice, piece of advice.

l'éducation [edykɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, the education.

entreprendre [ɑ̃trəprɑ̃ːdr], to undertake.

étranger [etrɑ̃ʒe], *adj.*, foreign.

honnête [ɔnɛːt], *adj.*, honest.

Londres [lɔ̃ːdr], London.

persévérer [pɛrsevɛre], to persevere.

le **rédacteur** [redaktœːr], the editor (*of a newspaper*).

tromper [trɔ̃pe], to deceive; **se —**, to be mistaken, make a mistake.

Le Port du Havre

Idioms

l'homme d'état, the statesman
l'honnête homme, the gentleman
l'article de fond, *m.*, the editorial (*in a newspaper*)

Past Definite of Certain Irregular Verbs

326. conduire: past definite **conduisis,** etc. Cf. § 423.

327. naître: past definite **naquis,** etc.; pp. **né.** Cf. § 438.

328. apercevoir: past definite **aperçus,** etc. Cf. § 450.

329. faire: past definite **fis,** etc. Cf. § 433.

Imperfect Subjunctive

330. Donner	**331. Finir**
'(that) I gave,' 'might give,' etc.	'(that) I finished,' 'might finish,' etc.
(que) je donn **asse** [dɔnas]	fin **isse** [finis]
(que) tu donn **asses** [dɔnas]	fin **isses** [finis]
(qu')il donn **ât** [dɔna]	fin **ît** [fini]
(que) nous donn **assions** [dɔnasjɔ̃]	fin **issions** [finisjɔ̃]
(que) vous donn **assiez** [dɔnasje]	fin **issiez** [finisje]
(qu')ils donn **assent** [dɔnas]	fin **issent** [finis]

332. Vendre	**333. Être**	**334. Avoir**
'(that) I sold,' 'might sell,' etc.	'(that) I were, 'might be,' etc.	'(that) I had,' 'might have,' etc.
vend **isse** [vɑ̃dis]	**fusse** [fys]	**eusse** [ys]
vend **isses** [vɑ̃dis]	**fusses** [fys]	**eusses** [ys]
vend **ît** [vɑ̃di]	**fût** [fy]	**eût** [y]
vend **issions** [vɑ̃disjɔ̃]	**fussions** [fysjɔ̃]	**eussions** [ysjɔ̃]
vend **issiez** [vɑ̃disje]	**fussiez** [fysje]	**eussiez** [ysje]
vend **issent** [vɑ̃dis]	**fussent** [fys]	**eussent** [ys]

335. All French verbs have either the **-asse, -isse** or **-usse** endings in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

336. The Imperfect Subjunctive may be formed from the Past Definite by adding **-se,** etc., to the Past Definite in the

second and third conjugations and by changing **–ai** of the first to **–asse.**

337. Use. The Imperfect Subjunctive and the Pluperfect Subjunctive are rarely used in conversation or in informal writing.

In most cases where the tense sequence might require them, their use should be avoided (1) by recasting or rephrasing the construction, (2) by using an infinitive construction under certain conditions or (3) even by violating the grammatical rules and using a present or a perfect subjunctive.

The following examples illustrate these suggestions:

Subjunctive	*Indicative*
Il voulait que nous restassions. He wanted us to stay.	**Il voulait nous faire rester.**
Je les ai vus avant qu'ils fussent partis. I saw them before they had left.	**Je les ai vus avant leur départ.**
Nous étions enchantés qu'ils pussent venir. We were delighted that they were able to come.	**Nous étions enchantés de ce qu'ils pouvaient venir.**
Il fallait que nous fissions une promenade avec eux. We had to take a walk with them.	**Nous avons dû faire une promenade avec eux.**

338. The Infinitive for the Subjunctive

1. Certain verbs and verbal phrases which require the subjunctive may under certain conditions be construed with an infinitive.

Among such are:

Followed by the Subjunctive	Followed by an Infinitive
il faut que	**il faut**
il est nécessaire que	**il est nécessaire de**
il est possible que	**il est possible de**

Observation: The subjunctive must be used if the subject of the verb in the dependent clause is to be emphasized:

Il faut que je parte.	I must leave.
Il faut partir.	One (I, you, etc.) must leave.
Il est nécessaire qu'il le fasse.	He must do it.
Il est nécessaire de le faire.	One (I, you, etc.) must do it.

2. When the subjects of the verbs in the principal and the dependent clauses are the same, the infinitive construction is used with many verbs.

Among such are:

vouloir
regretter de
craindre de, etc.

Il veut que vous veniez nous voir.	He wants you to come and see us.
But: **Il voulait venir nous voir.**	He wanted to come and see us.
Nous regrettons qu'il ait fait cela.	We regret he has done that.
But: **Il regrette de l'avoir fait.**	He regrets having done it.

3. Whether the subjects are the same in the two clauses or not, the infinitive construction is frequently used with:

permettre de
dire de, etc.

Je permets que vous restiez.	I allow you to stay.
But: **Il m'a permis de rester.**	He allowed me to stay.
Dites-lui qu'il revienne demain.	Tell him to come back tomorrow.
But: **Dites-lui de revenir demain.**	Tell him to come back tomorrow.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Il est né juste avant que la guerre éclatât. 2. Son père voulait qu'il devînt homme d'état, qu'il s'intéressât aux affaires publiques et qu'il se fît une carrière politique. 3. Mais le jeune homme n'en voulait pas; il avait ses idées à lui. 4. Il voulait étudier le droit et dans ce but, il alla en Allemagne. 5. Avant qu'il partît, son père lui

donna de bons conseils. 6. Il lui dit de perséverer dans tout ce qu'il entreprendrait. 7. Il lui dit aussi de n'oublier jamais d'être toujours honnête homme et de se conduire en homme du monde envers tous ceux qu'il rencontrerait. 8. Avant qu'il eût passé trois mois en Allemagne, il s'aperçut qu'il ne voulait pas se faire avocat. 9. Il revint aux États-Unis. 10. Il regretta qu'il se fût trompé de carrière et qu'il n'eût pas encore commencé son éducation. 11. Son père venait d'être nommé ambassadeur à Londres. 12. Il dit à son fils qu'il voulait qu'il l'y accompagnât comme secrétaire. 13. Et c'est là que, sans qu'il le sût, il commença cette éducation si longtemps remise.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Quand est-ce qu'il est né? 2. Qu'est-ce que son père voulait qu'il fît? 3. Où est-il allé? 4. Qu'est-ce que son père lui a dit avant son départ? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un honnête homme? 6. Pourquoi est-il revenu aux États-Unis? 7. Où est-il allé après? 8. Pourquoi? 9. Où a-t-il enfin commencé son éducation?

C. Oral Exercise

(Avoid the use of the Imperfect Subjunctive where possible.)

1. He wanted me to go with him. 2. He was afraid that you were sick. 3. They would not permit him to see her. 4. He regrets that you were not here. 5. I shall tell him that he must stay with you. 6. Although they have gone away, I am sure that they will want you to remain. 7. He did not do it, for fear that you would not be pleased with it. 8. We had to be at the station early. 9. Allow me to tell you that you are wrong. 10. In order that he could go with you, I had to stay home. 11. He left without our knowing it. 12. They did not see him before he left. 13. They will have to send them to you after you have gone. 14. Did they want us to stay here until they returned? 15. We are afraid they may not have finished before tomorrow. 16. He does not wish her to see him. 17. They would like very much for you to go with them. 18. She was very glad that you had not gone away. 19. It was not possible for me to go yesterday. 20. If I had not seen him, I would have told you to give it to him. 21. Do you not wish them to go with you? 22. They

were very sorry that they were not able to go. 23. That was the best book that I had ever read. 24. I will have to send them to him tomorrow, in order that he may get them before he leaves.

D. Oral Exercise

Rephrase the Reading Exercise so as to avoid all Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctives.

E. Written Exercise

1. My cousin was born in the United States. 2. His father was a lawyer and he wanted his son to be a lawyer too. 3. I told him that I did not think that he would be interested in the study of the law. 4. After four years at the University, his father allowed him to go to Europe, because he wished him to become acquainted with foreign countries. 5. He spent a year there and asked his father to allow him to stay longer. 6. But his father thought he ought to be choosing a career and preparing himself for it. 7. He came back to the United States and for a while he worked in his father's office. 8. He was still looking for a career which would suit him. 9. He knew he would have to work in his father's office until he chose one. 10. After he had been with his father for nearly a year, he decided that he wanted to travel and write. 11. His father did not want him to do this at first. 12. He still regretted very much that his son did not like the law, but finally he let him do what he wanted. 13. Although he was not a rich man, he told his son he could spend a year traveling and writing. 14. My cousin went first to England. 15. There he became very much interested in public affairs and wrote articles for the newspapers. 16. All this happened ten years ago. 17. At present, my cousin is one of the editors of a well known newspaper. 18. He takes charge of all the editorials on foreign affairs and goes to Europe nearly every summer. 19. Although his father regrets that he is not a lawyer, he is very proud of him.

LESSON LIV

VOCABULARY

l'achat [aʃa], *m.*, the purchase.
l'acte [akt], *m.*, the act.
annoncer [anɔ̃se], to announce.
l'avant-scène [avɑ̃ sɛːn], *f.*, the box (*in a theatre near the stage*).
la baignoire [bɛɲwaːr], the box (*in a theatre just back of the* **avant-scène**).
le ballet [balɛ], the ballet.
conseiller [kɔ̃seje], (**de** + *inf.*), to advise.
considérable [kɔ̃siderabl], *adj.*, considerable.
le couloir [kulwaːr], the corridor, lobby.
la coutume [kutym], the custom.
l'état [eta], *m.*, the state.
frapper [frape], to strike, knock.
fréquenter [frekɑ̃te], to frequent.
la galerie [galri], the gallery.
le genre [ʒɑ̃ːr], the kind, gender.
la glace [glas], the ice (*ice cream*).
la loge [lɔːʒ], the box (*theatre*).
l'opéra [ɔpera], *m.*, the opera.
le paradis [paradi], Paradise, the 'coop' (*upper gallery in a theatre*).
le parterre [partɛːr], the pit (*space back of orchestra seats in a theatre*).
populaire [pɔpylɛːr], *adj.*, popular.
le rafraîchissement [rafrɛʃismɑ̃], the refreshment.
la représentation [rəprezɑ̃tasjɔ̃], the performance, representation.
le rez-de-chaussée [redʃose], the ground-floor.
sinon [sinɔ̃], *conj.*, if not.
subventionner [sybvɑ̃sjɔne], to subvention, subsidize.
surplomber [syrplɔ̃be], to overhang.
se taire [sə tɛːr], to be silent, keep still.
théâtral [teatral], *adj.*, theatrical.

IDIOMS

au-dessus de [odsy də], over, above
le beau monde [lə bo mɔ̃d], society
quoi qu'il en soit [kwa kil ɑ̃ swa], however that may be
fauteuil d'orchestre [fotœːj dɔrkɛstr], orchestra seat

Indefinite Relatives

339. As Pronoun:

qui que or **qui que ce soit** { **qui** / **que** } 'whoever,' 'whoever it is that'

Qui que vous soyez, ne dites pas cela. Whoever you are, do not say that.

Qui que ce soit qui dise cela, il a tort.	Whoever it is that says that, is wrong.
Qui que ce soit que vous ayez vu, qu'il ne vienne pas ici.	Whoever it is that you have seen, let him not come here.

quoi que or **quoi que ce soit que,** 'whatever,' 'whatever it is that'

Quoi que vous fassiez, ne le faites pas ici.	Whatever you do, do not do it here.
Quoi que ce soit que dise votre frère, ne le répétez pas.	Whatever it is that your brother says, do not repeat it.

340. As Adjective:

1. With verb **être.**

quel / quels / quelle / quelles **que** *subj. / of / verb / être* *noun:* 'whatever' + *noun* + *verb* 'to be'

Quelles que soient vos raisons, vous ne devriez pas faire cela.	Whatever your reasons may be, you ought not to do that.
Quelle que soit votre idée, suivez-la.	Whatever your idea is, follow it.

2. With other verbs.

quelque (quelques) + *noun* + **que** + *subj. of verb:* 'whatever' + *noun* + *verb:*

Quelques raisons que vous ayez, je crois que vous avez tort.	Whatever reasons you have, I believe you are wrong.

341. As Adverb:

quelque *adj.* or *adv.* + **que** + *subj. of verb:* 'however' + *adj.* or *adv.* + *verb.*

Quelque malade qu'il soit, il sera ici.	However sick he is, he will be here.
Quelque mal qu'il parle français, il se fait comprendre.	However badly he speaks French, he makes himself understood.

Faire with an Infinitive

342. **Faire** + *infinitive* in French has the meaning of 'cause,' 'have,' 'make' and an infinitive or a past participle in English.

Je le ferai chanter.	I shall have him sing *or* I shall have it sung.

343. If **faire** and the infinitive have only one object between them, a pronoun object precedes **faire** and a noun object follows the infinitive.

Je les fais venir.	I have them come.
J'ai fait venir Jean.	I had John come.

344. If both **faire** and the infinitive have objects, the pronoun objects precede **faire** and the noun objects follow the infinitive. The object of **faire** in this case, whether it is a noun or a pronoun, must be indirect in form.

Je les lui ai fait traduire.	I had him translate them.
J'ai fait descendre les malles au facteur.	I had the porter bring down the trunks.

A. Reading Exercise

1. Qui que vous soyez, vous ne manquerez pas d'assister à quelques unes des nombreuses représentations théâtrales qui auront lieu pendant votre séjour à Paris. 2. Vous aurez un choix considérable de théâtres de tous les genres. 3. L'Opéra, l'Opéra Comique, le Théâtre Français et l'Odéon sont tous subventionnés par l'État, et quelque occupé que vous soyez, vous assisterez certainement à une représentation dans chacun de ces quatre théâtres importants. 4. Vous ferez prendre vos billets bien en avance, afin d'avoir de bonnes places. 5. Si vous remettez l'achat de vos billets jusqu'au soir de la représentation que vous voulez voir, quoi que vous fassiez, vous aurez beaucoup de difficulté à en trouver, car les théâtres de Paris sont très fréquentés. 6. Le prix d'entrée varie beaucoup selon les théâtres et selon les places. 7. Les places du rez-de-chaussée sont divisées généralement en fauteuils d'orchestre, avant-scènes, baignoires et parterre. 8. Les baignoires et les avant-scènes sont des loges; celles-ci, tout près de la scène et celles-là, de chaque côté derrière les avant-scènes. 9. Le parterre est situé derrière les fauteuils d'orchestre. 10. Quelque pauvre que vous soyez, vous pourrez toujours trouver une place selon vos moyens, sinon au parterre au moins à la galerie, qui surplombe les balcons et qu'on appelle le paradis ou le poulailler. 11. Pour annoncer le commencement d'une pièce, on frappe trois coups. 12. Alors le rideau se lève et la pièce commence.

Le Théâtre Français

13. Après chaque acte le rideau tombe et pendant l'entr'acte, presque tout le monde se promène dans les couloirs ou au foyer. 14. Ce n'est pas la coutume en France de faire de la musique pendant les entr'actes. 15. Vous trouverez les entr'actes beaucoup plus longs que chez nous. 16. Cela vous donne l'occasion de vous reposer, de causer avec des amis, de fumer ou de vous faire servir une glace ou d'autres rafraîchissements. 17. Au foyer de l'Opéra surtout vous verrez tout le beau monde de Paris.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Nommez-moi les quatre théâtres à Paris qui sont subventionnés par l'État? 2. Pourquoi faut-il prendre les billets en avance? 3. Est-ce que le prix d'entrée est le même pour tous les théâtres? 4. Selon quoi varie-t-il? 5. Nommez quelques sortes de places. 6. Qu'est-ce que c'est que les baignoires et les avant-scènes? 7. Où se trouve le poulailler? 8. Que fait-on pendant l'entr'acte? 9. Est-ce que les entr'actes sont plus courts que chez nous? 10. Où se promène-t-on pendant l'entr'acte? 11. Que voit-on dans les couloirs de l'Opéra?

C. Oral Exercise

1. Whatever reasons you may have, do not do it. 2. Do not say anything to any one at all. 3. I had him get the tickets. 4. I had him get them. 5. Have him write them. 6. We shall have them see it. 7. Make him keep still. 8. The professor had the pupil read the book. 9. Whatever my brother may do, it is all the same to me. 10. However poor he may be, I like him. 11. Will you have this book sent to me at the hotel? 12. Have him sit down. 13. We should always be polite with whomever we meet. 14. I had John sing the song. 15. Be that as it may, I shall not stay here. 16. I had it sent to you at Paris. 17. Whatever happens, do not be afraid. 18. However rich he is, he is honest. 19. I shall have him sit down here when he comes. 20. I had my friend translate them. 21. Whatever you may think of it, I am sure you are mistaken. 22. Whatever be his excuses, I shall not believe them. 23. I shall not do anything at all. 24. However great is his success, he will always be modest. 25. We shall have John sing these songs when he comes. 26. Have him sing them.

D. Written Exercise

1. Among all the theatres in Paris it is possible to see or hear any kind of performance that you wish. 2. At the Opéra you can hear all the classical operas and the modern ones too. 3. At the Odéon or the Théâtre Français a classical piece is given two or three times a week. 4. And as in every city nowadays, there are many moving picture theatres. 5. The prices of seats in the theatres vary according to the kind of seat that you wish. 6. At the Odéon, for example, you can pay from eight or ten francs in the 'coop' to twenty-five or thirty for orchestra seats. 7. At the Opéra you pay much more than that. 8. But however short your stay in Paris may be, do not fail to see a performance at the Opéra. 9. There you will see all Paris society which promenades in the foyer between the acts. 10. And too, it is worth while to see the building, which is magnificent. 11. The stage of the Opéra is very large and the ballets that are given there are finer than those of any other theatre in the world. 12. This can be easily seen in an opera like *Faust*, which they give a great deal. 13. It is one of the most popular of the operas given in Paris and there are always a lot of people who go to hear it. 14. That is why I advise you to get your tickets beforehand. 15. Or at least have them gotten, if you have not the time to do so yourself. 16. It is never very pleasant to stand in line for an hour or two and you would have to get there a long time before the beginning of the performance. 17. The night I went to the opera, I saw all the society of Paris in the foyer. 18. Whatever you do in Paris, be sure that you go to the Opéra at least once.

LESSON LV

VOCABULARY

accomplir (2) [akɔ̃pliːr], to accomplish.
l'amour [amuːr], *m.*, the love.
le berceau [bɛrso], the cradle.
le caractère [karaktɛːr], the character.
la civilisation [sivilizɑsjɔ̃], the civilization.
le coteau [kɔto], the hill.
la distraction [distraksjɔ̃], the distraction.
le doute [dut], the doubt.

doux [du], *adj.*, (*f.*, **douce** [dus]), sweet, gentle, mild.
l'enthousiasme [ātuzjasm], *m.*, the enthusiasm.
l'excursion [ɛkskyrsjɔ̃], *f.*, the excursion.
la géographie [ʒeɔgrafi], the geography.
hospitalier [ɔspitalje], *adj.*, hospitable.
la patrie [patri], the fatherland, country.
peupler [pœple], to people.
la plaine [plɛn], the plain.
poursuivre [pursqi:vr], to pursue, follow.
la prononciation [prɔnɔ̃sjɑsjɔ̃], the pronunciation.
la province [prɔvē:s], the province.
pur [py:r], *adj.*, pure.
le renseignement [rāsɛɲmā], the information (*usually used in the plural*).
la rose [ro:z], the rose.
sympathique [sẽpatik], *adj.*, sympathetic, congenial.
le Tourangeau [turāʒo], (*f.*, **Tourangelle** [turāʒɛl]), person from Touraine.
le vallon [valɔ̃], the valley.
verdoyant [vɛrdwajā], *adj.*, verdant, green.
la vigne [viɲ], the vine (*grape vine*).

Idioms

il s'agit de [il saʒi də], it is a question of, the point is
enthousiaste de [ātuzjast də], enthusiastic about

The Object of Transitive Verbs

345. A transitive verb takes but one object. Other object nouns or pronouns must be construed as indirect.

J'ai donné le livre à Jean. I gave John the book.
Il m'a dit de rester ici. He told me to stay here.

Note. — **de rester ici** is direct object.

346. Some verbs which are transitive in English require **de** in French. Such are:

jouir de, 'to enjoy' **se souvenir de,** 'to remember'
se servir de, 'to use'

Nous avons beaucoup joui de notre soirée. We enjoyed our evening very much.
Il s'est servi de mon livre. He used my book.
Vous souvenez-vous de cette histoire? Do you remember that story?

347. Some verbs which are transitive in English require **à** in French. Such are:

convenir à, 'to suit,' 'become'	**plaire à,** 'to please'
obéir à, 'to obey'	**pardonner à,** 'to pardon'

Il obéit toujours à ses parents.	He always obeys his parents.
Ce chapeau-là ne lui convient pas.	That hat does not suit (become) her.
Il tâche toujours de plaire à tout le monde.	He always tries to please everybody.
Je lui pardonnerai ses fautes.	I shall pardon him his faults.

348. On the other hand, a verb transitive in French frequently requires a preposition in English. Such are:

chercher, 'to look for'	**attendre,** 'to wait for'
écouter, 'to listen to'	**regarder,** 'to look at'
payer, 'to pay for'	

J'ai payé le livre à Jean.	I paid John for the book.
Que cherchez-vous?	What are you looking for?
Écoutez-moi.	Listen to me.
Je l'attendrai ici.	I shall wait for him here.
Regardez vos livres.	Look at your books.

349. Many verbs take prepositions different from those required by the corresponding English verbs. Such are:

remercier de, 'to thank for'	**penser à,** 'to think of'
demander à, 'to ask from (for)'	**profiter de,** 'to profit by,' 'make the most of'

Je vous remercie de votre bonté.	I thank you for your kindness.
Ils pensaient à leur voyage.	They were thinking of their trip.
Je vais profiter de mon séjour.	I am going to profit by my stay.

A. Reading Exercise

Mon cher ami:

Vous me demandez des renseignements sur les études qu'on peut poursuivre en France pendant les vacances. 2. Comme vous le savez sans doute, beaucoup d'universités ont organisé des cours d'été pour les étrangers. 3. Il y a des cours de ce genre à Paris, à

Tours, à Strasbourg et dans d'autres villes encore. 4. Ces cours sont partout presque les mêmes: cours de prononciation, de grammaire, d'histoire, de géographie et de civilisation. 5. Ils sont toujours accompagnés de conférences données par les professeurs. 6. Par conséquent, en choisissant entre eux, la seule question qui se pose est celle-ci: quelle partie de la France aimeriez-vous mieux connaître? Est-ce Paris? Est-ce la Touraine? 7. Vous n'avez qu'à obéir à votre goût personnel. 8. Cependant, à moins que vous n'ayez une bonne connaissance du français, je ne vous conseillerais pas d'aller à Paris. 9. On y trouve toujours beaucoup de touristes et même trop de distractions pour celui qui veut se perfectionner en français et avoir l'occasion de ne parler que français. 10. Vous ferez bien d'aller à Tours, sur les bords de la Loire, pas trop loin de Paris, où vous trouverez des gens hospitaliers, un milieu sympathique et un français très pur. 11. Dans ce berceau de la Renaissance, dans ce pays où l'on respire un air pur dans des plaines verdoyantes vous trouverez des gens qui sont simples comme leur vie et doux comme l'air qu'ils respirent. 12. Là, vous trouverez des vallons peuplés de jolies maisons blanches, des coteaux couverts de vignes, de vieux murs, des jardins de roses. 13. Il semble que dans leur amour d'une aussi belle patrie, seule province de France que n'occupa jamais l'étranger, les Tourangeaux n'aient pas voulu perdre le moindre espace de leur terrain. 14. Il faut pardonner à mon enthousiasme. 15. Mais la première fois que je suis arrivé en France j'ai cherché partout pour trouver le lieu où je pourrais apprendre à connaître le mieux le caractère français, ce caractère qui nous a fait aimer la France. 16. Comme moi, vous trouverez tout cela dans la Touraine, j'en suis sûr.

Votre dévoué,

Jean.

B. Conversation Exercise

1. Quels renseignements est-ce que Jean donne dans cette lettre? 2. Est-il possible de poursuivre des cours d'été en France? 3. Où? 4. Quel est le caractère de ces cours? 5. Vaut-il mieux aller à Paris? 6. Pourquoi non? 7. Où se trouve Tours? 8. Est-il loin de Paris? 9. Quel est le caractère des Tourangeaux? 10. Est-ce que leur pays est beau? 11. Pourquoi est-ce que Jean est enthousiaste de la Touraine?

C. Oral Exercise

1. One ought always to obey one's parents. 2. I always try to please them. 3. What are you looking for? 4. How long have you been waiting for him? 5. Look at that picture, it is beautiful. 6. Did you enjoy your vacation in France? 7. How much did you pay for that hat? 8. I paid only five dollars for it. 9. Although you give them to me, I shall not use them. 10. Do you remember him? 11. No, but I remember his brother very well. 12. Do not use them. 13. Pardon him his faults. 14. Wait for me until I return. 15. Does that suit your sister? 16. I was thinking of my trip to Europe. 17. What do you think of that story? 18. I do not remember it. 19. Whom did you pay for the room? 20. I paid the maid for it. 21. That does not please him. 22. I shall enjoy my day very much, I am sure. 23. Use it, if you wish to do so. 24. I shall thank him for it, when he returns. 25. Do not fail to wait for me. 26. If you do not come, I shall look for you at John's. 27. I shall always remember that story (*two ways*). 28. Whatever he does, he will always please his parents. 29. He is busy now with his affairs. 30. Try to pardon him what he has done. 31. We think a good deal of that young man. 32. I shall make use of your advice as always. 33. Have a good time. 34. Have him come to this room.

D. Written Exercises

My dear friend:

I was very glad to receive your letter yesterday about summer courses at the French universities. 2. As you know, I wish to go to France this summer and I wish to learn all I can during my stay there. 3. I shall be there only three months, but I believe, if I arrange all my plans beforehand, that I shall be able to accomplish a great deal even in that time. 4. What you say about Paris is very interesting and it is exactly the sort of information that I want. 5. I had been intending to go there for the three months, but I shall not do so now. 6. I thought, as many Americans think, that Paris is the only place to go. 7. But I see now, since I have received your letter, that I would have made a mistake, if I had gone there. 8. You are certainly very enthusiastic about Tours. 9. I am going to write immediately to the University of Tours and ask for information about

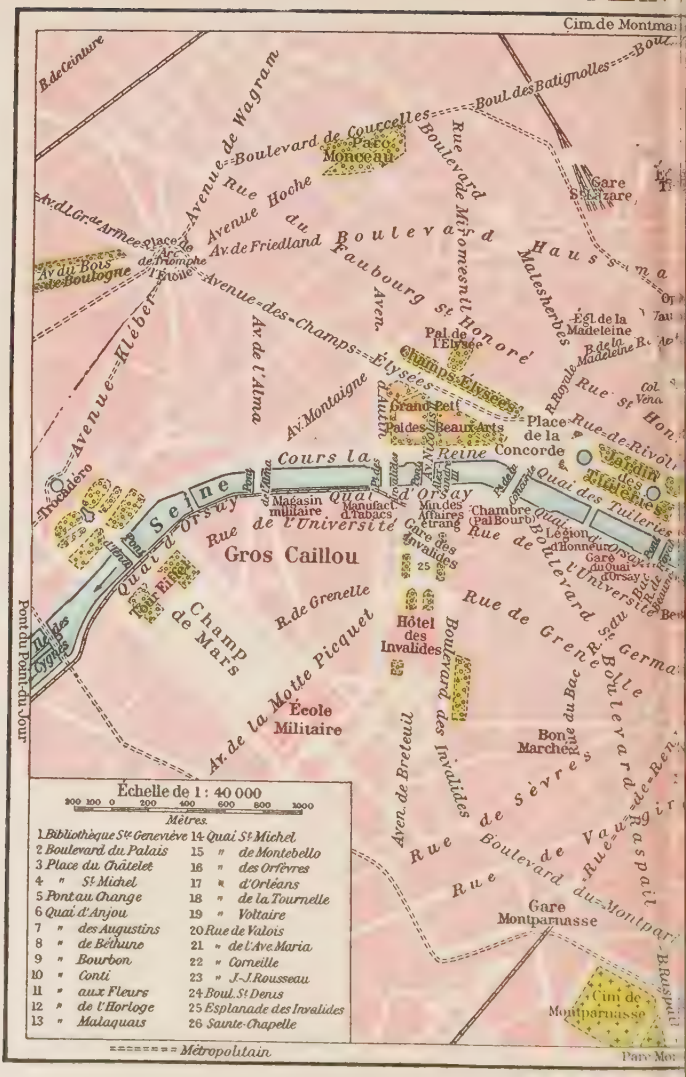
Tours

the courses. 10. Then I shall select carefully those which I want to pursue. 11. I shall probably also ask them to find me a room in a good pension, where I shall hear only French. 12. On thinking about it, I remember that Tours is in the center of the Châteaux country. 13. I hope I shall have the opportunity to make excursions in order to see all the châteaux. 14. Of course, I wish to see Paris too. 15. But after a month or two in Tours, I shall enjoy more a few weeks in Paris. 16. I certainly thank you very much for your kindness towards me. Write me soon again.

Your devoted friend,

Charles.

PLAN



Cim. de Montma
B. de Ceinture
Avenue de Wagram
Boulevard de Courcelles
Boul. des Batignolles
Parc Monceau
Rue Boulevard Miromesnil
Rue Hoche
Av. de Friedland
Av. du Bois de Boulogne
Av. d. l. Gr. Armée
Place de l'Étoile
Arc de Triomphe
Boulevard du Faubourg St Honoré
Gare St Lazare
Haussmann
Malesherbes
Église de la Madeleine
Av. de l'Alma
Avenue Kléber
Avenue des Champs Élysées
Champs Élysées
Pal. de l'Élysée
Grand Petit Palais
Beaux Arts
Av. Montaigne
Place de la Concorde
Rue de Rivoli
Jardin des Tuileries
Quai des Tuileries
Cours la Reine
Quai d'Orsay
Seine
Trocadéro
Pont d'Iéna
Magasin militaire
Manufact. d'Tabacs
Min. des Affaires étrang.
Chambre (Pal. Bourb.)
Rue de l'Université
Gros Caillou
Gare des Invalides
Légion d'Honneur
Gare du Quai d'Orsay
Tour Eiffel
Champ de Mars
Pont du Pont-du-Jour
Ile des Cygnes
R. de Grenelle
Hôtel des Invalides
Rue de Grenelle
Boulevard des Invalides
Av. de la Motte Picquet
École Militaire
Av. de Breteuil
Bon Marché
Rue de Sèvres
Rue du Bac
Boulevard Raspail
Rue de Vaugirard
Gare Montparnasse
Boulevard du Montparn.
Cim. de Montparnasse
Parc Mo
Échelle de 1 : 40 000
200 100 0 200 400 600 800 1000
Mètres.
1 Bibliothèque Ste Geneviève
2 Boulevard du Palais
3 Place du Châtelet
4 " St Michel
5 Pont au Change
6 Quai d'Anjou
7 " des Augustins
8 " de Béthune
9 " Bourbon
10 " Conti
11 " aux Fleurs
12 " de l'Horloge
13 " Malaquais
14 Quai St Michel
15 " de Montebello
16 " des Orfèvres
17 " d'Orléans
18 " de la Tournelle
19 " Voltaire
20 Rue de Valois
21 " de l'Ave Maria
22 " Corneille
23 " J.-J. Rousseau
24 Boul. St Denis
25 Esplanade des Invalides
26 Sainte-Chapelle
Métropolitain

PARIS

GOLDSCHMIDT & HAMPEL N.Y.

APPENDIX

A FEW NOTES ON EPISTOLARY USAGE

350. The Envelope:

Monsieur Émile Gougis,

Professeur,[1]

19 bis,[2] **Boulevard Port-Royal,**
Paris, France.

Messieurs Firmin-Didot et Cie., [3]
56, Rue Jacob,
Paris, France.

1. The following directions are often included on envelopes:

Aux soins de (*or* **Chez**), 'In care of.'
Imprimés, 'Printed Matter.'
Recommandée (*or* **Chargée**), 'Registered.'
Urgent (*or* **Pressé**), 'Urgent' (*or* 'Important').
Faire suivre, 'Please forward.'
E. V. (= **En Ville**), 'Local (City).'
Poste Restante, 'To be called for.'

351. The Date:

Paris, le 1er [4] **mars, 19—**
Londres, le 3 [4] **avril, 19—**

352. The Salutation.

1. Familiar Forms:

(Ma) chère Marie,	**(Mon) cher ami,**
(Mon) cher Jean,	**(Ma) chère amie,** etc.

[1] Titles, if used, are placed after the noun.
[2] Equivalent to our half numbers.
[3] Abbreviation for **compagnie**, 'company.'
[4] With the exception of 1er, the cardinal numbers are used in dates. Cf. § 278.

2. Less familiar:

Cher [1] **Monsieur,**
Chère [1] **Madame (Mademoiselle),** etc.

3. Formal:

Monsieur,
Madame (Mademoiselle),
Messieurs, [2]
Mesdames (Mesdemoiselles), etc.

353. The Beginning.

1. Familiar Forms:

Je viens de recevoir votre aimable lettre du 10 ct [3] **et je m'empresse** [4] **d'y répondre.**
Votre bonne lettre du 21 passé m'a fait un grand plaisir, etc.

2. Formal or business:

Répondant (en réponse) à	
Nous vous accusons réception [5] **de**	**votre lettre du . . .**
Nous sommes en possession de	**votre honorée** [6] **du . . .**
Nous avons sous les yeux	**votre estimée** [7] **du . . .**
Nous avons bien reçu	

Nous avons l'honneur de vous { **annoncer** / **informer** / **aviser** [8] }

[1] **Mon cher monsieur** and **ma chère madame** are not used in French.
[2] Often used to address business firms. Sometimes merely the firm name is used.
[3] Abbreviation for **courant,** 'current (month).'
[4] 'I hasten.'
[5] 'We acknowledge the receipt.'
[6] 'Your honored favor.'
[7] 'Your esteemed favor.'
[8] 'To notify.'

354. Remembrances:

Mes respects (compliments) à	**Madame votre mère,**
Bien des choses de ma part à	**Monsieur votre père,**
Rappelez-moi au bon souvenir de	etc.

355. The Ending.

1. Familiar Forms:

Votre bien dévoué
Tout (*ou* Bien) à vous
Votre ami sincère (fidèle)

2. Less familiar:

Agréez (Veuillez agréer [1]),	Monsieur,	l'assurance	**de ma (notre) parfaite considération.**
Recevez (Veuillez recevoir),	Madame,	l'expression	de ma (notre) considération distinguée.
Veuillez bien accepter,	Messieurs,		de mes (nos) sentiments distingués.
	etc.		de mes (nos) respectueux [2] hommages.

[1] 'To accept,' 'kindly receive.'
[2] 'Respectful.'

REVIEW EXERCISES

(Lessons I to X)

356. On Adjectives

1. Six long lessons. 2. To an old man. 3. Two handsome books. 4. The short lessons are easy. 5. The long lessons are not easy. 6. I have a poor pen. 7. There are some good pupils in the class. 8. John is tall and young. 9. Mary is also tall and she is pretty. 10. The old men are fat. 11. There are not any good chairs here. 12. I sold two to the man. 13. Here are some old chairs. 14. There are some beautiful chairs. 15. I have some French books. 16. Mary has some big books. 17. Have you any old books? 18. Mary is seated behind the desk. 19. There is an old table in the class-room. 20. We have long lessons, but they are easy. 21. There is my former professor.

357. On Verbs

1. Has he the book? 2. We have studied the lessons. 3. They didn't write the sentences. 4. We have finished the lesson. 5. Did the teacher translate the theme? 6. Where are you going? 7. What do you wish? 8. What does John wish to do? 9. Write the sentence. 10. Give me the books. 11. Translate the lesson. 12. Close the books. 13. I do not wish to write. 14. Are there any pupils here? 15. Here are seven books. 16. There are twelve pupils here. 17. He has sold the pen. 18. They are selling the chairs. 19. Sell me the books. 20. Study the lessons. 21. What is she doing? 22. What are they doing? 23. They have been studying their lessons for fifteen minutes. 24. To whom does this notebook belong? 25. This notebook belongs to John. 26. That notebook belongs to Mary. 27. What is that man doing? 28. The pupils do not wish to write those exercises. 29. Who set the table? 30. She is setting the table now.

358. On the Partitive

1. Give me some bread. 2. He has some. 3. She hasn't any. 4. How many pencils have you? 5. I have seven. 6. Mary has

eight. 7. John has many books (*two ways*). 8. He didn't give any books to Mary. 9. I have some good bread. 10. Mary has written some French sentences. 11. John has written six. 12. He has neither pencils nor pens. 13. I am without books. 14. We have enough meat. 15. Give John some bread. 16. There are a lot of students in this class. 17. This child has pretty eyes. 18. Are there many books on the table (*two ways*)?

359. On the Interrogative form

Translate in two ways: 1. Is John here? 2. Where are you? 3. Has the teacher the book? 4. Have John and Mary studied the lessons? 5. Are there any chairs here? 6. What did John sell? 7. Has Mary finished the book? 8. Have we written the sentences? 9. Where are John and Mary going? 10. What do you wish? 11. What does John wish? 12. What do they wish? 13. What is there on the table? 14. Do you wish some? 15. Has the teacher translated the sentence? 16. Have you finished the book? 17. Did John shut the door? 18. Is Mary studying the lesson? 19. Why are you not studying? 20. What are we going to do?

360. General

1. John and Mary are students. 2. John is young and tall; he is not fat. 3. Mary is small and pretty. 4. They are studying French. 5. They have written nine lessons. 6. Their lessons are not long. 7. And they are not easy. 8. The teacher gave John a book and some pencils. 9. He didn't give Mary any. 10. Mary has some books and she also has some pencils and a pen. 11. They are going to write the themes in their notebooks. 12. Now they are in school. 13. The pupils are seated, but the teacher is standing behind his table. 14. He asks John: "Will you go to the board?" 15. And he asks Mary: "Will you translate the lesson?" 16. The pupils go to the board. 17. They do not wish to give their notebooks to the teacher. 18. The sentences are in the notebooks. 19. But they have not finished the lesson. 20. There are long lessons and short lessons in the grammar. 21. They have written nine lessons. 22. There are many sentences in the lessons. 23. There are nine in Mary's lesson. 24. And there are ten in John's lesson. 25. The teacher corrects the

sentences. 26. Mary and John are now seated. 27. They have been seated for ten minutes. 28. The pupils speak to the teacher. 29. Translate (the) sentence nine, if you please. 30. Now they have finished the grammar. 31. On Monday they have (the) lesson eleven.

361. General

1. At what time do we have breakfast? 2. We have breakfast at eight o'clock. 3. On the table there are bread and butter. 4. There is not any coffee on the table. 5. Mary and John don't like coffee. 6. They like milk. 7. Do they have meat? 8. No, they don't have meat for lunch. 9. They have meat and vegetables at dinner. 10. What meal do we have at one o'clock? We have lunch. 11. There are three meals; breakfast, lunch and dinner. 12. Give me some bread, if you please. 13. I do not want any butter. 14. I have some. 15. Will you have some milk? 16. Mary hasn't any. 17. Now Mary and John have finished. 18. They are going to the movies. 19. They don't wish to study now. 20. They have already studied the grammar. 21. They are going to write the sentences. 22. But they wish to go to the movies. 23. Do you like the movies? 24. I am going to translate the French sentences. 25. We have written the themes and translated the sentences. 26. How long have you been here? 27. I have been here for five minutes. 28. Where are you going now? 29. I am going home with my brother. 30. At what time is dinner served?

(Lessons XI to XX)

362. On Reflexive Verbs

1. They went to bed early. 2. This morning, the weather was fine. 3. They got up at seven o'clock. 4. Then, they washed themselves and combed their hair. 5. Why did they hurry to come down stairs? 6. Why did you wake up early? 7. Don't hurry, we have a lot of time. 8. Don't go to bed early. 9. Let's get up; don't let's hurry. 10. Did you have a good time? 11. She didn't have a good time. 12. Have a good time, but don't have too good a time.

363. On Agreement of Past Participle

1. She stayed in the room. 2. We left the city this morning. 3. Where did they go? 4. They were working when their friends arrived. 5. Did she go into the room? 6. The flowers he sent me were beautiful. 7. The pens I gave him are bad. 8. His sister died this morning. 9. They have gone out. 10. She has returned. 11. The books you saw are John's. 12. I didn't give her those flowers. 13. The lessons I wrote are very easy. 14. Have you studied the rules? 15. How many pages have you written?

364. On Pronoun Position

1. Don't give him the books. 2. I have sent them to John. 3. Did he need them? 4. He is going to sell them to his friend. 5. Give the presents to her. 6. Don't buy them; you don't need any. 7. Get dressed; hurry up. 8. He is beginning to write them. 9. What did he say to her? 10. Relate it to us. 11. I saw her in the city. 12. He doesn't wish to sell them now. 13. Let's give them to your mother. 14. Don't let's finish it now. 15. I gave the written lessons to them. 16. Who is going to see them? 17. He gave them to his friend, didn't he? 18. She gave some to her sister. 19. I did not give them anything. 20. We found them on the table.

365. On Verbs

1. What are they doing? 2. What did you see? 3. Do you know how to smoke? 4. Can you not buy some there? 5. He is taking a walk. 6. Tell me how many there are. 7. What do they serve for dinner? 8. Write these sentences on the board. 9. Did he put them in the drawer? 10. Have you translated the compositions? 11. What does he take for breakfast? 12. We were beginning to study when they entered the room. 13. Open the door, please. 14. I used to know how to do that. 15. I thought he was going with you tomorrow. 16. What were they doing when you entered the room? 17. How many days did you spend there? 18. He was twenty years old yesterday. 19. Where are you thinking of passing your vacation? 20. What were they looking for?

366. Idiomatic Phrases

1. He is ashamed to go out. 2. Are they sleepy? No, they are hungry. 3. I am going shopping this morning. 4. How old is she? She is nineteen years old. 5. They are very good in French. 6. She had gone to do some errands. 7. We are right, you are wrong. 8. What kind of weather is it? 9. It is windy and it is also cold. 10. Have you any blotting-paper? 11. They are down town; they are taking a walk. 12. Do you like to go walking? 13. I prefer to stay at home when it is hot. 14. He needs my books in order to study. 15. He has a desire to get up early. 16. The teacher asked us some questions. 17. Do you need these books? 18. I don't need them now. 19. Do you like to go picnicking? 20. They are going to take their overcoats. 21. What time is it? 22. It is nine o'clock. 23. It is warmer in the south in January. 24. Do you like to go horseback riding? 25. I have some letters to write. 26. It is time to begin our work. 27. Have you mailed the letters? 28. They got up early. 29. The teacher asked questions of the whole class. 30. It was my friend whom you saw.

367. General

1. These books are John's; those books are Mary's. 2. What are you doing? 3. Is it hot in this room? 4. No, but we are hot. 5. Horses' eyes are very beautiful, aren't they? 6. We are going to see our uncle this evening. 7. It is very cool here in autumn. 8. In August, we cannot stay in town. 9. It is warmer there than in the country. 10. Do you know that my brother is sick? 11. He went out last night. 12. It was windy. 13. When he came home, he was very cold. 14. Are you going to send him those books? 15. They hurried and came down to the dining-room. 16. He used to study a great deal. 17. Have you seen my books? 18. The books I gave you belong to John. 19. At what time do you get up generally? 20. She said to herself: I cannot study today. 21. They got dressed and then went out. 22. Don't give me any letter-paper; I have enough now. 23. He works very well, but his brother works much better. 24. He speaks French very easily. 25. There were fifteen people in the room. 26. When we left the house, they were studying their lessons. 27. Have you written your exercises? 28. No, but

I have already translated them. 29. I have not been able to find any. 30. I need my books, I cannot sell them to John. 31. We have only an hour. 32. Lunch is served in the dining-room. 33. She left without saying anything. 34. After having studied my lessons, I took a walk. 35. There is nothing interesting here. 36. There were only four of them here. 37. There was nothing to do. 38. Where is your house situated? 39. At the moment when he entered the room, I was talking with some friends.

(Lessons XXI to XXX)

368. On Personal Pronouns

1. I shall not give them any; they have too many now. 2. Will you introduce me to her? 3. Certainly, I thought that you knew her. 4. Do not give us any; give them to her. 5. Did he find any there? 6. Yes, he found some and he is going to send you them. 7. She introduced herself to me. 8. We shall not be able to go there with you. 9. He alone cannot do it. 10. She and I have not yet seen them. 11. It is I who am going to meet them. 12. They will do it themselves. 13. Do not tell me that you have never been there. 14. I shall thank him for it when I see him. 15. Let's try to enjoy our trip. 16. He is going to send them to her. 17. It is he who will do it for you. 18. Don't forget to give me some. 19. He has not given them any. 20. Send them to me, don't send them to her. 21. I shall try to describe it to you. 22. Imagine to yourself that you are in Paris. 23. There will not be any at school. 24. We shall try to find some there. 25. We have not sent them to you, because you already had some.

369. On Verbs

1. When I go there, I shall tell him of it. 2. What were they saying? 3. They wrote us only two letters. 4. We used to know them in Canada. 5. Tell him I shall stay in Paris until the month of August. 6. I did not say anything to him. 7. Have you read this novel? 8. I was reading it when my friends arrived. 9. What has become of them? 10. I just saw her in New York. 11. If they hap-

pen to see us, we shall have to go with them. 12. Do you remember this book? 13. They didn't remember us. 14. He came back last night. 15. He had just returned when we saw you. 16. Don't change your mind now; you must go with them. 17. As soon as he is here, we shall give it to him. 18. I see him every morning when I go to town. 19. They don't know whether they will come or not. 20. It was ten minutes of ten when she arrived. 21. He will have to go now, because he is going to meet her. 22. Will you be able to send them to me? 23. I shall know him if I see him. 24. Will you write me when you have time? 25. My watch is ten minutes slow.

370. On Numerals

1. 22, 33, 44, 55. 2. 21, 32, 43, 54. 3. 31, 41, 51, 61. 4. 71, 82, 93, 102. 5. 72, 81, 91, 101. 6. 69, 79, 89, 99. 7. How many did you find there? 8. I only found sixteen, but there were twenty-three there yesterday. 9. Count by tens from eighteen to ninety-eight. 10. Have you read the novel called "Ninety-Three"?

371. 'To,' 'At,' 'In' with Countries and Cities

1. In Spain. 2. In the United States. 3. In southern France. 4. We are going to New Orleans. 5. Have you ever landed at Havre? 6. I visited Spain and Portugal last summer. 7. He spent last year in Japan. 8. Argentine is situated in South America. 9. He is now in China. 10. China is larger than the United States. 11. Excellent French is spoken in Tourraine. 12. He is going to England, France and Germany. 13. They are now in Portugal. In Mexico; in Canada. 14. New Orleans is in the United States. 15. Tours is in France. 16. Marseille is in southern France. 17. Have you ever visited France or Italy? 18. I have been to Italy; I have never been to France.

372. Idiomatic Phrases

1. Do it in this way, don't do it that way. 2. It was necessary to learn to speak French. 3. I cannot get a round-trip ticket. 4. I shall have to get a one-way ticket. 5. Send us news of yourself. 6. There will not be any. 7. Don't you see that placard which says

"No Smoking"? 8. Two years ago I was in Paris. 9. When will they be back? 10. He used to be very much interested in these things. 11. Do you like to read aloud? 12. I am going to send them to him by parcel post. 13. At first we must have our trunks checked. 14. I shall be here until tomorrow. 15. Do you intend to go to France this summer? 16. Yes, and by the way, do you know any French [people] in Tours? 17. Do you know how to count by tens from twenty to one hundred? 18. I beg you to stay here with us. 19. We can go boating, if you wish. 20. A college friend of mine was coming to pay me a visit. 21. He is not coming now, he has changed his mind. 22. I shall write you before going away. 23. We are going to meet them at half past four. 24. So much the better, I shall be able to accompany you. 25. I am sure that the train will be late. 26. That's all the same to me, I have nothing to do. 27. Do you play cards very often? 28. No, but I play tennis a lot. 29. At quarter of four, she always takes a nap. 30. Instead of staying here alone, I shall go to meet my friend at the station.

373. General

1. It is ten minutes after eight. 2. I will have to go now. 3. At what time do you have to go? 4. We shall have to go early. 5. We are going to be accompanied by some friends. 6. When are the meals served? 7. Lunch is served at noon. 8. That suits me very well, because I am always hungry at noon. 9. Do you remember the men we saw in Paris? 10. How many were there? 11. They will be there at three o'clock sharp. 12. Each one will have a lot to do. 13. It is easy to translate these sentences. 14. Repeat those numbers to me. 15. Do you know a book publisher in Tours? 16. I used to know one, but he is dead now. 17. What are you trying to do? 18. What were they looking at? 19. Are tuxedoes or dress-coats worn at an evening party? 20. Both, but I prefer a tuxedo. 21. Did he answer your letter? 22. Yes, I have just received his letter. 23. He used to have many acquaintances in Havre. 24. We shall continue to study French. 25. Our appartment is situated in the Latin Quarter on the boulevard St. Michel.

(Lessons XXXI to XL)

374. On the Subjunctive

1. Although he can do it very well, I want you to do it. 2. I doubt that he can do it. 3. It is necessary for us to try to do it. 4. I shall stay in order that you can go. 5. He will see you tomorrow, although he is busy now. 6. Before we leave, we must send them to him. 7. She regrets that you are not going with us. 8. They wish us to go to meet her. 9. I am sorry that I can't do it. 10. Do you want me to send her? 11. No, I doubt that she can go. 12. Are you glad that we are bringing him with us? 13. Before we can leave here, we must telephone to our friends. 14. In order that you can finish your work, I shall help you. 15. We are glad that you do not need these books. 16. Does he want you to sell them to us? 17. Although he is sick, I am sure that he will be here. 18. Are you sorry he cannot come? 19. Before we finish, we shall try to tell you what we are doing. 20. They will have to send them to us. 21. It is necessary for you to pass your examinations. 22. I will have to talk to him, so that he may know what I want. 23. He doesn't know yet what I want him to do. 24. They are angry that you are not going to take a walk with them. 25. He doubts that you are trying to study. 26. I regret that they are sick.

375. On the Demonstrative Pronoun

1. I do not know what he was doing. 2. Tell me what will amuse you. 3. Do you like these pictures better than those? 4. Yet, but the ones he gave me are the best. 5. Those who were here are friends of mine. 6. She whom you saw yesterday is my cousin. 7. Her brother is the one whom I introduced to you. 8. These letters and those which arrived last week are from a friend of mine. 9. These books are mine; those which are on the table are John's. 10. Mary's are not here. 11. Do you like this? 12. Yes, but I like that better. 13. John and Mary are cousins; the former is in France, the latter is in England. 14. Those are my friends. 15. Those to whom I gave that book are yours.

376. On the Infinitive with Preposition

1. She prefers to stay here. 2. I shall ask him to go with us. 3. Did you have a good time dancing? 4. They are beginning to work now. 5. He used to be interested in playing cards. 6. When it stops raining, we shall go out. 7. Try to be here tonight. 8. Will you hurry and come down stairs? 9. Tell him to say here. 10. They had forgotten to close the windows. 11. I shall invite them to go with us. 12. He prepared himself to take the examination. 13. I hope he will succeed in finding them. 14. He is going to have to speak French. 15. They finished by giving them to us. 16. He would not allow me to stay in Paris. 17. What do you intend to do? 18. They spent two weeks in visiting the châteaux. 19. If you happen to find it, try to send it to me. 20. Whom have you just seen?

377. On *Ce* and *Il*

1. It is he who told us that. 2. She is a Frenchwoman (*two ways*). 3. It is easy to do that. 4. That is easy to do. 5. They are cousins (*two ways*). 6. He used to be a friend of my brother. 7. Who was it? It was Mary. 8. It is we who gave them to you. 9. They are very good pupils. 10. It is the most interesting of all.

378. On the Possessive Pronoun

1. Where is her pen? 2. Mine is on the table. 3. Have you seen theirs? 4. No, but here is ours. 5. These books are John's, aren't they? 6. No, they are mine (*two ways*). 7. Where are hers? 8. Here are hers. 9. A friend of his will bring us theirs. 10. Mine are French, hers are English.

379. On Orthographic Changes

1. We are beginning to learn to speak French. 2. He was eating when I entered the room. 3. How much do you pay for a good phonograph? 4. I shall pay a good deal for it. 5. Where does one buy tobacco? 6. It is bought at a tobacco shop. 7. I hope he will take me there. 8. What is his name? 9. I shall be up early tomorrow. 10. Why does he throw his book on the table? 11. Shall you use a steel needle? No, I shall use fiber needles. 12. I would

buy it, if I wanted it. 13. I shall hope to be able to go there. 14. Will he not bring you with him? 15. We would use these pens, if they were not bad. 16. I use, pay, throw. 17. He reigns, buys, gets up. 18. They will buy, throw, begin. 19. It is freezing now. 20. It will freeze tomorrow too.

380. On the Conditional

1. I shall write her, if I have time. 2. They would not have sent them to you, if you had not wanted them. 3. If he were to study, he would be able to pass his examinations. 4. They would go with us, if they had time. 5. I shall not leave, if he doesn't come. 6. You would have arrived in time, if the train hadn't been late. 7. They will come, if you telephone to them. 8. If it should rain, we would not go there. 9. He would explain the lesson, if you should ask him to do it. 10. We could dance, if you were to wind the phonograph. 11. If I finished my work, I could go with you. 12. If it should snow, we would go sleighing. 13. I would lend them to you, if I had them. 14. We would have gotten up early, if we had not been so tired. 15. I would not have done that, if I had been there.

381. Idiomatic phrases

1. Our room opens on the courtyard. 2. It is in a boarding-house situated beside the Hôtel Corneille. 3. We are quite well settled there. 4. They could not go with you. They were busy packing their trunks. 5. I shall cease helping you, if you do not work. 6. Do you like to go walking out in the open air? 7. Yes, I go walking every day when it doesn't rain. 8. After an hour in the country, I am ready to eat something. 9. Do you buy your suits ready-made? 10. No, I buy them made to order. 11. Tell him for me that he must come with you. 12. It was moonlight and the country was beautiful. 13. No one is in a good humor before breakfast. 14. As for me, I expect to stay here until eight-thirty. 15. Have you had your examinations? 16. No, I have all my examinations tomorrow. 17. If I pass all my examinations, I shall be quite pleased. 18. I think he will pass his examinations too. 19. I must leave now, as I have to pack my trunk. 20. Where do the meetings take place? 21. I will go with you and show you where they take place. 22. Oh,

that isn't worth while; I can find it. 23. How much did you pay for these presents? 24. Will you wind the phonograph, please? 25. He is bringing two friends with him.

(Lessons XLI to L)

382. On Verbs

1. The furniture is composed of two arm-chairs, a rocking-chair and a davenport. 2. I shall have him come, so that you may know him. 3. The flowers which I had sent were beautiful. 4. I am sorry that I don't know where they live now. 5. I have been waiting for them for a half hour (*three ways*). 6. Had you been here long when they arrived? 7. I had been here only ten minutes. 8. I shall tell him as soon as I see him. 9. As soon as they have arrived, we can go. 10. They ought to go with us; they will have a very good time. 11. He must be sick; he has not arrived and he is never late. 12. He was to go with me to the station. 13. Could he have forgotten to meet you? 14. I would go, but I must be home at six o'clock. 15. I am expecting some friends for dinner. 16. Can you play the piano? No, I am sorry, but I have never learned to play the piano. 17. Although he owes me about fifty francs, that makes no difference to me. 18. He insists on being here when you arrive. 19. I am sorry that he insists on doing that. 20. If you happen to see him, tell him not to come; it isn't worth while. 21. They will begin to work, as soon as they have arrived. 22. Do you know how to go about it? 23. He will tell us how to manage it. 24. I am sorry that he is blaming you; it was my fault. 25. She wants the maid to set the table right away. 26. She ought to do it, for we have dinner at six-thirty sharp. 27. He will know her when he sees her. 28. They did not remember her when they saw her. 29. We shall get our tickets at the station. 30. Don't blame me, I didn't do it.

383. On the Relative and Interrogative Pronouns

1. Those whom we saw here this morning have gone away. 2. Do you see those two men over there? One of them is my cousin.

3. Which one? The one who is smoking a cigar. 4. We are going to the Odéon this evening. 5. Whose book is this? Whose friend is he? 6. The gentleman whose son used to be a college mate of mine is coming to dinner. 7. You know he is my cousin. 8. Whose brother is he? 9. He did not know what I had said. 10. Mme Duval's son, who went to France with me, is very sick. 11. Do you know the house in which they live? 12. The table on which I used to write so many letters has been sold. 13. This is the gentleman with whose son I used to go to the Lycée. 14. What students were you talking about? 15. I was talking about those whom we used to know in 1920. 16. What I can't do now I shall do tomorrow. 17. Those of whom we were thinking have just entered the room. 18. Yesterday I saw those two young ladies whom we were talking about. 19. Whose flowers are these? They are mine. 20. Who gave them to you? A friend of mine. 21. Do you know what you are doing? 22. He hardly knew what to do. 23. What is amusing you now? 24. With whom were you taking a walk when I saw you? 25. With what is he writing, a pencil or a pen? 26. To which one of those men were you talking? 27. With which ones are you going automobiling? 28. The ones with whom I went boating yesterday will be here for dinner. 29. To whom were you talking? What were you talking about? 30. Of which ones (*fem.*) were you speaking? I was speaking of those whom we saw yesterday. 31. What is today's lesson? 32. I don't know which one we shall have. 33. What superb weather! Do you know what I should like to do? 34. The river on which my room opens is very beautiful now. 35. What was in the room which you entered? 36. Who was there? Whose friend is he? 37. He did not know to whom he was speaking. 38. I shall do what I can in order to help you. 39. I didn't know what he wanted.

384. Idiomatic Phrases

1. I shall do it so that you can go there. 2. Along the shore of the lake, many children were playing. 3. When my brother got married, I was the best man. 4. He and my sister-in-law are now on their wedding trip in England. 5. What was he thinking of? 6. He was thinking of what I was going to do. 7. I was thinking of that man I met last night. 8. And I don't think much of him. 9. In fact [the]

more I think of him, [the] less I like him. 10. You ought to think about your work. 11. I am thinking of it. 12. What is the date of today? 13. Today is the twenty-first of July, I think. 14. A week from today, I shall have to leave. 15. I am glad that you are going to have a good time. 16. You look very tired now; that will do you good. 17. They look as if they were enjoying the trip. 18. How many people were there? There were about twenty, I believe. 19. How are you today? Oh, not very well, only pretty good. 20. But that makes no difference, I shall be able to go anyhow. 21. In that case, perhaps it would be better to postpone our trip. 22. No, don't do that, I have been thinking of it for weeks now. 23. How long had they been there when you arrived? 24. They had been there at least a month. 25. As soon as they have arrived, we shall be able to go with you. 26. That necktie you are wearing doesn't go with your shirt. 27. It ought to go with it, I bought it in a department-store and the clerk said it would go with it all right. 28. He ought not to have told you that. 29. Meanwhile, I shall spend an hour reading the newspaper. 30. He speaks French rather well and he is doing all he can to perfect himself. 31. Can you cook? No, but my sister cooks very well. 32. You ought to learn so that you can help her. 33. I am thinking about doing it. 34. The *coup d'état* of 1851 took place on December second. 35. Along the walls there were about ten bookcases. 36. You look as if you were quite happy. 37. In that case, I shall stay here for an hour more. 38. Where did you park the automobile? 39. Will you kindly show me where the linen-department is? 40. He insists on going into that store, although he knows that they haven't his size.

385. General

1. Today is the thirty-first of August. 2. Two weeks from today we shall be in Paris. 3. Louis XIII was king of France from 1610 to 1643. 4. He reigned for thirty-three years. 5. There were about forty people at the party. 6. July 4th, 1776, is an important date in the history of the United States. 7. Each one has much to do. 8. Some must work all day. 9. Nothing interesting happened today. 10. Whoever wants to get married ought to learn something about cooking. 11. Even men ought to know something about it. 12. There were about ten young ladies there. 13. Some were busy

dancing, others were chatting with their friends. 14. John had been there for two hours when I arrived. 15. I stayed only for an hour. 16. Each one had put his exercise-book on the table. 17. In an hour, they had all left the room. 18. It is not very far to St. Cloud; one can go there in three hours. 19. There must have been a hundred persons there. 20. This is the ninth novel that I have read during the vacation. 21. Tomorrow will be the twenty-first of February. 22. I shall be twenty-one years old, as I was born on February twenty-first, 1905. 23. Everyone should think of what he is going to do before doing it. 24. Something unfortunate may prevent their arrival. 25. Somebody told me that there would be eighty people at the lecture. 26. August 23, 1572; November 21, 1694; May 30, 1778.

THE VERB

THE REGULAR VERBS

386. First Conjugation	387. Second Conjugation	388. Third Conjugation

Infinitive Mode

PRESENT

donn **er,** 'to give'	fin **ir,** 'to finish'	vend **re,** 'to sell'

Participles

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

donn **ant,** 'giving'	fin ***iss*** **ant,** 'finishing'	vend **ant,** 'selling'

PAST PARTICIPLE

donn **é,** 'given'	fin **i,** 'finished'	vend **u,** 'sold'

Indicative Mode

PRESENT

'I give,' 'am giving,' etc.	'I finish,' 'am finishing,' etc.	'I sell,' 'am selling,' etc.
je donn **e**	je fin ***i*** **s**	je vend **s**
tu donn **es**	tu fin ***i*** **s**	tu vend **s**
il donn **e**	il fin ***i*** **t**	il vend [1]
nous donn **ons**	nous fin ***iss*** **ons**	nous vend **ons**
vous donn **ez**	vous fin ***iss*** **ez**	vous vend **ez**
ils donn **ent**	ils fin ***iss*** **ent**	ils vend **ent**

[1] The **t** of this ending is missing, but the same is true of all verbs in **-andre -endre, -ardre, -erdre,** and **-ordre.** In fact there are so many of this class of verbs that **vendre** seems a better model for the third conjugation than does **rompre,** 'to break,' which is often given, because it has a **t** in this ending.

Imperfect

'I was giving,' 'used to give,' etc.	'I was finishing,' 'used to finish,' etc.	'I was selling,' 'used to sell,' etc.
je donn **ais**	je fin ***iss*** **ais**	je vend **ais**
tu donn **ais**	tu fin ***iss*** **ais**	tu vend **ais**
il donn **ait**	il fin ***iss*** **ait**	il vend **ait**
nous donn **ions**	nous fin ***iss*** **ions**	nous vend **ions**
vous donn **iez**	vous fin ***iss*** **iez**	vous vend **iez**
ils donn **aient**	ils fin ***iss*** **aient**	ils vend **aient**

Past Definite

'I gave,' etc.	'I finished,' etc.	'I sold,' etc.
je donn **ai**	je fin **is**	je vend **is**
tu donn **as**	tu fin **is**	tu vend **is**
il donn **a**	il fin **it**	il vend **it**
nous donn **âmes**	nous fin **îmes**	nous vend **îmes**
vous donn **âtes**	vous fin **îtes**	vous vend **îtes**
ils donn **èrent**	ils fin **irent**	ils vend **irent**

Future

'I shall give,' etc.	'I shall finish,' etc.	'I shall sell,' etc.
je donner **ai**	je finir **ai**	je vendr **ai**
tu donner **as**	tu finir **as**	tu vendr **as**
il donner **a**	il finir **a**	il vendr **a**
nous donner **ons**	nous finir **ons**	nous vendr **ons**
vous donner **ez**	vous finir **ez**	vous vendr **ez**
ils donner **ont**	ils finir **ont**	ils vendr **ont**

Conditional

'I should give,' etc.	'I should finish,' etc.	'I should sell,' etc.
je donner **ais**	je finir **ais**	je vendr **ais**
tu donner **ais**	tu finir **ais**	tu vendr **ais**
il donner **ait**	il finir **ait**	il vendr **ait**
nous donner **ions**	nous finir **ions**	nous vendr **ions**
vous donner **iez**	vous finir **iez**	vous vendr **iez**
ils donner **aient**	ils finir **aient**	ils vendr **aient**

Subjunctive Mode

Present

'(That) I (may) give,' etc.	'(That) I (may) finish,' etc.	'(That)I (may) sell,' etc.
(que) je donn **e**	(que) je fin ***iss*** **e**	(que) je vend **e**
(que) tu donn **es**	(que) tu fin ***iss*** **es**	(que tu vend **es**
(qu')il donn **e**	(qu')il fin ***iss*** **e**	(qu')il vend **e**
(que) nous donn **ions**	(que) nous fin ***iss*** **ions**	(que) nous vend **ions**
(que) vous donn **iez**	(que) vous fin ***iss*** **iez**	(que) vous vend **iez**
(qu')ils donn **ent**	(qu')ils fin ***iss*** **ent**	(qu')ils vend **ent**

Imperfect

'(That) I (might) give,' etc.	'(That) I (might) finish,' etc.	'(That) I (might) sell,' etc.
(que) je donn **asse**	(que) je fin **isse**	(que) je vend **isse**
(que) tu donn **asses**	(que) tu fin **isses**	(que) tu vend **isses**
(qu')il donn **ât**	(qu')il fin **ît**	(qu')il vend **ît**
(que) nous donn **assions**	(que) nous fin **issions**	(que) nous vend **issions**
(que) vous donn **assiez**	(que) vous fin **issiez**	(que) vous vend **issiez**
(qu')ils donn **assent**	(qu')ils fin **issent**	(qu')ils vend **issent**

Imperative Mode

Present

'Give,' etc	'Finish,' etc.	'Sell,' etc.
donn **e** [1]	fin ***i*** **s**	vend **s**
donn **ons**	fin ***iss*** **ons**	vend **ons**
donn **ez**	fin ***iss*** **ez**	vend **ez**

[1] This form becomes 'donn **es**' when followed by **-y** or **-en.**

AUXILIARY VERBS

389. Avoir (*aux.* avoir). 390. Être (*aux.* avoir).

Infinitive

PRESENT

avoir, 'to have' être, 'to be'

Participles

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

ayant, 'having' étant, 'being'

PAST PARTICIPLE

eu, 'had' été, 'been'

Indicative

PRESENT

'I have,' 'am having,' etc.		'I am,' 'am being,' etc.	
j'ai	nous avons	je suis	nous sommes
tu as	vous avez	tu es	vous êtes
il a	ils ont	il est	ils sont

IMPERFECT

'I had,' 'was having,' etc.		'I was,' 'was being,' etc.	
j'avais	nous avions	j'étais	nous étions
tu avais	vous aviez	tu étais	vous étiez
il avait	ils avaient	il était	ils étaient

PAST DEFINITE

'I had,' etc.		'I was,' etc.	
j'eus	nous eûmes	je fus	nous fûmes
tu eus	vous eûtes	tu fus	vous fûtes
il eut	ils eurent	il fut	ils furent

FUTURE

'I shall have,' etc.		'I shall be,' etc.	
j'aurai	nous aurons	je serai	nous serons
tu auras	vous aurez	tu seras	vous serez
il aura	ils auront	ils sera	ils seront

CONDITIONAL

'I should have,' etc.		'I should be,' etc.	
j'aurais	nous aurions	je serais	nous serions
tu aurais	vous auriez	tu serais	vous seriez
il aurait	ils auraient	il serait	ils seraient

Subjunctive

PRESENT

'(That) I (may) have,' etc.		'(That) I (may) be,' etc.	
(que) j'aie	(que) nous ayons	(que) je sois	(que) nous soyons
(que) tu aies	(que) vous ayez	(que) tu sois	(que) vous soyez
(qu')il ait	(qu')ils aient	(qu')il soit	(qu')ils soient

IMPERFECT

'(That) I (might) have,' etc.		'(That) I (might) be,' etc.	
(que) j'eusse	(que) nous eussions	(que) je fusse	(que) nous fussions
(que) tu eusses	(que) vous eussiez	(que) tu fusses	(que) vous fussiez
(qu')il eût	(qu')ils eussent	(qu')il fût	(qu')ils fussent

Imperative

'Have,' etc.		'Be,' etc.	
	ayons		soyons
aie	ayez	sois	soyez

COMPOUND TENSES

391. The compound tenses are formed from the past participle of a given verb and an auxiliary verb (usually **avoir**, sometimes **être**), cf. §§ 137–139.

392. Avoir (donné). **393. Être** (arrivé).[1]

Infinitive

PERFECT

'To have given'	'To have arrived'
avoir donné	être arrivé(e)[s]

Participle

PERFECT

'Having given'	'Having arrived'
ayant donné	étant arrivé(e)[s]

[1] Any active verb may be made passive in this way, the past indefinite would then become the present; the pluperfect, the imperfect; etc. Cf. § 159.

Indicative

Past Indefinite

'I have given,' etc.	'I have arrived,' etc.
j'ai donné	je suis arrivé(e)
tu as donné	tu es arrivé(e)
etc.	etc.

Pluperfect

'I had given,' etc.	'I had arrived,' etc.
j'avais donné	j'étais arrivé(e)
etc.	etc.

Past Anterior

'I had given,' etc.	'I had arrived,' etc.
j'eus donné	je fus arrivé(e)
etc.	etc.

Future Perfect

'I shall have given,' etc.	'I shall have arrived,' etc.
j'aurai donné	je serai arrivé(e)
etc.	etc.

Conditional Perfect

'I should have given,' etc.	'I should have arrived,' etc.
j'aurais donné	je serais arrivé(e)
etc.	etc.

Subjunctive

Perfect

'(That) I (may) have given,' etc.	'(That) I (may) have arrived,' etc.
(que) j'aie donné	(que) je sois arrivé(e)
etc.	etc.

Pluperfect

'(That) I (might) have given,' etc.	'(That) I (might) have arrived,' etc.
(que) j'eusse donné	(que) je fusse arrivé(e)
etc.	etc.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGES

394. Verbs in *-cer.* (Cf. § 254.)

Placer, 'to place'

Pres. Part.	*Pres. Ind.*	*Impf. Ind.*	*Past Def.*	*Impf. Subj.*
plaçant	place	plaçais	plaçai	plaçasse
	places	plaçais	plaças	plaçasses
	place	plaçait	plaça	plaçât
	plaçons	placions	plaçâmes	plaçassions
	placez	placiez	plaçâtes	plaçassiez
	placent	plaçaient	placèrent	plaçassent

395. Verbs in *-ger.* (Cf. § 255.)

Manger, 'to eat'

Pres. Part.	*Pres. Ind.*	*Impf. Ind.*	*Past Def.*	*Impf. Subj.*
mangeant	mange	mangeais	mangeai	mangeasse
	manges	mangeais	mangeas	mangeasses
	mange	mangeait	mangea	mangeât
	mangeons	mangions	mangeâmes	mangeassions
	mangez	mangiez	mangeâtes	mangeassiez
	mangent	mangeaient	mangèrent	mangeassent

396. Verbs in *-yer.* (Cf. §§ 256, 257.)

Employer, 'to use,' **payer,** 'to pay'

Pres. Ind.	*Fut.*	*Cond.*	*Pres. Subj.*
emploie, etc.	emploierai, etc.	emploierais, etc.	emploie, etc.
paye, / paie, } etc.	payerai, / paierai, } etc.	payerais, / paierais, } etc.	paye, / paie, } etc.

397. Verbs with Stem-vowel *e* or *é*.

1. **Mener,** 'to lead,' **céder,** 'to yield.' (Cf. § 262.)

Pres. Ind.	*Fut.*	*Cond.*	*Pres. Subj.*
mène	mènerai	mènerais	mène
mènes	mèneras	mènerais	mènes
mène	mènera	mènerait	mène
menons	mènerons	mènerions	menions
menez	mènerez	mèneriez	meniez
mènent	mèneront	mèneraient	mènent

Céder with the stem-vowel **é**:

cède, etc. **cé**derai, etc. **cé**derais, etc. **cè**de, etc.

Obs.: In mené-je? [mənɛːʒ], **e** of the ending not being mute, the stem-vowel **e** is unchanged.

2. Verbs in **–eler, –eter** (cf. § 262).

Appeler, 'to call'

Pres. Ind.	*Fut.*	*Cond.*	*Pres. Subj.*
appelle	appellerai	appellerais	appelle
appelles	appelleras	appellerais	appelles
appelle	appellera	appellerait	appelle
appelons	appellerons	appellerions	appelions
appelez	appellerez	appelleriez	appeliez
appellent	appelleront	appelleraient	appellent

Jeter, 'to throw'

jette, etc. jetterai, etc. jetterais, etc. jette, etc.

NOTE. — A few verbs in **–eler, –eter** take the grave accent like **mener**, e.g., **acheter,** 'to buy':

achète, etc. achèterai, etc. achèterais, etc. achète, etc.

Exceptions like **acheter:**

becqueter, 'to peck.' étiqueter, 'to label.' modeler, 'to model.'
bourreler, 'to goad.' geler, 'to freeze.' peler, 'to peel.'
démanteler, 'to dismantle.' harceler, 'to harass.' rapiéceter, 'to piece.'
écarteler 'to quarter.' marteler, 'to hammer.' trompeter, 'to trumpet.'

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **–er.**

398. Aller, 'to go.'

1. *Infinitive* **aller**; *fut.* irai, iras, ira, etc.; *condl.* irais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **allant**; *impf. indic.* allais, etc.; *pres. subj.* aille [aːj], ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.

3. *Past Part.* **allé**; *past indef.* je suis allé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vais** [vɛ], vas, va, allons, allez, vont; *impve.* va (vas-y), allons, allez.

5. *Past Def.* **allai,** allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent; *impf. subj.* allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent.

Like **aller:**

s'en aller, 'go away.'

399. Envoyer, 'to send.'

1. *Infinitive* **envoyer;** *fut.* enverrai, etc.; *condl.* enverrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **envoyant;** *impf. indic.* envoyais, envoyais, envoyait, envoyions [ɑ̃vwaijɔ̃], envoyiez, envoyaient; *pres. subj.* envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions [ɑ̃vwaijɔ̃], envoyiez, envoient.

3. *Past Part* **envoyé;** *past indef.* j'ai envoyé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **envoie,** envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient; *impve.* envoie, envoyons, envoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **envoyai,** envoyas, envoya, envoyâmes, envoyâtes, envoyèrent; *impf. subj.* envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent.

Like **envoyer:**

renvoyer, 'send away,' 'dismiss.'

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **-ir.**

400. Acquérir, 'to acquire.'

1. *Infinitive* **acquérir;** *fut.* acquerrai, acquerras, etc.; *condl.* acquerrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **acquérant;** *impf. indic.* acquérais, etc.; *pres. subj.* acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.

3. *Past Part.* **acquis;** *past indef.* j'ai acquis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **acquiers,** acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent; *impve.* acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.

5. *Past Def.* acquis, acquis, acquit, acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent; *impf. subj.* acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent.

Like **acquérir:**

conquérir, 'conquer.' querir [1] *or* quérir, 'seek.' requérir, 'require,' 'claim.'
s'enquérir, 'inquire.' reconquérir, 'reconquer.'

401. Bénir, 'to bless.'

Is regular, but has also an irregular past participle **bénit,** used only as adjective:

De l'eau **bénite;** du pain **bénit.** Holy water; consecrated bread.

[1] Has only the infinitive.

402. Courir, 'to run.'

1. *Infinitive* **courir**; *fut.* courrai, courras, etc.; *condl.* courrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **courant**; *impf. indic.* courais, etc.; *pres. subj.* coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent.

3. *Past Part.* **couru**; *past indef.* j'ai couru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cours,** cours, court, courons, courez, courent; *impve.* cours, courons, courez.

5. *Past Def.* **courus,** courus, courut, courûmes, courûtes, coururent; *impf. subj.* courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussent.

Like **courir** are its compounds:

accourir, 'run up,' 'hasten.'	discourir, 'discourse.'	recourir, 'run again,' 'apply.'
concourir, 'co-operate,' 'concur,' 'compete.'	encourir, 'incur.'	secourir, 'succor,' 'help.'
	parcourir, 'run over.'	

403. Cueillir, 'to gather,' 'pick.'

1. *Infinitive* **cueillir**; *fut.* cueillerai, etc.; *condl.* cueillerais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **cueillant**; *impf. indic.* cueillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent.

3. *Past Part.* **cueilli**; *past indef.* j'ai cueilli, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cueille,** cueilles, cueille, cueillons, cueillez, cueillent; *impve.* cueille, cueillons, cueillez.

5. *Past Def.* **cueillis,** cueillis, cueillit, cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent; *impf. subj.* cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent.

Obs.: The present indicative, future, and conditional are like those of **donner.**

Like **cueillir:**

accueillir, 'welcome.'	assaillir,[1] 'assail.'	tressaillir, 'start.'
recueillir, 'gather,' 'collect.'	saillir,[2] 'jut out.'	

404. Dormir, 'to sleep.'

1. *Infinitive* **dormir**; *fut.* dormirai, etc.; *condl.* dormirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **dormant**; *impf. indic.* dormais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment.

3. *Past Part.* **dormi**; *past indef.* j'ai dormi, etc.

[1] Regular in future and conditional: **assaillirai,** etc.

[2] **Saillir,** 'gush out,' 'rush forth,' is regular, like **finir.**

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dors,** dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment; *impve.* dors, dormons, dormez.

5. *Past Def.* **dormis,** dormis, dormit, dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent; *impf. subj.* dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent.

Like **dormir:**

endormir, 'put to sleep.'
s'endormir, 'fall asleep.'
redormir, 'sleep again.'
rendormir, 'put to sleep again.'
repartir, 'set out again,' 'reply.'
se repentir, 'repent.'
sentir, 'feel.'
se rendormir, 'go to sleep again.'
bouillir, 'boil.'
ébouillir, 'boil away.'
rebouillir, 'boil again.'
consentir, 'consent.'
pressentir, 'forebode.'
ressentir, 'resent.'
servir, 'serve.'
mentir, 'lie.'
démentir, 'contradict,' 'belie.'
partir, 'set out.'
départir, 'distribute.'
se départir, 'desist.'
se servir, 'make use.'
desservir, 'clear the table.'
sortir, 'go out.'
ressortir, 'go out again.'

Observe the Present Indicative of the following types, which are represented in the above list:

bouillir: bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.
mentir: mens, mens, ment, mentons, mentez, mentent.
partir: pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent.
se repentir: repens, repens, repent, repentons, repentez, repentent.
sentir: sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent.
servir: sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent.
sortir: sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent.

405. Faillir, 'to fail.'

1. *Infinitive* **faillir;** *fut.* faudrai, faudras, etc.; *condl.* faudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **faillant;** *impf. indic.* faillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* faille, failles, faille, faillions, failliez, faillent.

3. *Past Part.* **failli;** *past indef.* j'ai failli, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **faux,** faux, faut, faillons, faillez, faillent; *impve.* ——, ——, ——.

5. *Past. Def.* **faillis,** faillis, faillit, faillîmes, faillîtes, faillirent; *impf. subj.* faillisse, faillisses, faillît, faillissions, faillissiez, faillissent.

Like **faillir:**

défaillir,[1] 'faint,' 'fail.'

406. Férir, 'to strike.'

Used only in 'sans coup **férir,**' 'without striking a blow,' and in the *past part.* **féru,** *wounded* (a veterinary term).

[1] Pres. indic. usually **défaus, défaus, défaut.**

407. Fleurir, 'to flourish,' etc.

Pres. Part. **florissant**; *impf. indic.* florissais, etc., when used of persons or a collection of persons, *or* fleurissais, etc., when used of things; otherwise like **finir.**

408. Fuir, 'to flee,' 'fly.'

1. *Infinitive* **fuir**; *fut.* fuirai, etc.; *condl.* fuirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **fuyant**; *impf. indic.* fuyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
3. *Past Part.* **fui**; *past indef.* j'ai fui, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **fuis,** fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient; *impve.* fuis, fuyons, fuyez.
5. *Past Def.* **fuis,** fuis, fuit, fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent; *impf. subj.* fuisse, fuisses, fuît, fuissions, fuissiez, fuissent.

Like **fuir:**

s'enfuir, 'flee,' 'escape.'

409. Gésir, 'to lie,' 'lie buried.'

1. *Infinitive* **gésir**; *fut.* ——; *condl.* ——.
2. *Pres. Part.* **gisant**; *impf. indic.* gisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ——.
3. *Past Part.* ——.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, **gît,** gisons, gisez, gisent; *impve.* ——, ——, ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Note. — Its most frequent use is in epitaphs: **Ci-gît,** 'Here lies,' **Ci-gisent,** 'Here lie.'

410. Haïr, 'to hate.'

1. *Infinitive* **haïr**; *fut.* haïrai, etc.; *condl.* haïrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **haïssant**; *impf. indic.* haïssais, etc.; *pres. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.
3. *Past Part.* **haï**; *past indef.* j'ai haï, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **hais,** hais, hait, haïssons, haïssez, haïssent; *impve.* hais, haïssons, haïssez.
5. *Past Def.* **haïs,** haïs, haït, haïmes, haïtes, haïrent; *impf. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haït, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.

Obs.: **Haïr** loses its diæresis in the present indicative and imperative singular, and takes no circumflex accent; otherwise like **finir.**

411. Issir, 'to spring (from, de),' etc.

Used only in the *past part.* **issu**; *past indef.* je suis issu, etc.

412. Mourir, 'to die.'

1. *Infinitive* **mourir**; *fut.* mourrai, mourras, etc.; *condl.* mourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **mourant**; *impf. indic.* mourais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

3. *Past Part.* **mort**; *past indef.* je suis mort, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **meurs,** meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent; *impve.* meurs, mourons, mourez.

5. *Past Def.* **mourus,** mourus, mourut, mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent; *impf. subj.* mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **mourir**:

se mourir, 'be dying' (*used only in infin., pres. indic., impf. indic.*).

413. Ouïr, 'to hear.'

Is hardly used beyond the infinitive and past participle: 'J'ai **ouï** dire.' 'I have heard said,' etc.

414. Ouvrir, 'to open.'

1. *Infinitive* **ouvrir**; *fut.* ouvrirai, etc.; *condl.* ouvrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **ouvrant**; *impf. indic.* ouvrais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrions, ouvriez, ouvrent.

3. *Past Part.* **ouvert**; *past indef.* j'ai ouvert, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **ouvre,** ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent; *impve.* ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.

5. *Past Def.* **ouvris,** ouvris, ouvrit, ouvrîmes, ouvrîtes, ouvrirent; *impf. subj.* ouvrisse, ouvrisses, ouvrît, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent.

Obs.: The present indicative is like that of **donner.**

Like **ouvrir**:

entr'ouvrir, 'open slightly.'
rouvrir, 'open again.'
couvrir, 'cover.'
découvrir, 'discover.'
recouvrir, 'cover again.'
offrir, 'offer.'
souffrir, 'suffer.'

415. Tenir, 'to hold.'

1. *Infinitive* **tenir**; *fut.* tiendrai, tiendras, etc.; *condl.* tiendrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **tenant**; *impf. indic.* tenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent.
3. *Past Part.* **tenu**; *past indef.* j'ai tenu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **tiens,** tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent; *impve.* tiens, tenons, tenez.
5. *Past Def.* **tins,** tins, tint, tînmes [tɛ̃:m], tîntes [tɛ̃:t], tinrent [tɛ̃:r]; *impf. subj.* tinsse [tɛ̃:s], tinsses, tînt, tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **tenir** are its compounds:

s'abstenir, 'abstain.'	détenir, 'detain.'	obtenir, 'obtain.'
appartenir, 'belong.'	entretenir, 'entertain.'	retenir, 'retain.'
contenir, 'contain.'	maintenir, 'maintain.'	soutenir, 'sustain.'

416. Venir, 'to come.'

1. *Infinitive* **venir**; *fut.* viendrai, viendras, etc.; *condl.* viendrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **venant**; *impf. indic.* venais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent.
3. *Past Part.* **venu**; *past indef.* je suis venu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **viens,** viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent; *impve.* viens, venons, venez.
5. *Past Def.* **vins,** vins, vint, vînmes [vɛ̃:m], vîntes [vɛ̃:t], vinrent [vɛ̃:r]; *impf. subj.* vinsse [vɛ̃:s], vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent.

Obs.: 1. The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress. 2. **Venir** is precisely like **tenir** in its irregularities, but owing to its difficulty it is given in full.

Like **venir** are its compounds:

avenir, 'happen' (3 sg. only).	prévenir, 'prevent.'
advenir, 'happen' (3 sg. only).	provenir, 'proceed' ('from,' de).
convenir, 'agree,' 'suit.'	revenir, 'come back.'
contrevenir, 'violate.'	redevenir, 'become again.'
circonvenir, 'circumvent.'	se souvenir, 'recollect.'
devenir, 'become.'	subvenir, 'aid.'
disconvenir, 'be discordant.'	survenir, 'occur.'
intervenir, 'intervene.'	se ressouvenir, 'recollect.'
parvenir, 'attain.'	

417. Vêtir, 'to clothe.'

1. *Infinitive* **vêtir**; *fut.* vêtirai, etc.; *condl.* vêtirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vêtant**; *impf. indic.* vêtais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent.

3. *Past Part.* **vêtu**; *past indef.* j'ai vêtu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vêts,** vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent; *impve.* vêts, vêtons, vêtez.

5. *Past Def.* **vêtis,** vêtis, vêtit, vêtîmes, vêtîtes, vîtirent; *impf. subj.* vêtisse, vêtisses, vêtît, vêtissions, vêtissiez, vêtissent.

Like **vêtir:**

dévêtir, 'divest.' revêtir, 'clothe, invest.'
se dévêtir, 'take off one's clothing.' se revêtir, 'put on one's clothing.'

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **-re.**

418. Battre, 'to beat.'

Loses one **t** in the present indicative singular: **Bats, bats, bat;** otherwise like **rompre.**

Like **battre:**

abattre, 'fell.' débattre, 'debate.' rabattre, 'beat down.'
combattre, 'fight,' 'oppose.' se débattre, 'struggle.'

419. Boire, 'to drink.'

1. *Infinitive* **boire**; *fut.* boirai, etc.; *condl.* boirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **buvant**; *impf. indic.* buvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent.

3. *Past Part.* **bu**; *past indef.* j'ai bu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **bois,** bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent; *impve.* bois, buvons, buvez.

5. *Past Def.* **bus,** bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent; *impf. subj.* busse, busses, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent.

Like **boire:**

emboire, 'coat' (*in painting*). imboire, 'imbibe,' 'imbue.'
s'emboire,[1] 'become dull.' reboire, 'drink again.'

420. Bruire, 'to murmur,' 'rustle.'

1. *Infinitive* **bruire**; *fut.* bruirai, etc.; *condl.* bruirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **bruyant**; *impf. indic.* bruyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ——.

[1] Used in third person.

3. *Past Part.* **bruit;** *past indef.* j'ai bruit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **bruis,** bruis, bruit, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Notes. — 1. The *pres. part.* **bruyant,** 'noisy,' is used as adjective only. 2. The forms **bruissant, bruissais,** etc., **bruisse,** etc., are also in use.

421. Clore, 'to close,' 'enclose.'

1. *Infinitive* **clore;** *fut.* clorai, etc.; *condl.* clorais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closent.
3. *Past Part.* **clos;** *past indef.* j'ai clos, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **clos,** clos, clôt, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Like **clore:**

déclore, 'throw open.'
éclore,[1] 'hatch,' 'open' (*of flowers*).
enclore,[2] 'inclose.'
forclore,[3] 'foreclose,' 'debar.'

422. Conclure, 'to conclude.'

1. *Infinitive* **conclure;** *fut.* conclurai, etc.; *condl.* conclurais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **concluant;** *impf. indic.* concluais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, concluiez, concluent.
3. *Past Part.* **conclu;** *past indef.* j'ai conclu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **conclus,** conclus, conclut, concluons, concluez, concluent; *impve.* conclus, concluons, concluez.
5. *Past Def.* **conclus,** conclus, conclut, conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent; *impf. subj.* conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent.

Like **conclure:**

exclure, 'exclude.'
inclure,[4] 'inclose.'
reclure,[5] 'shut up.'

[1] Has also *pres. plur.* **éclosons,** etc.; *impf. indic.* **éclosais,** etc. Its future and conditional are **éclorai,** etc.
[2] Has also *pres. plur.* **enclosons,** etc.; *pres. part.* **enclosant;** *impf. indic.* **enclosais,** etc.
[3] Hardly used beyond the infinitive, past participle, and compound tenses.
[4] *Past Part.* **inclus.**
[5] Used only in infin., past part., and comp. tenses. *Past part.* **reclus.**

423. Conduire, 'to conduct,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **conduire**; *fut.* conduirai, etc.; *condl.* conduirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **conduisant**; *impf. indic.* conduisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conduise, conduises, conduise, conduisions, conduisiez, conduisent.

3. *Past Part.* **conduit**; *past indef.* j'ai conduit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **conduis,** conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent; *impve.* conduis, conduisons, conduisez.

5. *Past Def.* **conduisis,** conduisis, conduisit, conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent; *impf. subj.* conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisît, conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent.

Like **conduire**:

se conduire, 'conduct one's self.'
éconduire, 'show out,' 'dismiss.'
reconduire, 'lead back.'
déconstruire, 'take apart.'
instruire, 'instruct.'
reconstruire, 'reconstruct.'
déduire, 'deduct.'
enduire, 'coat' (with plaster).
induire, 'induce.'
introduire, 'introduce.'
produire, 'produce.'
détruire, 'destroy.'
cuire, 'cook.'
recuire, 'cook again.'
réduire, 'reduce.'
reproduire, 'reproduce.'
séduire, 'seduce.'
traduire, 'translate.'
construire, 'construct.'
luire,[1] 'shine.'
reluire,[1] 'glisten.'
nuire,[2] 'injure.'

424. Être, 'to be.'

See § 390 for the full conjugation.

425. Confire, 'to preserve,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **confire**; *fut.* confirai, etc.; *condl.* confirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **confisant**; *impf. indic.* confisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent.

3. *Past Part.* **confit**; *past indef.* j'ai confit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **confis,** confis, confit, confisons, confisez, confisent; *impve.* confis, confisons, confisez.

5. *Past Def.* **confis,** confis, confit, confîmes, confîtes, confirent; *impf. subj.* confisse, confisses, confît, confissions, confissiez, confissent.

Like **confire**:

déconfire, 'discomfit.'
circoncire (*pp.* **–cis**), 'circumcise.'
suffire (*pp.* **suffi**), 'suffice.'

426. Connaître, 'to know,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **connaître**; *fut.* connaîtrai, etc.; *condl.* connaîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **connaissant**; *impf. indic.* connaissais, etc.; *pres.*

[1] *Past part.* **lui** and **relui** respectively. No past def. or impf. subj.
[2] *Past part.* **nui.**

subj. connaisse, connaisses, connaisse, connaissions, connaissiez, connaissent.

3. *Past Part.* **connu**; *past indef.* j'ai connu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **connais,** connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez connaissent; *impve.* connais, connaissons, connaissez.

5. *Past Def.* **connus,** connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent; *impf. subj.* connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel **i** has circumflex (**î**) everywhere before **t.**

Like **connaître:**

méconnaître, 'not to know.'
reconnaître, 'recognize.'
paraître, 'appear.'
apparaître, 'appear.'
comparaître, 'appear' (*law term*).
disparaître, 'disappear.'
reparaître, 'reappear.'
paître,[1] 'graze.'
repaître, 'feed,' 'feast.'
se repaître, 'feed,' 'feast.'

427. Coudre, 'to sew.'

1. *Infinitive* **coudre**; *fut.* coudrai, etc.; *condl.* coudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **cousant**; *impf. indic.* cousais, etc.; *pres. subj.* couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent.

3. *Past Part.* **cousu**; *past indef.* j'ai cousu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **couds,** couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent; *impve.* couds, cousons, cousez.

5. *Past Def.* **cousis,** cousis, cousit, cousîmes, cousîtes, cousirent; *impf. subj.* cousisse, cousisses, cousît, cousissions, cousissiez, cousissent.

Like **coudre:**

découdre, 'rip,' 'unsew.'
recoudre, 'sew again.'

428. Craindre, 'to fear.'

1. *Infinitive* **craindre**; *fut.* craindrai, etc.; *condl.* craindrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **craignant**; *impf. indic.* craignais, etc.; *pres. subj.* craigne, craignes, craigne, craignions, craigniez, craignent.

3. *Past Part.* **craint**; *past indef.* j'ai craint, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crains,** crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent; *impve.* crains, craignons, craignez.

5. *Past Def.* **craignis,** craignis, craignit, craignîmes, craignîtes, craignirent; *impf. subj.* craignisse, craignisses, craignît, craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent.

[1] Lacks the past part., past def., and impf. subj.

Like **craindre**:

in **–aindre**:
contraindre, 'constrain.'
plaindre, 'pity.'
se plaindre, 'complain.'
in **–eindre**:
astreindre, 'compel.'
atteindre, 'attain.'
ceindre, 'enclose,' 'gird,' 'gird on' (*a sword, etc.*).
dépeindre, 'depict.'
empreindre, 'imprint.'
enceindre, 'inclose.'
enfreindre, 'infringe.'
épreindre, 'squeeze out.'
éteindre, 'extinguish.'
étreindre, 'draw tight.'
feindre, 'feign.'
geindre, 'groan.'
peindre, 'paint.'
ratteindre, 'overtake.'
repeindre, 'paint again.'
restreindre, 'restrain.'
teindre, 'dye.'
déteindre, 'fade.'
reteindre, 'dye again.'
in **–oindre**:
joindre, 'join.'
adjoindre, 'adjoin.'
conjoindre, 'conjoin.'
déjoindre, 'disjoin.'
disjoindre, 'disjoin.'
enjoindre, 'enjoin.'
rejoindre, 'rejoin.'
oindre, 'anoint.'
poindre,[1] 'dawn.'

429. Croire, 'to believe.'

1. *Infinitive* **croire**; *fut.* croirai, etc.; *condl.* croirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croyant**; *impf. indic.* croyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient.

3. *Past Part.* **cru**; *past indef.* j'ai cru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crois,** crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient; *impve.* crois, croyons, croyez.

5. *Past Def.* **crus,** crus, crut, crûmes, crûtes, crurent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Like **croire**:

accroire,[2] 'believe' (*an untruth*). décroire,[3] 'disbelieve.'

430. Croître, 'to grow.'

1. *Infinitive* **croître**; *fut.* croîtrai, etc.; *condl.* croîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croissant**; *impf. indic.* croissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent.

3. *Past Part.* **crû** (f. crue); *past indef.* j'ai crû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **croîs,** croîs, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent; *impve.* croîs, croissons, croissez.

5. *Past Def.* **crûs,** crûs, crût, crûmes, crûtes, crûrent; *impf. subj.* crûsse, crûsses, crût, crûssions, crûssiez, crûssent.

Obs.: The circumflex accent distinguishes otherwise like forms of **croître** and **croire,** but is optional in the imperfect subjunctive (except the third singular).

[1] Hardly used beyond the infinitive and future.
[2] Found only in **faire accroire,** 'to cause to believe' (*an untruth*).
[3] Used only in « je ne crois ni ne **décrois** », 'I neither believe nor disbelieve.'

Like **croître:**

accroître,[1] 'increase.' recroître,[1] 'grow again.' surcroître,[1] 'overgrow.' décroître, 'decrease.'

431. Dire, 'to say,' 'tell.'

1. *Infinitive* **dire;** *fut.* dirai, etc.; *condl.* dirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **disant;** *impf. indic.* disais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent.

3. *Past Part.* **dit;** *past indef.* j'ai dit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dis,** dis, dit, disons, dites, disent; *impve.* dis, disons, dites.

5. *Past Def.* **dis,** dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent; *impf. subj.* disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent.

Like **dire:**

contredire,[2] 'contradict.' interdire,[2] 'interdict.' prédire,[2] 'predict.'
dédire,[2] 'retract,' 'deny.' médire [2] (de), 'slander.' redire, 'say again.'

NOTE. — **Maudire** is like **dire** only in infinitive, past participle (**maudit**), future and conditional; otherwise like **finir.**

432. Écrire, 'to write.'

1. *Infinitive* **écrire;** *fut.* écrirai, etc., *condl.* écrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **écrivant;** *impf. indic.* écrivais, etc., *pres. subj.* écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent.

3. *Past Part.* **écrit;** *past indef.* j'ai écrit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **écris,** écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent; *impve.* écris, écrivons, écrivez.

5. *Past Def.* **écrivis,** écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent; *impf. subj.* écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent.

Like **écrire** are all verbs in **–(s)crire:**

circonscrire, 'circumscribe.' prescrire, 'prescribe.' souscrire, 'subscribe.'
décrire, 'describe.' proscrire, 'proscribe.' transcrire, 'transcribe.'
inscrire, 'inscribe.' récrire, 'rewrite.'

[1] No circumflex in past participle, past definite third singular and third plural.

[2] The 2d plur. pres. indic. and impve. is: Contredisez, dédisez, interdisez, etc.

433. Faire, 'to do,' 'make.'

1. *Infinitive* **faire**; *fut.* ferai [fəre], etc.; *condl.* ferais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **faisant** [fəzɑ̃]; *impf. indic.* faisais [fəzɛ], etc.; *pres. subj.* fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.

3. *Past Part.* **fait**; *past indef.* j'ai fait, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **fais,** fais, fait, faisons [fəzɔ̃], faites, font; *impve.* fais, faisons, faites.

5. *Past Def.* **fis,** fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent; *impf. subj.* fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent.

Like **faire**:

contrefaire, 'imitate.'	méfaire, 'harm.'	refaire, 'do again.'
défaire, 'undo.'	parfaire, 'complete.'	satisfaire, 'satisfy.'
forfaire, 'forfeit.'	redéfaire, 'undo again.'	surfaire, 'overcharge.'
malfaire,[1] 'do ill.'		

434. Frire, 'to fry.'

1. *Infinitive* **frire**; *fut.* frirai, etc.; *condl.* frirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* ——.

3. *Past Part.* **frit**; *past indef.* j'ai frit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **fris,** fris, frit, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* fris, ——, ——.

5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

435. Lire, 'to read.'

1. *Infinitive* **lire**; *fut.* lirai, etc.; *condl.* lirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **lisant**; *impf. indic.* lisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent.

3. *Past Part.* **lu**; *past indef.* j'ai lu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **lis,** lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent; *impve.* lis, lisons, lisez.

5. *Past Def.* **lus,** lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent; *impf. subj.* lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent.

Like **lire**:

élire, 'elect.'	réélire, 're-elect.'	relire, 'read again.'

436. Mettre, 'to place,' 'put.'

1. *Infinitive* **mettre**; *fut.* mettrai, etc.; *condl.* mettrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **mettant**; *impf. indic.* mettais, etc.; *pres. subj.* mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.

[1] Used in infinitive only.

3. *Past Part.* **mis;** *past indef.* j'ai mis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **mets,** mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent; *impve.* mets, mettons, mettez.

5. *Past Def.* **mis,** mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent; *impf. subj.* misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent.

Like **mettre:**

se mettre, 'begin.'	démettre, 'dismiss.'	promettre, 'promise.'
admettre, 'admit.'	émettre, 'emit.'	remettre, 'put back,' 'hand to.'
commettre, 'commit.'	s'entremettre, 'interpose.'	repromettre, 'promise again.'
compromettre, 'compromise.'	omettre, 'omit.'	soumettre, 'submit.'
	permettre, 'permit.'	transmettre, 'transmit.'

437. Moudre, 'to grind.'

1. *Infinitive* **moudre;** *fut.* moudrai, etc.; *condl.* moudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **moulant;** *impf. indic.* moulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* moule, moules, moule, moulions, mouliez, moulent.

3. *Past Part.* **moulu;** *past indef.* j'ai moulu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **mouds,** mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent; *impve.* mouds, moulons, moulez.

5. *Past Def.* **moulus,** moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent; *impf. subj.* moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent.

Like **moudre:**

émoudre, 'whet.' remoudre, 'grind again.' rémoudre, 'sharpen again.'

438. Naître, 'to be born,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **naître;** *fut.* naîtrai, etc.; *condl.* naîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **naissant;** *impf. indic.* naissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent.

3. *Past Part.* **né;** *past indef.* je suis né, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **nais,** nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent; *impve.* nais, naissons, naissez.

5. *Past Def.* **naquis,** naquis, naquit, naquîmes, naquîtes, naquirent; *impf. subj.* naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel **i** has the circumflex (**î**) everywhere before **t.**

Like **naître:**

renaître, 'revive.'

439. Plaire, 'to please.'

1. *Infinitive* **plaire;** *fut.* plairai, etc.; *condl.* plairais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **plaisant;** *impf. indic.* plaisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* plaise, plaises, plaise, plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent.

3. *Past Part.* **plu;** *past indef.* j'ai plu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **plais,** plais, plaît, plaisons, plaisez, plaisent; *impve.* plais, plaisons, plaisez.

5. *Past Def.* **plus,** plus, plut, plûmes, plûtes, plurent; *impf. subj.* plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent.

Like **plaire:**

complaire, 'humour.' déplaire, 'displease.' taire,[1] 'say nothing about.'

440. Prendre, 'to take.'

1. *Infinitive* **prendre;** *fut.* prendrai, etc.; *condl.* prendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **prenant;** *impf. indic.* prenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.

3. *Past Part.* **pris;** *past indef.* j'ai pris, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **prends,** prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent; *impve.* prends, prenons, prenez.

5. *Past Def.* **pris,** pris, prit, prîmes, prîtes, prirent; *impf. subj.* prisse, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent.

Like **prendre** are its compounds:

apprendre, 'learn.' entreprendre, 'undertake.' rapprendre, 'learn again.'
déprendre, 'part.' s'éprendre, 'be taken.' reprendre, 'take back.'
désapprendre, 'unlearn.' se méprendre, 'be mistaken.' surprendre, 'surprise.'
comprendre, 'understand.'

441. Résoudre, 'to resolve.'

1. *Infinitive* **résoudre;** *fut.* résoudrai, etc.; *condl.* résoudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **résolvant;** *impf. indic.* résolvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent.

3. *Past Part.* **résolu** and **résous;** *past indef.* j'ai résolu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **résous,** résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent; *impve.* résous, résolvons, résolvez.

5. *Past Def.* **résolus,** résolus, résolut, résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent; *impf. subj.* résolusse, résolusses, résolût, résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.

Like **résoudre:**

absoudre,[2] 'absolve.' dissoudre,[2] 'dissolve.'

[1] **Il tait** has no circumflex.

[2] *Past part.* **absous** (*f.*, **absoute**), **dissous** (*f.*, **dissoute**), respectively. They lack the past definite and imperfect subjunctive.

442. Rire, 'to laugh.'

1. *Infinitive* **rire;** *fut.* rirai, etc.; *condl.* rirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **riant;** *impf. indic.* riais, etc.; *pres. subj.* rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient.
3. *Past Part.* **ri;** *past indef.* j'ai ri, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **ris,** ris, rit, rions, riez, rient; *impve.* ris, rions, riez.
5. *Past Def.* **ris,** ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent; *impf. suj.* risse, risses, rît, rissions, rissiez, rissent.

Like **rire:**

se rire de, 'make sport' of.' sourire, 'smile.'

443. Sourdre, 'to rise.'

1. *Infinitive* **sourdre;** *fut.* il sourdra; *condl.* il sourdrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* **sourdant;** *impf. indic.* il sourdait; *pres. subj.* il sourde.
3. *Past Part.* ——; *past indef.* ——.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, sourd, ——, ——, sourdent; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* **il sourdit;** *impf. subj.* il sourdît.

Note. — Little used beyond the infin. and third sing. pres. indic.

444. Suivre, 'to follow.'

1. *Infinitive* **suivre;** *fut.* suivrai, etc.; *condl.* suivrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **suivant;** *impf. indic.* suivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent.
3. *Past Part.* **suivi;** *past indef.* j'ai suivi, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **suis,** suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent; *impve.* suis, suivons, suivez.
5. *Past Def.* **suivis,** suivis, suivit, suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent; *impf. subj.* suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent.

Like **suivre:**

s'ensuivre (*impers.*), 'it follows.' poursuivre, 'pursue.'

445. Tistre, 'to weave.'

Used only in the *past part.* **tissu,** and compound tenses.

446. Traire, 'to milk.'

1. *Infinitive* **traire;** *fut.* trairai, etc.; *condl.* trairais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **trayant;** *impf. indic.* trayais, etc.; *pres. subj.* traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient.

3. *Past Part.* **trait;** *past indef.* j'ai trait, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **trais,** trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient; *impve.* trais, trayons, trayez.

5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Like **traire:**

abstraire, 'abstract.'
attraire, 'attract' (*inf. only*).
distraire, 'distract.'
extraire, 'extract.
rentraire, 'darn.'
retraire, 'redeem' (*legal*).
soustraire, 'subtract.'
braire,[1] 'bray.'

447. Vaincre, 'to conquer.'

1. *Infinitive* **vaincre;** *fut.* vaincrai, etc.; *condl.* vaincrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vainquant;** *impf. indic.* vainquais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent.

3. *Past Part.* **vaincu;** *past indef.* j'ai vaincu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaincs** [vɛ̃], vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent; *impve.* vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.

5. *Past Def.* **vainquis,** vainquis, vainquit, vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent; *impf. subj.* vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent.

Obs.: Stem **c** [k] becomes **qu** [k] before any vowel except **u.**

Like **vaincre:**

convaincre, 'convince.'

448. Vivre, 'to live.'

1. *Infinitive* **vivre;** *fut.* vivrai, etc.; *condl.* vivrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vivant;** *impf. indic.* vivais, etc.; *pres. subj.*, vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent.

3. *Past Part.* **vécu;** *past indef.* j'ai vécu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vis,** vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent; *impve.*, vis, vivons, vivez.

5. *Past Def.* **vécus,** vécus, vécut, vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent; *impf. subj.* vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent.

Like **vivre:**

revivre, 'revive.'
survivre, 'survive.'

[1] Commonly used only in the inf. and the third pers. pres. indic., fut. and cond.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **–oir.**

NOTE. — The few verbs in **–oir,** which are all irregular, form, in some grammars, a separate conjugation, the third, verbs in **–re** being considered as the fourth.

449. Avoir, 'to have.'

See § 389 for the full conjugation of this verb.

Like **avoir:**

ravoir,[1] 'have again.'

450. Recevoir, 'to receive.'

1. *Infinitive* **recevoir;** *fut.* recevrai, etc.; *condl.* recevrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **recevant;** *impf. indic.* recevais, etc.; *pres. subj.* reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.

3. *Past Part.* **reçu;** *past indef.* j'ai reçu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **reçois,** reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent; *impve.* reçois, recevons, recevez.

5. *Past Def.* **reçus,** reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent; *impf. subj.* reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.

Obs.: 1. Stem-vowel becomes **oi** wherever it bears the stress. 2. Stem **c** [s] is written **ç** [s] before **o** or **u.**

Like **recevoir:**

apercevoir, 'perceive.' décevoir, 'deceive.' percevoir, 'collect taxes.' concevoir, 'conceive.'

451. Devoir, 'to owe.'

1. *Infinitive* **devoir;** *fut.* devrai, etc.; *condl.* devrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **devant;** *impf. indic.* devais, etc.; *pres. subj.* doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent.

3. *Past Part.* **dû,** (*f.* due, *pl.* du(e)s); *past indef.* j'ai dû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dois,** dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent; *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* **dus,** dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent; *impf. subj.* dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent.

NOTE. — **Devoir** follows the **recevoir** model, but, as its forms present some difficulty, they have been given in full.

Like **devoir:**

redevoir, 'still owe.'

[1] Used only in the infinitive.

452. Asseoir, 'to seat.'

1. *Infinitive* **asseoir**; *fut.* assiérai, etc., *or* asseyerai, etc., *or* assoirai, etc.; *condl.* assiérais, etc., *or* asseyerais, etc., *or* assoirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **asseyant** *or* **assoyant**; *impf. indic.* asseyais, etc., *or* assoyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent, *or* assoie, assoies, assoie, assoyions, assoyiez, assoient.

3. *Past Part.* **assis**; *past indef.*, j'ai assis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **assieds,** assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent, *or* **assois,** assois, assoit, assoyons, assoyez, assoient; *impve.* assieds, asseyons, asseyez, *or* assois, assoyons, assoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **assis,** assis, assit, assîmes, assîtes, assirent; *impf. subj.* assisse, assisses, assît, assissions, assissiez, assissent.

Like **asseoir:**

s'asseoir, 'sit down.'
rasseoir, 'reseat,' 'calm.'
se rasseoir, 'sit down again.'
seoir,[1] 'be becoming.'
messeoir,[1] 'fit badly.'
surseoir,[2] 'suspend,' 'reprieve.'

453. Déchoir, 'to decline,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **déchoir**; *fut.* décherrai, etc.; *condl.* décherrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* déchoie, déchoies, déchoie, déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient.

3. *Past Part.* **déchu**; *past indef.* j'ai déchu *or* je suis déchu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **déchois,** déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient; *impve.* déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **déchus,** déchus, déchut, déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent; *impf. subj.* déchusse, déchusses, déchût, déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.

Like **déchoir:**

choir,[3] 'fall.'
rechoir,[3] 'fall again.'

454. Échoir, 'fall due,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **échoir**; *fut.* il écherra;[4] *condl.* il écherrait.[4]

2. *Pres. Part.* **échéant**; *impf. indic.* il échoyait; *pres. subj.* il échoie.

[1] Used in third person of the following: *Pres. indic.* sied, siéent (messied, messiéent); *impf. indic.* seyait, seyaient (messeyait, messeyaient); *pres. subj.* siée, siéent (messiée, messiéent); *fut.* siéra, siéront (messiéra, messiéront); *cond.* siérait, siéraient (messiérait, messiéraient).

[2] Like the forms in **oi** (**oy**) of **asseoir,** but *fut.* and *cond.* surseoirai(s).

[3] Hardly used beyond the infin. and comp. tenses.

[4] Or regular: il **échoira(it).**

3. *Past Part.* **échu;** *past indef.* je suis échu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, échoit *or* échet, ——, ——, échoient *or* échéent; *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* ——, ——, il **échut;** ——, ——, ils échurent; *impf. subj.* il échût.

455. Falloir, 'must,' etc. (impers.).

1. *Infinitive* **falloir;** *fut.* il faudra; *condl.* il faudrait.

2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* il fallait; *pres. subj.* **il faille.**

3. *Past Part.* **fallu;** *past indef.* il a fallu.

4. *Pres. Indic.* il **faut;** *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* il **fallut;** *impf. subj.* il fallût.

456. Mouvoir, 'to move.'

1. *Infinitive* **mouvoir;** *fut.* mouvrai, etc.; *condl.* mouvrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **mouvant;** *impf. indic.* mouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, mouviez, meuvent.

3. *Past Part.* **mû,** (*f.* mue, *pl.* mu(e)s); *past indef.* j'ai mû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **meus,** meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent; *impve.* meus, mouvons, mouvez.

5. *Past Def.* **mus,** mus, mut, mûmes, mûtes, murent; *impf. subj.* musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever stressed.

Like **mouvoir:**

émouvoir,[1] 'arouse.' promouvoir,[1] 'promote.'

457. Pleuvoir, 'to rain' (impers.).

1. *Infinitive* **pleuvoir;** *fut.* il pleuvra; *condl.* il pleuvrait.

2. *Pres. Part.* **pleuvant;** *impf. indic.* il pleuvait; *pres. subj.* il pleuve.

3. *Past Part.* **plu;** *past indef.* il a plu.

4. *Pres. Indic.* il **pleut;** *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* il **plut;** *impf. subj.* il plût.

458. Pouvoir, 'to be able,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **pouvoir;** *fut.* pourrai, etc.; *condl.* pourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **pouvant;** *impf. indic.* pouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent.

[1] Past participle has no circumflex accent.

3. *Past Part.* **pu;** *past indef.* j'ai pu.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **puis** *or* **peux,** peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent; *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* **pus,** pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent; *impf. subj.* pusse, pusses, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent.

Obs.: The first sing. pres. indic. in negation is usually **je ne peux pas,** or **je ne puis pas;** in questions, only **puis-je?;** otherwise **puis** or **peux.**

459. Savoir, 'to know,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **savoir;** *fut.* saurai, etc.; *condl.* saurais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **sachant;** *impf. indic.* savais, etc.; *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.

3. *Past Part.* **su;** *past indef.* j'ai su, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* sais [se], sais, sait, savons, savez, savent; *impve.* sache, sachons, sachez.

5. *Past Def.* **sus,** sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent; *impf. subj.* susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent.

460. Valoir, 'to be worth.'

1. *Infinitive* **valoir;** *fut.* vaudrai, etc.; *condl.* vaudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **valant;** *impf. indic.* valais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.

3. *Past Part.* **valu;** *past indef.* j'ai valu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaux,** vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent; *impve.* vaux, valons, valez.

5. *Past Def.* **valus,** valus, valut, valûmes, valûtes, valurent; *impf. subj.* valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent.

Like **valoir:**

équivaloir, 'be equivalent.'
revaloir, 'pay back,' 'return like for like.'
prévaloir,[1] 'prevail.'
chaloir.[2]

461. Voir, 'to see.'

1. *Infinitive* **voir;** *fut.* verrai, etc.; *condl.* verrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voyant;** *impf. indic.* voyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.

3. *Past Part.* **vu;** *past indef.* j'ai vu, etc.

[1] *Pres. subj.* **prévale,** etc.

[2] Hardly used beyond, **Il ne me chaut de,** 'I care not for.'

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vois,** vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient; *impve.* vois, voyons, voyez.

5. *Past Def.* **vis,** vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent; *impf. subj.* visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent.

Like **voir:**

entrevoir, 'catch sight of.' revoir, 'see again.' pourvoir,[1] 'provide.' dépourvoir,[1] 'strip,' 'leave destitute.' prévoir,[2] 'foresee.'

462. Vouloir, 'to wish,' etc.

1. *Infinitive* **vouloir;** *fut.* voudrai, etc.; *condl.* voudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voulant;** *impf. indic.* voulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.

3. *Past Part.* **voulu;** *past indef.* j'ai voulu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **veux,** veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent; *impve.* veux, voulons, voulez.

5. *Past Def.* **voulus,** voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent; *impf. subj.* voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** whenever it is stressed.

Note. — The regular *impve.* **veux, voulons, voulez** is rare; **veuillez** = 'have the kindness to' generally serves as second plural imperative.

463. REFERENCE LIST OF REGULAR VERBS

Note. — For verbs in **–cer,** cf. § 394, for verbs in **–ger,** cf. § 395, for verbs in **–yer,** cf. § 396, for verbs with stem-vowel **e** or **é,** cf. § 397.

A

abattre..... 418
absoudre..... 441
abstenir..... 415
abstraire..... 446
accourir..... 402
accroire..... 429
accroître..... 430
accueillir..... 403
acquérir..... 400
adjoindre..... 428
admettre..... 436
advenir..... 416
aller..... 398
apercevoir..... 450
apparaître..... 426
appartenir..... 415
apprendre..... 440
assaillir..... 403
asseoir..... 452
astreindre..... 428
atteindre..... 428
attraire..... 446

[1] *Past def.* **vus,** etc.; *impf. subj.* **–vusse,** etc.; *fut.* and *condl.* **voirai(s),** regular.

[2] *Fut.* and *condl.* **–voirai(s),** etc., regular.

avenir..... 416
avoir..... 389

B

battre..... 418
bénir..... 401
boire..... 419
bouillir..... 404
braire..... 446
bruire..... 420

C

ceindre..... 428
chaloir..... 460
choir..... 453
circoncire..... 425
circonscrire.... 432
circonvenir..... 416
clore..... 421
combattre..... 418
commettre..... 436
comparaître.... 426
complaire..... 439
comprendre.... 440
compromettre.. 436
concevoir..... 450
conclure..... 422
concourir..... 402
conduire..... 423
confire..... 425
conjoindre..... 428
connaître..... 426
conquérir..... 400
consentir..... 404
construire..... 423
contenir..... 415
contraindre.... 428
contredire..... 431
contrefaire..... 433
contrevenir.... 416
convaincre..... 447
convenir..... 416
coudre..... 427
courir..... 402
couvrir..... 414
craindre..... 428
croire..... 429
croître..... 430
cueillir..... 403
cuire..... 423

D

débattre..... 418
décevoir..... 450
déchoir..... 453
déclore..... 421
déconfire..... 425
déconstruire.... 423
découdre..... 427
découvrir..... 414
décrire..... 432
décroire..... 429
décroître..... 430
dédire..... 431
déduire..... 423
défaillir..... 405
défaire..... 433
déjoindre..... 428
démentir..... 404
démettre..... 436
départir..... 404
dépeindre..... 428
déplaire..... 439
dépourvoir..... 461
déprendre..... 440
désapprendre... 440
desservir..... 404
déteindre..... 428
détenir..... 415
détruire..... 423
devenir..... 416
dévêtir..... 417
devoir..... 451
dire..... 431
disconvenir.... 416
discourir..... 402
disjoindre..... 428
disparaître..... 426
dissoudre..... 441
distraire..... 446
dormir..... 404

E

ébouillir..... 404
échoir..... 454
éclore..... 421
éconduire..... 423
écrire..... 432
élire..... 435
emboire..... 419
émettre..... 436
émoudre..... 437
émouvoir..... 456
empreindre..... 428
enceindre..... 428
enclore..... 421
encourir..... 402
endormir..... 404
enduire..... 423
enfreindre..... 428
enfuir..... 408
enjoindre..... 428
enquérir..... 400
ensuivre..... 444
entremettre.... 436
entreprendre... 440
entretenir..... 415
entrevoir..... 461
entr'ouvrir..... 414
envoyer..... 309
épreindre..... 428
éprendre..... 440
équivaloir..... 460
éteindre..... 428
être..... 390
étreindre..... 428

exclure..... 422
extraire..... 446

F

faillir..... 405
faire..... 433
falloir..... 455
feindre..... 428
férir..... 406
fleurir..... 407
forclore..... 421
forfaire..... 433
frire..... 434
fuir..... 408

G

geindre..... 428
gésir..... 409

H

haïr..... 410

I

imboire..... 419
inclure..... 422
induire..... 423
inscrire..... 432
instruire..... 423
interdire..... 431
intervenir..... 416
introduire..... 423
issir..... 411

J

joindre..... 428

L

lire..... 435
luire..... 423

M

maintenir..... 415
malfaire..... 433
maudire..... 431
méconnaître..... 426
médire..... 431
méfaire..... 433
mentir..... 404
méprendre..... 440
messeoir..... 452
mettre..... 436
moudre..... 437
mourir..... 412
mouvoir..... 456

N

naître..... 438
nuire..... 423

O

obtenir..... 415
offrir..... 414
oindre..... 428
omettre..... 436
ouïr..... 413
ouvrir..... 414

P

paître..... 426
paraître..... 426
parcourir..... 402
parfaire..... 433
partir..... 404
parvenir..... 416
peindre..... 428
percevoir..... 450
permettre..... 436
plaindre..... 428
plaire..... 439
pleuvoir..... 457
poindre..... 428
poursuivre..... 444
pourvoir..... 461
pouvoir..... 458
prédire..... 431
prendre..... 440
prescrire..... 432
pressentir..... 404
prévaloir..... 460
prévenir..... 416
prévoir..... 461
produire..... 423
promettre..... 436
promouvoir..... 456
proscrire..... 432
provenir..... 416

Q

querir, quérir } 400

R

rabattre..... 418
rapprendre..... 440
rasseoir..... 452
ratteindre..... 428
ravoir..... 389
reboire..... 419
rebouillir..... 404
recevoir..... 450
rechoir..... 453
reclure..... 422
reconduire..... 423
reconnaître..... 426
reconquérir..... 400
reconstruire..... 423
recoudre..... 427
recourir..... 402
recouvrir..... 414
récrire..... 432
recroître..... 430
recueillir..... 403
recuire..... 423
redéfaire..... 433
redevenir..... 416
redevoir..... 451
redire..... 431

redormir..... 404
réduire..... 423
réélire..... 435
refaire..... 433
rejoindre..... 428
relire..... 435
reluire..... 423
remettre..... 436
remoudre..... 437
rémoudre..... 437
renaître..... 438
rendormir..... 404
rentraire..... 446
renvoyer..... 399
repaître..... 426
reparaître..... 426
repartir..... 404
repeindre..... 428
repentir..... 404
reprendre..... 440
reproduire..... 423
repromettre..... 436
requérir..... 400
résoudre..... 441
ressentir..... 404
ressortir..... 404
ressouvenir..... 416
restreindre..... 428
reteindre..... 428
retenir..... 415
retraire..... 446
revaloir..... 460
revenir..... 416
revêtir..... 417
revivre..... 448
revoir..... 461
rire..... 442
rouvrir..... 414

S

saillir..... 403
satisfaire..... 433
savoir..... 459
secourir..... 402
séduire..... 423
sentir..... 404
seoir..... 452
servir..... 404
sortir..... 404
souffrir..... 414
soumettre..... 436
sourdre..... 443
sourire..... 442
souscrire..... 432
soustraire..... 446
soutenir..... 415
souvenir..... 416
subvenir..... 416
suffire..... 425
suivre..... 444
surcroître..... 430
surfaire..... 433
surprendre..... 440
surseoir..... 452
survenir..... 416
survivre..... 448

T

taire..... 439
teindre..... 428
tenir..... 415
tistre..... 445
traduire..... 423
traire..... 446
transcrire..... 432
transmettre..... 436
tressaillir..... 403

V

vaincre..... 447
valoir..... 460
venir..... 416
vêtir..... 417
vivre..... 448
voir..... 461
vouloir..... 462

USE OF THE INFINITIVE

464. The commonest verbs after which an infinitive is used directly (*without preposition*, cf. § 215) are:

accourir, to hasten.
affirmer, to affirm.
aimer,[1] should like.
aimer autant, to like as well.
aimer mieux, to prefer.
aller, to go.
apercevoir, to perceive.
assurer, to assure.
avoir beau, to be in vain.
avouer, to avow.
être censé, to be supposed.
compter,[2] to intend.
confesser, to confess.
courir, to run.
croire, to think.
daigner, to deign.
déclarer, to declare.
déposer, to testify.
descendre,[1] to come (go) down.
désirer,[2] to desire, wish.
devoir, ought, to be to, etc.

[1] See verbs taking **à** (§ 466). [2] See verbs taking **de** (§ 465).

dire,[2] to say.
écouter, to listen to.
entendre, to hear, intend.
envoyer, to send.
espérer,[2] to hope.
être, to be, go.
faillir,[1, 2] to be on the point of.
faire, to make, cause.
falloir, to be necessary.
se figurer, to imagine.
s'imaginer, to fancy.
juger mieux, to judge more wisely.
jurer, to swear, attest by oath.
laisser,[1, 2] to let, allow.
mener, to lead, bring.
monter, to go up.
nier,[2] to deny.
oser, to dare.
ouïr, to hear.
paraître, to appear.
penser,[1] to intend.
pouvoir, can, may.
préférer, to prefer.
présumer,[2] to presume.
prétendre,[1] to assert.
protester,[2] to protest.
se rappeler,[2] to recollect.
reconnaître, to acknowledge.
regarder, to look at.
rentrer, to go in again.
retourner, to go back.
revenir, to come back.
savoir, to know how, can.
sembler, to seem.
sentir,[2] to hear, feel.
souhaiter,[2] to wish.
soutenir, to maintain.
supposer, to suppose.
être supposé, to be supposed.
témoigner, to testify.
se trouver, to be.
valoir autant, to be as good.
valoir mieux, to be better.
venir,[1, 2] to come.
voir, to see.
voler, to fly.
vouloir, to will, wish.

465. The commonest verbs after which an infinitive is introduced by **de** (cf. § 216) are:

s'absenter, to absent o.s. (from).
s'absoudre, to absolve o.s. (from).
s'abstenir, to abstain (from).
accorder, to grant.
avoir accoutumé, to be accustomed.
accuser (s'), to accuse (of).
achever, to finish.
adjurer, to adjure.
admirer, to wonder (at).
affecter, to affect.
s'affliger, to grieve (at, over).
s'agir, to be a question (of).
ambitionner, to aspire.
s'apercevoir, to perceive.
appartenir, to appertain.
s'applaudir, to congratulate o.s. (on).
appréhender, to fear.
arrêter, to prevent (from), determine.
s'attrister, to become sad (at).
avertir, to notify, warn.
s'aviser, to think (of).
bénir, to bless (for).
blâmer, to blame (for).
brûler, to long.
censurer, to censure (for).
cesser, to cease.
se chagriner, to grieve (at, over).
charger, to charge.
se charger, to undertake.
choisir, to choose.
commander, to command.
commencer,[1] to begin.
compter,[3] to intend.
conclure,[1] to conclude.
conjurer, to beseech.
conseiller, to advise.
consentir,[1] to consent.
consoler, to console (for).
se contenter, to be satisfied.
continuer,[1] to continue.
contraindre,[1] to constrain.
convaincre, to convict (of).
convenir, to agree.
convier,[1] to invite.
coûter,[1] to cost.
craindre, to fear.
crier, to cry.
décider,[1] to decide, resolve.
décourager (se), to discourage (from).
dédaigner, to disdain.
défendre, to forbid.
se défendre, to forbear, excuse o.s.
défier,[1] to defy.
se défier, to distrust.
dégoûter, to disgust (with).
délibérer, to deliberate (about).
demander,[1] to ask.
se dépêcher, to make haste.
désaccoutumer (se), to disaccustom (from).
désespérer, to despair (of).
déshabituer (se), to disaccustom (from).

[1] See verbs taking **à** (§ 466). [2] See verbs taking **de** (§ 465).
[3] See verbs taking direct infinitive (§ 464).

désirer,[1] to desire.
déterminer,[2] to resolve.
détester, to detest.
détourner, to dissuade (from).
différer,[2] to defer.
dire,[1] to tell, bid.
discontinuer, to cease.
disconvenir, to deny.
se disculper, to excuse o.s. (for).
dispenser, to dispense (from).
dissuader, to dissuade (from).
douter, to hesitate.
se douter, to suspect.
écrire, to write.
s'efforcer,[2] to try.
s'effrayer, to be afraid.
s'émerveiller, to marvel (at).
empêcher, to prevent.
s'empêcher, to abstain (from).
s'empresser,[2] to hasten, be eager.
enjoindre, to enjoin.
s'ennuyer,[2] to be tired (of).
s'enorgueillir, to be proud.
enrager, to be enraged (at).
s'entêter, to be bent (on).
entreprendre, to undertake.
épargner, to spare.
espérer,[1] to hope.
essayer,[2] to try.
s'étonner, to be astonished.
être (à),[2] to be the duty (*or* office) (of).
éviter, to avoid.
excuser (s'), to excuse (from).
exempter, to exempt (from).
faillir,[1, 2] to fail.
faire bien, to do well.
se fatiguer,[2] to be tired (of).
feindre, to feign.
féliciter (se), to congratulate (on).
finir, to finish.
se flatter, to flatter o.s.
forcer,[2] to force.
frémir, to shudder.
gager, to wager.
garder (se), to forbear.
gémir, to groan.
gêner, to incommode.
se glorifier, to boast (of).
gronder, to scold (for).
hasarder,[2] to venture.
se hâter, to hasten.
hésiter,[2] to hesitate.
imaginer, to imagine.
s'impatienter, to be impatient.
imputer, to impute.
s'indigner, to be indignant.
s'ingérer, to meddle (with).
inspirer, to inspire.
interdire, to interdict (from).
jouir, to enjoy.
juger bon (nécessaire, etc.), to think fit, etc.
jurer,[1] to promise (on oath).
ne pas laisser,[1, 2] not to cease.
se lasser,[2] to be weary (of).
louer, to praise (for).
mander, to bid.
manquer,[1] to fail, be on the point of.
méditer, to meditate.
se mêler, to meddle (with).
menacer, to threaten.
mériter, to deserve.
se moquer, to make sport (of).
mourir, to die, long.
négliger, to neglect.
nier,[1] to deny.
notifier, to notify.
obliger,[2] to oblige, force.
obtenir, to obtain.
s'occuper,[2] to be intent (on).
offrir,[2] to offer.
omettre, to omit.
ordonner, to order.
oublier,[2] to forget.
pardonner, to forgive.
parier, to bet.
parler, to speak.
se passer, to do without.
permettre (se), to permit.
persuader, to persuade.
se piquer, to pride o.s. (on).
plaindre, to pity.
se plaindre, to complain (of).
prendre garde,[1] to take care not, beware (of).
prendre soin, to take care.
prescrire, to prescribe.
presser, to urge.
se presser, to hasten.
présumer,[1] to presume.
prier,[2] to beg, pray.
priver (se), to deprive (of).
professer, to profess.
projeter, to intend.
promettre (se), to promise.
proposer, to propose.
se proposer, to intend.
protester,[1] to protest.
punir, to punish (for).
rappeler,[1] to remind.
rebuter, to discourage (from).
recommander, to recommend.
recommencer,[2] to begin again.
récompenser, to reward.
redouter, to fear.
refuser,[2] to refuse.
regretter, to regret.
se réjouir, to rejoice.
remercier, to thank (for).
se repentir, to repent (of).
reprendre, to reprove (for).
réprimander, to reprimand (for).
reprocher (se), to reproach (with).
requérir, to bid.

[1] See verbs taking direct infinitive (§ 464). [2] See verbs taking **à** (§ 466)

réserver (se), to reserve.
résoudre,[1] to resolve.
se ressouvenir, to remember.
retenir, to keep (from).
rire (se), to laugh.
risquer, to risk.
rougir, to blush.
se scandaliser, to be scandalized (at).
se sentir,[2] to feel.
sommer, to summon.
se soucier, to care.
souffrir,[1] to suffer.
souhaiter,[2] to wish.
soupçonner, to suspect.
sourire, to smile.
se souvenir, to recollect.
suggérer, to suggest.
supplier, to beseech.
tâcher,[1] to try.
tenter,[1] to attempt.
trembler,[1] to tremble, fear.
trouver bon (*or* **mal**), to think well (*or* ill).
se vanter, to boast (of).
venir,[1, 2] to have just.
en vouloir (à), to be vexed (with) (for).

NOTE 1. — Three verbs, which are followed as a rule by a direct infinitive, require **de** in certain cases: (1) **devoir**, 'to owe,' with indirect object; (2) **laisser**, 'to cease,' in the negative; (3) **faire**, in **ne faire que**, 'to have but just.'

Je lui dois d'être ici en ce moment.	I owe it to him to be here right now.
Ne laissez pas de l'encourager.	Do not cease to encourage him.
Je ne fais que d'arriver.	I have but just arrived.

NOTE 2. — **De** is used to introduce the historical infinitive, a usage similar in sense to that of the past definite.

Et la foule de rire.	And the crowd laughed.

466. The commonest verbs after which an infinitive is introduced by **à** (cf. § 217) are:

s'abaisser, to stoop.
abandonner (s'), to give up.
aboutir, to end (in), tend.
s'abuser, to be mistaken (in).
s'accorder,[3] to agree (in).
être d'accord, to agree (in).
accoutumer (s'),[3] to accustom.
s'acharner, to be bent (on).
admettre, to admit.
s'adonner, to be addicted.
aguerrir (s'), to inure.
aider, to help.
aimer,[2] to like.
amener, to lead.
amuser (s'), to amuse (in, by).
animer (s'), to excite.
appeler, to call.
appliquer (s'), to apply.
apprendre, to learn, teach.
apprêter (s'), to get ready.
s'arrêter, to stop.
arriver, to succeed (in).
aspirer, to aspire.
assigner, to summon.
assujettir (s'), to subject.
astreindre (s'), to compel.
s'attacher, to be intent (on).
attendre (s'), to wait, expect.
autoriser, to authorize.
s'avilir, to stoop.
avoir, to have, must.
avoir (de la) peine, to have difficulty (in).
se borner, to limit o.s.
chercher, to seek, try.
citer, to summon.
collaborer, to coöperate (in).
commencer,[3] to begin.
se complaire, to take pleasure (in).
conclure,[3] to conclude.
concourir, to coöperate (in).
condamner (se), to condemn.
condescendre, to condescend.

[1] See verbs taking **à** (§ 466). [2] See verbs taking direct infinitive (§ 464). [3] See verbs taking **de** (§ 465).

conduire, to lead.
consacrer (se), to devote.
consentir,[1] to consent.
consister, to consist (in).
conspirer, to conspire.
consumer (se), to consume (in).
continuer,[1] to continue.
contraindre,[1] to constrain.
contribuer, to contribute.
convier,[1] to invite.
coûter,[1] to cost.
décider,[1] to induce.
se décider, to resolve.
défier,[1] to challenge, incite.
demander,[1] to ask.
demeurer, to remain.
dépenser, to spend (in).
désapprendre, to forget.
descendre,[2] to stoop, abase o.s.
destiner, to destine.
déterminer,[1] to induce.
se déterminer, to resolve.
dévouer (se), to devote.
différer,[1] to delay.
disposer (se), to dispose.
divertir (se), to amuse.
donner, to give.
dresser, to train.
s'efforcer,[1] to try.
s'égayer, to divert o.s. (by).
employer (s'), to employ (in).
s'empresser,[1] to be eager.
encourager, to encourage.
engager (s'),[1] to engage, advise.
enhardir,[1] to embolden.
s'enhardir,[1] to venture.
s'ennuyer,[1] to tire o.s. (in).
enseigner, to teach.
s'entendre, to know well how.
entraîner, to allure.
épuiser (s'), to exhaust (in).
essayer,[1] to try.
s'essayer, to try o.s. (in).
être,[1] to be occupied (in, at).
être (à), to be one's turn.
s'étudier, to apply o.s.
s'évertuer, to exert o.s., try.
exceller, to excel (in).
exciter (s'), to excite.
exercer (s'), to exercise (in).
exhorter, to exhort.
exposer (s'), to expose.
faillir,[1, 2] to fail (in).
se fatiguer,[1] to tire o.s. (in, at).
forcer,[1] to force.
gagner, to gain (by).
habituer (s'), to accustom.
haïr, to hate.
se hasarder,[1] to venture.
hésiter,[1] to hesitate.
inciter, to incite.
incliner, to incline.
induire, to induce.
insister, to insist.
instruire, to instruct.
intéresser (s'), to interest (in).
inviter, to invite.
jouer, to play (at).
laisser,[1, 2] to leave.
se lasser,[1] to tire o.s. (in).
limiter (se), to limit.
manquer,[1] to be remiss (in).
mettre, to put, set.
se mettre, to set about.
montrer, to show how.
obliger (s'),[1] to oblige, force.
s'obstiner, to persist (in).
occuper (s'),[1] to employ (in).
s'offrir,[1] to offer.
s'opiniâtrer, to persist (in).
oublier,[1] to forget.
parvenir, to succeed (in).
passer, to spend (in).
pencher, to incline.
penser,[2] to think (of).
perdre, to lose (in, by).
persévérer, to persevere (in).
persister, to persist (in).
se plaire, to delight (in).
se plier, to submit.
porter, to induce.
pousser, to urge, incite.
prendre garde,[1] to take care to.
prendre plaisir, to delight (in).
se prendre, to begin.
préparer (se), to prepare.
prétendre,[2] to aspire.
prier,[1] to invite (formally).
procéder, to proceed.
provoquer, to incite.
recommencer,[1] to begin again.
réduire, to reduce.
se réduire, to confine o.s.
refuser,[1] to refuse to give.
se refuser, to refuse.
renoncer, to renounce.
répugner, to be reluctant.
se résigner, to resign o.s.
résoudre,[1] to induce.
se résoudre, to resolve.
rester, to remain.
réussir, to succeed (in).
servir, to serve.
songer, to think (of).
souffrir,[1] to suffer.
suffire, to suffice.
surprendre, to discover.
tâcher,[1] to try.
tarder, to be long, delay (in).
tendre, to tend.
tenir, to be anxious.
tenter,[1] to tempt.
travailler, to work.
trembler,[1] to tremble (at, on).
trouver, to find.
venir,[1, 2] to happen.
viser, to aim.
vouer (se), to devote.

[1] See verbs taking **de** (§ 465). [2] See verbs taking direct infinitive (§ 464).

NOTE 1. — **Suffire** sometimes takes **pour.**

Cela suffit pour le distraire.	That suffices to distract him.

NOTE 2. — **Haïr** may take **de** when negative.

On ne hait pas à (d') être flatté.	One does not dislike being flattered.

467. Some verbs occur in more than one of the foregoing lists. Often the meaning of the verb varies with the way in which a following infinitive is introduced. The following are a few examples:

1. **Aimer:**

Il aimerait bien venir.	He would like to come.
J'aime à chanter.	I like to sing.

2. **Décider:**

Il a décidé de partir.	He has decided to leave.
On l'a décidé à partir.	They induced him to leave.

3. **Défier:**

Je l'ai défié de me troubler.	I defied him to disturb me.
On l'a défié à parler.	They challenged him to speak.

4. **Dire:**

Elle dit l'avoir accompli.	She says she has accomplished it.
Je lui ai dit de répondre.	I told him to reply.

5. **Se fatiguer:**

Il s'est fatigué de voyager.	He is tired of traveling.
Il s'est fatigué à voyager.	He tired himself out (by) traveling.

6. **Laisser:**

Laissez-moi parler.	Allow me to speak.
Il ne laisse jamais de parler.	He never leaves off speaking.
Je vous laisse à lui parler.	I leave you to speak to him.

7. **Penser:**

Il pense arriver ce soir.	He expects to arrive to-night.
Elle pense à lui écrire ce soir.	She is thinking of writing him to-night.

8. **Prendre garde:**

Prenez garde de lui en parler.	Take care not to speak to him of it.
Prenez garde à lui en parler.	Take care to speak to him of it.

9. **Prier:**

Je vous prie de me laisser.	I beg you to leave me.
Nous l'avons prié à dîner chez nous.	We have invited him to dine with us.

10. **Venir** (cf. § 219):

Venez nous voir.	Come and see us.
Il vient d'arriver.	He had just arrived.
S'il venait à mourir.	If he happened to die.

468. The infinitive may be introduced sometimes by prepositions other than **de, à,** or **pour** (generally used to denote purpose, but sometimes used causally). Such prepositions are **par** (usually following **commencer, finir,** and similar verbs), **sans, après** (taking the perfect infinitive, cf. § 164), and such prepositional locutions as **afin de, avant de, jusqu'à,** etc.

J'ai commencé par vous aimer, et j'ai fini par vous haïr.	I began by loving you, and I ended by hating you.
Après lui avoir parlé je suis parti.	After speaking to him I left.
Je vous ai cherché, afin de vous en parler.	I sought you, in order to speak to you of it.

469. Texts in Double Transcription

TURENNE ET LE VALET

[tyrɛːn e l valɛ]

Un jour d'été, qu'il faisait fort chaud, le vicomte de Tu-
œ̃ ʒur dete | kil fəzɛ fɔr ʃo | lə vikõːt də ty-
renne, en petite veste blanche et en bonnet, était à la fenêtre, 2
rɛːn | ɑ̃ ptit vɛstə blɑ̃ːʃ e ɑ̃ bɔnɛ | etɛt a la fnɛːtr |
dans son antichambre. Un de ses gens survient et, trompé
dɑ̃ sõn ɑ̃tiʃɑ̃ːbr | œ̃ d se ʒɑ̃ syrvjɛ̃ | e | trõpe
par l'habillement, le prend pour un aide de cuisine avec le- 4
par labijmɑ̃ | lə prɑ̃ pur œ̃n ɛːd də kɥiziːn | avɛk lə-
quel ce domestique était familier. Il s'approche doucement
kɛl | sə dɔmɛstik etɛ familje | ĩl saprɔʃ dusmɑ̃
par derrière, et d'une main qui n'était pas légère, lui applique 6
par dɛrjɛːr | e dyn mɛ̃ ki netɛ pɑ leʒɛːr | lɥi aplik
un grand coup sur le bas du dos. L'homme frappé se re-
œ̃ grɑ̃ ku | syr lə bɑ dy do | lɔm frape sə r-
tourne à l'instant. Le valet voit en frémissant le visage de 8
turn a lɛ̃stɑ̃ | lə valɛ vwat ɑ̃ fremisɑ̃ | lə vizaːʒ də
son maître. Il se jette à ses genoux tout éperdu:
sõ mɛːtr | il sə ʒɛt a se ʒnu | tut epɛrdy |

« Monseigneur, j'ai cru que c'était Georges! » . . . 10
mõseɲœːr | ʒe kry kə setɛ ʒɔrʒ |

« Et quand même c'aurait été Georges, » s'écrie Turenne
e kɑ̃ mɛːm sɔrɛt ete ʒɔrʒ | sekri tyrɛːn
en se frottant le dos, il ne fallait pas frapper si fort! 12
ɑ̃ s frɔtɑ̃ l do | il nə falɛ pɑ frape si fɔːr |

JEAN-JACQUES ROUSSEAU, *Émile*
ʒɑ̃ ʒɑːk ruso | emil |

470. LA DERNIÈRE CLASSE

Récit d'un petit Alsacien

Ce matin-là j'étais très en retard pour aller à l'école, et j'avais grand'peur d'être grondé, d'autant plus que M. Hamel nous avait dit qu'il nous interrogerait sur les participes, et je n'en savais pas le premier mot. Un moment, l'idée me vint de manquer la classe et de prendre ma course à travers les champs.

Le temps était si chaud, si clair!

On entendait les merles siffler à la lisière du bois, et dans le pré Rippert, derrière la scierie, les Prussiens qui faisaient l'exercice. Tout cela me tentait bien plus que la règle des participes; mais j'eus la force de résister, et je courus bien vite vers l'école.

Alphonse Daudet

471. LE CORBEAU ET LE RENARD

Maître corbeau, sur un arbre perché,
Tenait en son bec un fromage.
Maître renard, par l'odeur alléché,
Lui tint à peu près ce langage:
« Eh! bonjour, monsieur du corbeau!
Que vous êtes joli! que vous me semblez beau!
Sans mentir, si votre ramage
Se rapporte à votre plumage,
Vous êtes le phénix des hôtes de ces bois. »
A ces mots, le corbeau ne se sent pas de joie;
Et, pour montrer sa belle voix,
Il ouvre un large bec, laisse tomber sa proie.
Le renard s'en saisit, et dit: « Mon bon monsieur,
Apprenez que tout flatteur
Vit aux dépens de celui qui l'écoute;
Cette leçon vaut bien un fromage, sans doute. »
Le corbeau, honteux et confus,
Jura, mais un peu tard, qu'on ne l'y prendrait plus.

La Fontaine, *Fables*

472. **La dɛrnjɛːr klɑːs**

resi dœ̃ pətit alzasjɛ̃

Sə matɛ̃ la ʒetɛ trɛz ɑ̃ rətaːr | pur ale a lekɔl,| e ʒavɛ grɑ̃ pœːr dɛːtrə grɔ̃de,|dotɑ̃ ply kə məsjø̃ amɛl nuz avɛ di | kil nuz ɛ̃tɛrɔʒrɛ syr le partisip,| e ʒə nɑ̃ savɛ pɑ lə prɑmje mo. | œ̃ mɔmɑ̃, lide mə vɛ̃ də mɑ̃ke la klɑːs | e də prɑ̃ːdrə ma kurs a travɛːr le ʃɑ̃.|

lə tɑ̃ etɛ si ʃo,| si klɛːr !|

ɔ̃n ɑ̃tɑ̃dɛ le merl sifle a la lizjɛːr dy bwɑ,| e dɑ̃ lə pre ripɛːr,| dɛrjɛːr la siːri,| le prysjɛ̃ | ki fəzɛ legzɛrsis.| tu sla mə tɑ̃tɛ bjɛ̃ ply kə la rɛgl de partisip;| mɛ ʒy la fɔrs də reziste,| e ʒə kury bjɛ̃ vit vɛːr lekɔl |

alfɔ̃ːs dodɛ

473. **lə kɔrbo e lə rənaːr**

mɛːtrə kɔrbo, | syr œ̃n arbrə pɛrʃe, |
tənɛt ɑ̃ sɔ̃ bɛk | œ̃ frɔmaːʒ. |
mɛːtrə rənaːr, | par lodœːr | aleʃe, |
lɥi tɛ̃t a pø prɛ | sə lɑ̃gaːʒ: |
« eː ! | bɔ̃ʒuːr, | məsjø̃ dy kɔrbo ! |
kə vuz ɛt ʒɔli ! | kə vu m sɑ̃ːble bo ! |
sɑ̃ mɑ̃tiːr, | si vɔtrə ramaːʒ |
sə rapɔrt a vɔtrə plymaːʒ, |
vuz ɛt | lə feniks | dez oːt | də se bwɑ. » |
a se mo, | lə kɔrbo | nə sə sɑ̃ pɑ | də ʒwɑ; |
e pur mɔ̃ːtre sa bɛl vwɑ, |
il uːvr œ̃ lɑrʒə bɛk, | leːs tɔ̃ːbe sa prwɑ. |
lə rənaːr sɑ̃ sezi | e diː | « mɔ̃ bɔ̃ məsjø̃, |
aprɑne | kə tu flatœːr |
vit o depɑ̃ | də səlɥi | ki lekut; |
sɛt ləsɔ̃ | vo bjɛ̃n œ̃ frɔmaːʒ, | sɑ̃ dut. » |
lə kɔrbo, | ɔ̃tø | e kɔ̃fy, |
ʒyra, | mɛz œ̃ pø taːr, | kɔ̃ nə li prɑ̃ːdrɛ ply. |

la fɔ̃teːn, | faːbl |

VOCABULARY

FRENCH–ENGLISH

A

à [a], *prep.*, to, at, on, in, with.
abord [abɔːr], *m.*, access, approach; **d'—,** first, at first.
aborder [abɔrde], to accost, speak to.
abriter [abrite], to shelter.
absolument [apsɔlymɑ̃], *adv.*, absolutely.
acajou [akaʒu], *m.*, mahogany.
accepter [aksɛpte], to accept.
accompagner [akɔ̃paɲe], to accompany.
accomplir [akɔ̃pliːr], to accomplish.
accrocher [akrɔʃe], to hang up.
achat [aʃa], *m.*, purchase.
acheter [aʃte], to buy.
acier [asje], *m.*, steel.
acte [akt], *m.*, act.
admettre [admɛtr], to admit.
admirer [admire], to admire.
adopter [adɔpte], to adopt.
adresse [adrɛs], *f.*, address.
affaire [afɛːr], *f.*, affair, thing; *pl.*, business.
affiche [afiʃ], *f.*, placard, poster.
afin de [afɛ̃ də], *prep.*, to, in order to.
afin que [afɛ̃ kə], *conj.*, in order that, so that.
âge [ɑːʒ], *m.*, age.
âgé (de) [ɑʒe (də)], *adj.*, old.
agir [aʒiːr], to act; **il s'agit de,** it is a question of, the point is.
agréable [agreabl], *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant, delightful.
aider [ede], to aid, help.
aiguille [egɥiːj], *f.*, needle.
ailleurs [ajœːr], *adv.*, elsewhere; **d'—,** besides, moreover.
aimer [ɛme], to love, like, be fond of; — **mieux,** to prefer.
aîné [ɛne], *adj.*, elder, eldest.
ainsi [ɛ̃si], *adv.*, thus, so; — **de suite,** and so forth.
air [ɛːr], *m.*, air, appearance; **avoir l'—,** to look; **en plein —,** outdoors, in the open air.
aise [ɛːz], *f.*, ease; **être à l'—,** to be at ease, comfortable.
Algérie [alʒeri], *f.*, Algeria.
Allemagne [almaɲ], *f.*, Germany.
aller [ale], to go, be (*with regard to health*); — **à la rencontre de,** to go to meet; — **avec,** to match (*of colors*); — **et retour,** round trip (ticket); — **seulement,** one way (ticket); **s'en —,** to go away.
alliés [alje], *m. pl.*, allies.
allo [alo], *interj.*, hello.
allure [alyːr], *f.*, gait, rate, (rate of) speed.
alors [alɔːr], *adv.*, then.
ambassadeur [ɑ̃basadœːr], *m.*, ambassador.
amener [amne], to bring.
américain [amerikɛ̃], *adj.*, American.
Américain [amerikɛ̃], *m.*, American.
Amérique [amerik], *f.*, America; — **du Nord,** North America; — **du Sud,** South America.

ameublement [amœbləmɑ̃], *m.*, furnishing.
ami [ami], *m.*, friend.
amie [ami], *f.*, friend.
amour [amuːr], *m.*, love.
amuser [amyze], to amuse; **s'—,** to amuse one's self, have a good time.
an [ɑ̃], *m.*, year; **jour de l'—,** New Year's day.
ananas [ananɑ], *m.*, pineapple.
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃] (*f.* **ancienne** [ɑ̃sjɛn]), *adj.*, ancient, old, former.
anglais [ɑ̃glɛ], *adj.*, English.
Anglais [ɑ̃glɛ], *m.*, Englishman.
Angleterre [ɑ̃glətɛːr], *f.*, England.
animal [animal], *m.*, animal.
année [ane], *f.*, year.
annoncer [anɔ̃se], to announce.
août [u], *m.*, August.
apercevoir [apɛrsəvwaːr], to perceive; **s'—** (**de**), to perceive, be aware of.
appareil [aparɛːj], *m.*, apparatus, telephone.
appartement [apartəmɑ̃], *m.*, apartment.
appeler [aple], to call, name; **s'—,** to be called, named.
appétit [apeti], *m.*, apetite.
appliquer [aplike], to apply; **s'—,** to apply one's self.
apporter [apɔrte], to bring.
apprendre [aprɑ̃ːdr], to learn.
après [aprɛ], *prep.*, after.
après [aprɛ], *adv.*, afterwards; — **que,** *conj.*, after.
après-demain [aprɛ dmɛ̃], *adv.*, day after tomorrow.
après-midi [aprɛ midi], *m.*, afternoon.
arbre [arbr], *m.*, tree.
argent [arʒɑ̃], *m.*, money, silver.
Argentine [arʒɑ̃tin], *f.*, Argentina.
argot [argo], *m.*, slang; **en —,** in slang.
arranger [arɑ̃ʒe], to arrange.
arrêt [arɛ], *m.*, stop.
arrêter [arɛte], to stop; **s'—,** to stop.
arrière-petite-fille [arjɛr pətit fiːj], *f.*, great-granddaughter.
arrière-petit-fils [arjɛr pəti fis], *m.*, great-grandson.
arrivée [arive], *f.*, arrival.
arriver [arive], to arrive, happen.
artichaut [artiʃo], *m.*, artichoke.
article [artikl], *m.*, article; — **de fond,** editorial.
ascenseur [asɑ̃sœːr], *m.*, elevator.
asperges [aspɛrʒ], *f. pl.*, asparagus.
assembler [asɑ̃ble], to assemble, get together.
asseoir [aswaːr], to seat; **s'—,** to sit down.
assez [ase], *adv.*, enough, rather, quite.
assiette [asjɛt], *f.*, plate.
assis [asi], *pp. of* **asseoir,** seated.
assister [asiste], to assist; — **à,** to be present at, attend.
assurer [asyre], to assure.
attacher [ataʃe], to attach.
attendant [atɑ̃dɑ̃]; **en —,** (in the) meanwhile.
attendre [atɑ̃ːdr], to expect, wait (for), await; **s'— à,** to expect.
aucun [okœ̃] (*f.* **aucune** [okyːn]), *adj. and pron.*, no, not any.
au-dessus [odsy], *prep.*, above, over.
aujourd'hui [oʒurdɥi], *adv.*, today.
aussi [osi], *adv.*, too, also, as, so.
aussitôt [osito], *adv.*, immediately, at once; — **que,** *conj.*, as soon as.
autant [otɑ̃], *adv.*, as much, as many.
auteur [otœːr], *m.*, author.
autobus [otɔbys], *m.*, autobus.

automatique [otɔmatik], *adj.*, automatic.
automne [otɔn], *m.*, autumn, fall.
automobile [otɔmɔbil], *f.*, automobile.
autre [o:tr], *adj.*, other; **l'un l'—**, one another, each other; **l'un et l'—**, both; **l'un à l'—**, to each other.
autrefois [otrəfwa], *adv.*, formerly, once.
autrement [otrəmɑ̃], *adv.*, otherwise.
avance [avɑ̃:s], *f.*, advance; **d'—**, beforehand; **en —**, before time, early.
avancer [avɑ̃se], to advance; (*of timepieces*) to be fast, gain time.
avant [avɑ̃], *adv.*, before.
avant [avɑ̃ də], *prep.*, before (*in time*); **— de** + *inf.*, before; **— que,** *conj.*, before; **à l'—**, in front.
avant-hier [avɑ̃(t) jɛ:r], *adv.*, day before yesterday.
avant-scène [avɑ̃ sɛ:n], *f.*, stage-box.
avec [avɛk], *prep.*, with.
avènement [avɛnmɑ̃], *m.*, accession.
avis [avi], *m.*, notice, opinion; **changer d'—**, to change one's mind.
avocat [avɔka], *m.*, lawyer.
avoir [avwa:r], to have; **— l'air de** + *inf.*, to look as if; **— l'air** + *adj.*, to look + *adj.*; **y —**, to be; **il y a** [il j a], there is, there are; ago; **— beau** + *inf.*, to + *inf.* in vain, to be of no use to; **— besoin de,** to have need of; need; **— chaud,** to be warm, hot; **— faim,** to be hungry; **— froid,** to be cold; **— envie de** + *inf.*, to desire to, have a desire to; **— honte de** + *inf. or noun*, to be ashamed; **— lieu,** to take place; **— peur de** + *inf. or noun*, to be afraid, fear; **— raison de** + *inf.*, to be right in —ing; **— soif,** to be thirsty; **— sommeil,** to be sleepy; **— tort de** + *inf.*, to be wrong in —ing; **— . . . ans,** to be . . . years old; **— l'intention de,** to intend.
avril [avril], *m.*, April.

B

baccalauréat [bakalɔrea], *m.*, bachelor's degree, A.B. degree.
bachot [baʃo], *m.*, (*slang*) bachelor's degree.
bagages [bagaːʒ], *m. pl.*, baggage.
baignoire [bɛɲwaːr], *f.*, bath-tub; box (*in theatre*).
bain [bɛ̃], *m.*, bath; **salle de —s,** bathroom.
bal [bal], *m.*, ball, dance; **soulier de —**, evening slipper (*ladies'*).
balayer [balɛje], to sweep.
balcon [balkɔ̃], *m.*, balcony.
ballet [balɛ], *m.*, ballet.
banane [banan], *f.*, banana.
banlieue [bɑ̃ljø], *f.*, suburbs.
bas [bɑ]; **en —**, below, downstairs.
bas [bɑ], *m.*, stocking.
bascule [baskyl]; **chaise à —** rocking-chair.
basse-cour [bɑskuːr], *f.*, poultry-yard, barnyard.
bataille [batɑːj], *f.*, battle.
bateau [bato], *m.*, boat.
beau [bo] (*before vowels* **bel** [bɛl], *f.*, **belle** [bɛl]), *adj.*, fine, handsome, beautiful; **avoir —** + *inf.*, to + *inf.* in vain; **faire —** (*of weather*), to be fine.
beaucoup [boku], *adv.*, much, a great deal, many, a lot.

belle-sœur [bɛl sœːr], *f.*, sister-in-law.
bénir [beniːr], to bless (*like* **finir** *except an irregular pp.* **bénit,** *used as adj.*).
berceau [bɛrso], *m.*, cradle.
besoin [bəzwɛ̃], *m.*, need; **avoir — de,** to need, have need of.
beurre [bœːr], *m.*, butter.
bibliothèque [bibliɔtɛk], *f.*, library, book-shelf, book-case.
bien [bjɛ̃], *adv.*, well, good; — **de** + *art.*, much, many; — **que,** *conj.*, although; **tant — que mal,** fairly well, pretty well.
bientôt [bjɛ̃to], *adv.*, soon.
billet [bijɛ], *m.*, ticket, note; — **(d') aller et retour,** round trip ticket, — **(d')aller seulement,** one way ticket; **prendre un —,** to buy a ticket.
blague [blag], *f.*, joke, fooling.
blanc [blɑ̃] (*f.* **blanche** [blɑ̃ːʃ]), *adj.*, white.
bobine [bɔbin], *f.*, spool (*of thread*).
bœuf [bœf] (*pl.* **bœufs** [bø]), *m.*, beef, ox.
bois [bwɑ], *m.*, wood, forest; **dans les —,** in (to) the woods; **aux —,** to the woods.
boîte [bwat], *f.*, box.
bon [bɔ̃] (*f.* **bonne** [bɔn]), *adj.*, good, kind; **faire —,** (*impers.*) to be nice, delightful, pleasant.
bonjour [bɔ̃ʒuːr], *m.*, good morning, good day.
bonne [bɔn], *f.*, maid, waitress.
bonsoir [bɔ̃swaːr], *m.*, good evening.
bonté [bɔ̃te], *f.*, goodness, kindness.
bord [bɔːr], *m.*, shore, edge, side; **à —,** on board.
bordure [bɔrdyːr], *f.*, edge (*of sidewalk*).
bottine [bɔtin], *f.*, (high) shoe.
boucher [buʃe], *m.*, butcher.
bout [bu], *m.*, end; **au — de,** at the end of, after.
branche [brɑ̃ːʃ], *f.*, branch.
braquer [brake], to point, direct, look at fixedly.
Bretagne [brətaɲ], *f.*, Brittany.
bulletin [byltɛ̃], *m.*, check (*for baggage*).
bureau [byro], *m.*, desk, office; — **de poste,** post-office; — **de tabac,** tobacco shop.
but [by], *m.*, end, aim, goal.
buvard [byvaːr]; **papier —,** blotter, blotting-paper.

C

ça [sa] *dem. pron.*, that.
cabine [kabin], *f.*, state-room, cabin.
cabinet [kabinɛ], *m.*, private room; — **de travail,** study.
cadeau [kado], *m.*, present, gift; — **de noces,** wedding present (gift).
cadet [kadɛ] (*f.* **cadette** [kadɛt]), *adj.*, younger.
café [kafe], *m.*, coffee, café; — **au lait,** coffee with hot milk.
cahier [kaje], *m.*, note-book.
cale [kal], *f.*, hold (*of a ship*).
calme [kalm], *adj.*, calm.
camarade [kamarad], *m. or f.*, comrade; — **de classe,** classmate; — **de collège,** college mate.
campagne [kɑ̃paɲ], *f.*, country; **à la —,** in the country.
Canada [kanada], *m.*, Canada.
canard [kanaːr], *m.*, duck.
capitale [kapital], *f.*, capital.
car [kaːr], *conj.*, for, because.
caractère [karaktɛːr], *m.*, character.

carré [kare], *adj.*, square.
carrière [karjɛːr], *f.*, career.
carte [kart], *f.*, card, map.
cas [kɑ], *m.*, case; **au — que,** *conj.*, in case that; **dans ce —,** in this (that) case.
cause [koːz], *f.*, cause; **à — de,** because of.
causer [koze], to chat, talk; cause.
ce [sə] (*before vowels* **cet** [sɛt], *f.* **cette** [sɛt]), *dem. adj.*, this, that.
ce [sə], *dem. pron.*, this, that, these, those, it, he, she, they; **— que,** *rel. pron.*, that which, what; **— qui,** *rel. pron.*, that which, what.
ceci [səsi], *dem. pron.*, this.
céder [sede], to yield.
cela [səla, sla], *dem. pron.*, that.
céleri [selri], *m.*, celery.
celle [sɛl], *dem. pron. f.*, she, her, this, that.
celle-ci [sɛl si], *dem. pron. f.*, this one, the latter.
celle-là [sɛl la], *dem. pron. f.*, that one, the former.
celles [sɛl], *see* **celle.**
celles-ci [sɛl si], *see* **celle-ci.**
celles-là [sɛl la], *see* **celle-là.**
celui [səlɥi], *dem. pron. m.*, he, him, this, that.
celui-ci [səlɥi si], *dem. pron. m.*, this one, the latter.
celui-là [səlɥi la], *dem. pron. m.*, that one, the former.
cent [sɑ̃], *adj.*, (a) hundred.
centaine [sɑ̃tɛn], *f.*, about a hundred.
cependant [səpɑ̃dɑ̃, spɑ̃dɑ̃], *adv.*, however, nevertheless.
cercueil [sɛrkœːj], *m.*, casket, coffin.
cérémonie [seremɔni], *f.*, ceremony; **sans —,** informally.
certain [sɛrtɛ̃], *adj.*, certain, sure, positive.
certainement [sɛrtɛnmɑ̃], *adv.*, certainly.
ces [se], *dem. adj.*, *see* **ce.**
cesser [sɛse], to cease.
cet [sɛt], *dem. adj.*, *see* **ce.**
cette [sɛt], *dem. adj.*, *see* **ce.**
ceux [sø], *dem. pron.*, *see* **celui.**
ceux-ci [sø si], *dem. pron.*, *see* **celui-ci.**
ceux-là [sø la], *dem. pron.*, *see* **celui-là.**
chacun [ʃakœ̃] (*f.* **chacune** [ʃakyn]), *indef. pron.*, each, each one, every one.
chaise [ʃɛːz], *f.*, chair; **— à bascule,** rocking-chair.
chaleur [ʃalœːr], *f.*, heat.
chambre [ʃɑ̃ːbr], *f.*, room; **— à coucher,** bedroom.
champ [ʃɑ̃], *m.*, field.
chance [ʃɑ̃ːs], *f.*, chance, luck.
changer [ʃɑ̃ʒe], to change; **— d'avis,** to change one's mind.
chanter [ʃɑ̃te], to sing.
chapeau [ʃapo], *m.*, hat.
chaque [ʃak], *indef. adj.*, each, every.
charger [ʃarʒe], to charge, load; **se — de,** to take charge of.
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃], *adj.*, charming.
chasseur [ʃasœːr], *m.*, bell-boy, 'buttons'.
chat [ʃa], *m.*, cat.
château [ʃato] (*pl.* **châteaux** [ʃato]), *m.*, château.
chaud [ʃo], *m.*, heat; **avoir —,** to be warm (*of persons*); **faire —,** to be warm, hot (*of weather*).
chaussette [ʃosɛt], *f.*, sock.
chaussure [ʃosyːr], *f.*, foot-wear; **magasin de —s,** shoe store.
chemin [ʃəmɛ̃], *m.*, way, route; **— de fer,** railroad.
cheminée [ʃəmine], *f.*, chimney, fireplace.
chemise [ʃəmiːz], *f.*, shirt.

chèque [ʃɛk], *m.*, check.
cher [ʃɛːr] (*f.* **chère** [ʃɛːr]), *adj.*, dear, costly, expensive.
chercher [ʃɛrʃe], to seek, look for.
cheval [ʃəval], *m.*, horse.
chez [ʃe], *prep.*, at (to *or* in) the house of, with.
chien [ʃjɛ̃], *m.*, dog.
Chine [ʃin], *f.*, China.
chocolat [ʃɔkɔlɑ], *m.*, chocolate.
choisir [ʃwaziːr], to choose, select.
choix [ʃwa], *m.*, choice, selection.
chose [ʃoːz], *f.*, thing; **quelque —,** something.
cigare [sigaːr], *m.*, cigar.
cigarette [sigarɛt], *f.*, cigarette.
cinéma [sinema], *m.*, moving picture theatre, movie.
cinq [sɛ̃ːk, sɛ̃], *adj.*, five.
cinquante [sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt], *adj.*, fifty.
civilisation [sivilizɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, civilization.
clair [klɛːr], *adj.*, light (*of colors*), clear; **faire —,** to be clear (*of weather*); **faire — de lune,** to be moonlight.
classe [klɑːs], *f.*, class, classroom; **salle de —,** class-room.
classique [klasik], *adj.*, classic; *noun., m.*, classic.
clef [kle], *f.*, key.
clientèle [kliɑ̃tɛl], *f.*, clientèle, clients.
club [klyb], *m.*, club (*society*).
coïncidence [kɔɛ̃sidɑ̃ːs], *f.*, coincidence.
col [kɔl], *m.*, collar; **faux —,** (detachable) collar.
colis [kɔli], *m.*, package; **— postal,** parcel post.
collège [kɔlɛːʒ], *m.*, college, school.
coller [kɔle], to stick, flunk (*in an examination*).
combien [kɔ̃bjɛ̃], *adv.*, how much, how many.
commander [kɔmɑ̃de], to command, order.
comme [kɔm], *adv.*, as, like; **— ci — ça,** pretty good, fairly well.
commencement [kɔmɑ̃smɑ̃], *m.*, beginning.
commencer [kɔmɑ̃se], to commence, begin.
comment [kɔmɑ̃], *adv.*, how.
commis [kɔmi], *m.*, clerk.
commode [kɔmɔd], *adj.*, convenient, comfortable.
compagnie [kɔ̃paɲi], *f.*, company.
compagnon [kɔ̃paɲɔ̃], *m.*, companion; **— de chambre,** roommate.
compartiment [kɔ̃partimɑ̃], *m.*, compartment.
complet [kɔ̃plɛ], *m.*, suit (of clothes).
complet [kɔ̃plɛ] (*f.* **complète** [kɔ̃plɛt]), *adj.*, full, complete.
complètement [kɔ̃plɛtmɑ̃], *adv.*, completely.
compléter [kɔ̃plete], to complete.
compliqué [kɔ̃plike], *adj.*, complicated.
composer [kɔ̃poze], to compose; **se — de,** to be composed of, consist of.
comprendre [kɔ̃prɑ̃ːdr], to understand, comprehend.
compter [kɔ̃te], to count, intend.
conduire [kɔ̃dɥiːr], to conduct, lead, drive; **se —,** conduct oneself.
conférence [kɔ̃ferɑ̃ːs], *f.*, lecture.
confitures [kɔ̃fityːr], *f.*, preserves.
confortable [kɔ̃fɔrtabl], *adj.*, comfortable.
conjuguer [kɔ̃ʒyge], to conjugate.
connaissance [kɔnɛsɑ̃ːs], *f.*, acquaintance, knowledge.
connaître [kɔnɛːtr], to know, be

(become) acquainted with; — **de vue,** to know by sight.
conseil [kɔ̃sɛːj], *m.*, (piece of) advice.
conseiller [kɔ̃seje], to advise.
conséquent [kɔ̃sekɑ̃], *m.*, consequence; **par —,** consequently, so.
considérable [kɔ̃siderabl], *adj.*, considerable.
consister [kɔ̃siste], to consist.
construire [kɔ̃strɥiːr], to build, construct.
content [kɔ̃tɑ̃] (**de**), *adj.*, glad, content, pleased (with).
continuer [kɔ̃tinɥe], to continue.
contraire [kɔ̃trɛːr], *m.*, contrary; **au —,** on the contrary.
contre [kɔ̃ːtr], *prep.*, against.
convenable [kɔ̃vnabl], *adj.*, suitable, fitting, proper.
convenir [kɔ̃vniːr], to suit, become.
copie [kɔpi], *f.*, copy (*of exam. papers*, etc.).
correctement [kɔrɛktəmɑ̃], *adv.*, correctly.
corriger [kɔriʒe], to correct.
costume [kɔstym], *m.*, costume, suit (*for ladies*).
côté [kote], *m.*, side; **à — de,** beside; **de l'autre —,** on the other hand (side).
coteau [kɔto], *m.*, hill.
côtelette [kotlɛt], *f.*, chop.
coucher [kuʃe], to put to bed; **se —,** to go to bed, set (*of the sun*); **chambre à —,** bedroom.
couchette [kuʃɛt], *f.*, berth.
couleur [kulœːr], *f.*, color.
couloir [kulwaːr], *m.*, corridor, lobby.
coup [ku], *m.*, blow, stroke; — **d'état,** stroke of state (*violent or illegal change in government*); — **de téléphone,** telephone call (ring); **tout à —,** suddenly.
cour [kuːr], *f.*, court, yard.
courage [kuraːʒ], *m.*, courage.
courir [kuriːr], to run.
cours [kuːr], *m.*, course (of study).
course [kurs], *f.*, errand; **faire des —s,** to go on (do) errands.
court [kuːr], *adj.*, short.
cousin [kuzɛ̃], *m.*, cousin.
cousine [kuzin], *f.*, cousin.
couteau [kuto], *m.*, knife.
coûteux [kutø] (*f.* **coûteuse** [kutøːz]), *adj.*, expensive, costly.
coutume [kutym], *f.*, custom, habit.
couturière [kutyrjɛːr], *f.*, dressmaker.
couvert [kuvɛːr], *pp. of* **couvrir,** covered.
couvert [kuvɛːr], *m.*, cover, place at table; **mettre le —,** to set the table.
couvrir [kuvriːr], to cover; **se —,** to put one's hat on.
craie [krɛ], *f.*, chalk.
craindre [krɛ̃ːdr], to fear, be afraid.
crainte [krɛ̃ːt], *f.*, fear; **de — que,** *conj.*, for fear that, lest.
cravate [kravat], *f.*, cravat, tie.
crayon [krɛjɔ̃], *m.*, pencil.
crêpe [krɛːp], *m.*, crêpe (*material*).
croire [krwaːr], to believe, think.
croiser [krwaze], to cross; **se —,** to cross.
cuiller [kyjɛːr], *f.*, spoon.
cuisine [kɥizin], *f.*, kitchen, cooking; **faire la —,** to do the cooking, cook.
cuistre [kɥistr], *m.*, pedant.
curieux [kyrjø], *adj.*, curious.

D

dame [dam], *f.*, lady.
Danemark [danmark], *m.*, Denmark.
dans [dɑ̃], *prep.*, in, into, after.

danse [dɑ̃:s], *f.*, dance.
danser [dɑ̃se], to dance.
date [dat], *f.*, date.
dater [date], to date.
davantage [davɑ̃ta:ʒ], *adv.*, more.
de [də], *prep.*, of, from, to, in, by, about, than (*before numerals*).
débarquer [debarke], to land, debark.
debout [dəbu], *adv.*, standing.
décembre [desɑ̃:br], *m.*, December.
décider [deside], to decide; **se — à,** to decide; **— de,** to decide.
déclarer [deklare], to declare.
décrire [dekri:r], to describe.
défendre [defɑ̃:dr], to forbid.
défendu [defɑ̃dy], *pp.*, forbidden, prohibited.
défense [defɑ̃:s], *f.*, defense; **— de fumer,** no smoking.
dehors [dəɔ:r], *adv.*, outside.
déjà [deʒa], *adv.*, already.
déjeuner [deʒœne], *m.*, lunch; **petit —,** breakfast.
déjeuner [deʒœne], to breakfast, lunch, have breakfast (lunch).
délicat [delika], *adj.*, delicate.
délicieux [delisjø] (*f.* **délicieuse** [delisjø:z]), *adj.*, delicious, delightful.
demain [dəmɛ̃], *adv.*, tomorrow.
demande [dəmɑ̃:d], *f.*, demand, request.
demander [dəmɑ̃de], to ask, ask of.
demeurer [dəmœre], to reside, live.
demi [dəmi], *adj.*, half; **une demi-heure,** a half hour; **une heure et demie,** an hour and a half.
démodé [demɔde], *adj.*, out of style (fashion).
demoiselle [dəmwazɛl], *f.*, young lady, miss.
départ [depa:r], *m.*, departure.
dépêcher [depɛʃe]; **se —,** to hurry, hasten.
dépense [depɑ̃:s], *f.*, expenditure.
depuis [dəpɥi], *prep.*, since, for; **— quand?** how long? **— que,** *conj.*, since (*temporal*).
déranger [derɑ̃ʒe], to disturb.
dernier [dɛrnje] (*f.* **dernière** [dɛrnjɛ:r]), *adj.*, last, past.
derrière [dɛrjɛ:r], *prep.*, behind.
désagréable [dezagreabl], *adj.*, disagreeable.
désastreux [dezastrø] (*f.* **désastreuse** [dezastø:z]), *adj.*, disastrous.
descendre [desɑ̃:dr], to descend, go down, bring down.
description [deskripsjɔ̃], *f.*, description.
désirer [dezire], to desire, wish, like.
désorganiser [dezɔrganize], to disorganize.
dessert [desɛ:r], *m.*, dessert.
desservir [desɛrvi:r], to clear (the table).
dessus [dəsy], *m.*, top; **au — de,** over, above.
destination [dɛstinɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, destination.
deux [dø], *adj.*, two.
deuxième [dœzjɛm], *adj.*, second.
devant [dəvɑ̃, dvɑ̃], *prep.*, before (*in place*), in front of.
développer [devlɔpe], to develop.
devenir [dəvni:r], to become.
devoir [dəvwa:r], to owe, ought, must, be to.
devoir [dəvwa:r], *m.*, duty, task.
dévoué [devwe], *adj.*, devoted.
Dieu [djø], *m.*, God.
différent [difera̱], *adj.*, different, various.
difficile [difisil], *adj.*, difficult, hard.
difficulté [difikylte], *f.*, difficulty.

dimanche [dimɑ̃:ʃ], *m.*, Sunday.
dinde [dɛ̃:d], *f.*, turkey.
dîner [dine], to dine, have dinner.
dîner [dine], *m.*, dinner.
diplôme [diplo:m], *m.*, diploma.
dire [di:r], to say, tell; **c'est-à-dire,** that is to say.
direction [direksjɔ̃], *f.*, direction.
discuter [diskyte], to discuss.
disposition [dispozisjɔ̃], *f.*, disposition, disposal.
disque [disk], *m.*, disk, record (*phonograph*).
distance [distɑ̃:s], *f.*, distance.
distinct [distɛ̃], *adj.*, distinct.
distraction [distraksjɔ̃], *f.*, distraction.
divan [divɑ̃], *m.*, divan.
divertir [divɛrti:r], to divert, entertain, amuse.
diviser [divize], to divide.
dix [dis, di], *adj.*, ten.
dix-huit [dizɥit, dizɥi], *adj.*, eighteen.
dix-neuf [diznœf, diznɸ], *adj.*, nineteen.
dix-sept [dissɛt, dissɛ], *adj.*, seventeen.
dizaine [dizɛn], *f.*, set of ten, about ten; **par —s,** by tens.
dommage [dɔma:ʒ], *m.*; **il (c') est —,** it is a pity.
donc [dɔ̃:k, dɔ̃], *conj.*, then, therefore, pray.
donner [dɔne], to give; **— sur,** to open upon, give on; **se — la main,** to shake hands.
dont [dɔ̃], *rel. pron.*, whose, of whom, of which.
dormir [dɔrmi:r], to sleep.
dortoir [dɔrtwa:r], *m.*, dormitory.
douane [dwan], *f.*, custom-house.
douanier [dwanje], *m.*, custom-house officer.
douche [duʃ], *f.*, shower bath.
doute [dut], *m.*, doubt.
douter [dute], to doubt.
doux [du] (*f.* **douce** [dus]), *adj.*, sweet, gentle.
douzaine [duzɛn], *f.*, dozen.
douze [du:z], *adj.*, twelve.
droit [drwɑ], right, law; **École de Droit,** Law School.
droit [drwɑ], *adj.*, right, upright; **à —e,** at (to) the right.
durer [dyre], to last, continue.

E

eau [o], *f.*, water.
échouer [eʃwe]; **— à un examen,** to fail an examination.
éclater [eklate], to explode, break forth, break out.
école [ekɔl], *f.*, school; **à l'—,** at school.
écouter [ekute], to listen (to).
écrire [ekri:r], to write.
écurie [ekyri], *f.*, stable (*for horses*).
édifice [edifis], *m.*, building.
éditeur [editœ:r], *m.*, publisher.
éducation [edykɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, education.
effet [efɛ], *m.*, effect; **en —,** in fact.
égal [egal], *adj.*, equal; **cela m'est —,** that's all the same to me.
égalité [egalite], *f.*, equality.
égarer [egare], to mislay, misplace; **s'—,** to be lost, lose one's way.
église [egli:z], *f.*, church; **à l'—,** at church.
électrique [elɛktrik], *adj.*, electric.
élève [elɛ:v], *m. or f.*, pupil, student.
élever [elve], to raise, bring up.
elle [ɛl], *pers. pron.*, she, her, it.
elle-même [ɛl mɛ:m], *pers. pron.*, herself.

elles [ɛl], *pers. pron. f. pl.*, they, them.
elles-mêmes [ɛl mɛːm], *pers. pron. f. pl.*, themselves.
embarasser [ɑ̃barase], to embarras.
embarquer [ɑ̃barke]; **s'—,** to embark.
empereur [ɑ̃prœːr], *m.*, emperor.
empire [ɑ̃piːr], *m.*, empire.
emplette [ɑ̃plɛt], *f.*, purchase; **faire des —s,** to go shopping, shop.
employé [ɑ̃plwaje], *m.*, employé.
employer [ɑ̃plwaje], to use, employ.
en [ɑ̃], *pron. adv.*, of it (*or* them), some, any, from there.
en [ɑ̃], *prep.*, in, into, to, of, during, while, by, upon.
enchanté [ɑ̃ʃɑ̃te], *adj.*, delighted.
encore [ɑ̃kɔːr], *adv.*, yet, still, again, more.
encre [ɑ̃ːkr], *f.*, ink.
endormir [ɑ̃dɔrmiːr]; **s'—,** to fall asleep, go to sleep.
endroit [ɑ̃drwɑ], *m.*, place, spot.
enfant [ɑ̃fɑ̃], *m. or f.*, child.
enfiler [ɑ̃file], to thread (*a needle*).
enfin [ɑ̃fɛ̃], *adv.*, finally, at last.
engager [ɑ̃gaʒe], to urge, advise.
enlever [ɑ̃lve], to remove, take away.
ennuyer [ɑ̃nɥije], to bore, weary; **s'—,** to be bored, wearied.
enregistrer [ɑ̃rʒistre], to check (*of baggage*).
enseignement [ɑ̃seɲmɑ̃], *m.*, instruction.
ensemble [ɑ̃sɑ̃ːbl], *adv.*, together.
ensuite [ɑ̃sɥit], *adv.*, afterwards, then, next.
entendre [ɑ̃tɑ̃ːdr], to hear.
enthousiasme [ɑ̃tuzjasm], *m.*, enthusiasm.
enthousiaste [ɑ̃tuzjast], *adj.*, enthusiastic.
entier [ɑ̃tje] (*f.* **entière** [ɑ̃tjɛːr]), *adj.*, entire, whole.
entr'acte [ɑ̃trakt], *m.*, intermission, interval between the acts.
entre [ɑ̃ːtrə, ɑ̃ːtr], *prep.*, between.
entrée [ɑ̃tre], *f.*, entrée (*in a dinner*); entrance.
entreprendre [ɑ̃trəprɑ̃ːdr], to undertake.
entrer [ɑ̃tre], to enter, go (come) in (**dans** *is required before a following noun*).
entretenir [ɑ̃trətniːr], to keep up.
enveloppe [ɑ̃vlɔp], *f.*, envelope.
envers [ɑ̃vɛːr], *prep.*, toward, to.
envie [ɑ̃vi], *f.*, envy, desire; **avoir — de,** to desire to, have a desire to.
environ [ɑ̃virɔ̃], *adv.*, about, approximately.
envoyer [ɑ̃vwaje], to send.
épicier [episje], *m.*, grocer.
époque [epɔk], *f.*, epoch, period.
épouser [epuze], to marry, wed.
épousseter [epuste], to dust.
escarpin [ɛskarpɛ̃], *m.*, pump (*for dancing*, etc.).
espace [ɛspɑːs], *f.*, space, room.
Espagne [ɛspaɲ], *f.*, Spain.
espagnol [ɛspaɲɔl], *adj.*, Spanish.
Espagnol [ɛspaɲɔl], *m.*, Spaniard.
espèce [ɛspɛs], *f.*, kind, sort.
espérer [ɛspɛre], to hope.
essayer [ɛsɛje], to try, try on.
et [e], *conj.*, and.
étable [etabl], *f.*, stable (*for cows*, etc.)
état [eta], *m.*, state; **coup d'état,** stroke of state; **homme d'—,** statesman.
États-Unis [etazyni], *m. pl.*, United States.
été [ete], *m.*, summer.
étoffe [etɔf], *f.*, goods, material.
étranger [etrɑ̃ʒe], *adj.*, foreign.
être [ɛːtr], to be; **— à,** to belong

to; — **en train de,** to be busy with (at).
étude [etyd], *f.*, study.
étudiant [etydjɑ̃], *m.*, student.
étudier [etydje], to study.
eux [ø], *pers. pron. m. pl.*, they, them.
eux-mêmes [ø mɛːm], *pers. pron. m. pl.*, themselves.
éviter [evite], to avoid.
exactement [egzaktəmɑ̃], *adv.*, exactly.
examen [egzamɛ̃], *m.*, examination; **passer un —,** to take an examination; **réussir à un —,** to pass an examination; **échouer à un —,** to fail in an examination.
examiner [egzamine], to examine.
excellent [ɛksɛlɑ̃], *adj.*, excellent.
excepté [ɛksɛpte], *prep.*, except.
excursion [ɛkskyrsjɔ̃], *f.*, excursion.
excuse [ɛkskyːz], *f.*, excuse.
exemple [egzɑ̃ːpl], *m.*, example; **par —,** for instance, for example.
exercice [egzɛrsis], *m.*, exercise.
expédier [ɛkspedje], to send.
expliquer [ɛksplike], to explain.
extérieur [ɛksterjœːr], exterior; **à l'—,** outside.

F

face [fas]; **en — de,** opposite.
fâché [fɑʃe], *adj.*, sorry, angry.
facile [fasil], *adj.*, easy.
facilement [fasilmɑ̃], *adv.*, easily.
façon [fasɔ̃], *f.*, manner, way; **de cette —,** in this way; **de — que,** *conj.*, so that.
facteur [faktœːr], *m.*, postman, (railway) porter.
facultatif [fakyltatif], *adj.*, optional.
faim [fɛ̃], *f.*, hunger; **avoir —,** to be hungry.
faire [fɛːr], to make, do; — **beau,** (*of weather*) to be fine; — **bon,** (*impers.*) to be nice, delightful, pleasant; — **un cadeau,** to give a present, gift; — **chaud,** (*of weather*) to be hot, warm; — **clair de lune,** to be moonlight; — **des courses,** to go on (do) errands; — **la cuisine,** to do the cooking, cook; — **des emplettes,** to go shopping; — **frais,** (*of weather*) to be cool; — **froid,** (*of weather*) to be cold; — **jour,** to be daylight; — **une malle,** to pack a trunk; — **mauvais,** (*of weather*) to be bad; — **de son mieux,** to do one's best; — **un pique-nique,** to go picnicking; — **tout son possible,** to do all one can; — **une promenade,** to take a walk; — **une promenade en automobile,** to go automobiling; — **une promenade en bateau,** to go boating; — **une promenade à cheval,** to go horseback riding; — **queue,** to stand in line; — **la sieste,** to take a nap; — **du vent,** (*of weather*) to be windy; — **une visite,** to pay a visit, a call; — **un voyage de noces,** to be (go) on a honeymoon; — + *infinitive*, to cause, have, make + *inf. or pp.*
fait [fɛ]; **tout à —,** quite, wholly; **tout —,** ready-made.
falloir [falwaːr], to be necessary.
fameux [famø], *adj.*, famous.
famille [famiːj], *f.*, family.
fatigant [fatigɑ̃], *adj.*, fatiguing, tiring.
fatigué [fatige], *adj.*, tired, wearied.
faute [foːt], *f.*, mistake, fault.
fauteuil [fotœːj], *m.*, armchair.
femme [fam], *f.*, woman, wife.

fenêtre [fənɛːtr], *f.*, window.
fer [fɛːr], *m.*, iron; **chemin de —,** railroad.
ferme [fɛrm], *f.*, farm, farmhouse, farm-buildings; **à (dans) la —,** on the farm.
fermer [fɛrme], to close, shut.
fête [fɛːt], *f.*, holiday, fête, festivity; **jour de —,** festival, holiday.
feu [fø], *m.*, fire.
feuille [fœːj], *f.*, leaf.
feutre [føːtr], *m.*, felt, felt hat.
février [fevrie], *m.*, February.
fibre [fibr], *f.*, fiber.
fier [fjɛːr] (*f.* **fière** [fjɛːr]), *adj.*, proud.
figurer [figyre]; **se —,** to imagine to one's self.
fil [fil], *m.*, thread.
fille [fiːj], *f.*, daughter, girl.
film [film], *m.*, film (*of movie*).
fils [fis], *m.*, son.
fin [fɛ̃], *f.*, end; **à la —,** at last, finally.
finir [finiːr], to finish.
fixe [fiks], *adj.*, appointed, fixed.
fixer [fikse], to fix, appoint.
flatter [flate], to flatter.
fleur [flœːr], *f.*, flower; **en —,** in bloom.
fois [fwa], *f.*, time (*recurrence*).
fond [fɔ̃], *m.*, bottom, back; **au — de,** at the rear of; **article de —,** editorial.
former [fɔrme], to form.
formule [fɔrmyl], *f.*, formula.
fort [fɔːr], *adj.*, strong, hard; **être — en,** to be good at, excellent in.
foule [ful], *f.*, crowd.
fourchette [furʃɛt], *f.*, fork.
fournir [furniːr], to furnish.
fox-trot [fɔkstrɔt], *m.*, fox-trot (*a dance*).
foyer [fwaje], *m.*, lobby, foyer.
frais [frɛ] (*f.* **fraîche** [frɛːʃ]), *adj.*, cool; **faire —,** to be cool (*of weather*).
fraise [frɛːz], *f.*, strawberry.
franc [frɑ̃], *m.*, franc (*coin*).
français [frɑ̃sɛ], *adj.*, French.
Français [frɑ̃sɛ], *m.*, Frenchman.
France [frɑ̃ːs], *f.*, France.
franchement [frɑ̃ʃmɑ̃], *adv.*, frankly.
frapper [frape], to strike, knock.
fréquenter [frekɑ̃te], to frequent.
frère [freːr], *m.*, brother.
froid [frwa], *m.*, cold; **avoir —,** to be cold (*of persons*); **faire —,** to be cold (*of weather*).
fromage [frɔmaːʒ], *m.*, cheese.
fruit [frɥi], *m.*, fruit.
fumée, [fyme], *f.*, smoke.
fumer [fyme], to smoke.
fumeur [fymœːr], *m.*, smoker.
fumoir [fymwaːr], *m.*, smoking-room.

G

gagner [gaɲe], to gain, win, earn.
gai [ge], *adj.*, gay, lively, merry.
galerie [galri], *f.*, gallery.
gant [gɑ̃], *m.*, glove.
garçon [garsɔ̃], *m.*, boy, waiter, bachelor; **— d'honneur,** best man (*at a wedding*).
garde [gard], *f.*; **prendre —,** to take care, look out.
gare [gaːr], *f.*, station.
gâteau [gato], *m.*, cake.
gauche [goːʃ], *adj.*, left; **à —,** at (to) the left.
gazon [gazɔ̃], *m.*, grass, turf.
geler [ʒəle], to freeze.
général [ʒeneral], *adj.*, general; **en —,** in general.
généralement [ʒeneralmɑ̃], *adv.*, generally.
genou [ʒənu], *m.*, knee.

genre [ʒɑ̃:r], *m.*, kind, gender.
gens [ʒɑ̃], *m. pl.*, people, persons; **jeunes —,** *m. pl.*, young people.
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti] (*f.* **gentille** [ʒɑ̃ti:j]), *adj.*, nice, kind.
géographie [ʒeɔgrafi], *f.*, geography.
gilet [ʒilɛ], *m.*, vest.
glace [glas], *f.*, ice, ice-cream.
goût [gu], *m.*, taste.
gouvernement [guvɛrnəmɑ̃], *m.*, government.
grammaire [gramɛ:r], *f.*, grammar.
gramophone [gramɔfon], *m.*, phonograph.
grand [grɑ̃], *adj.*, great, large, tall.
grand'mère [grɑ̃ mɛ:r], *f.*, grandmother.
grand-père [grɑ̃ pɛ:r], *m.*, grandfather.
gratter [grate], to scratch.
gravure [gravy:r], *f.*, engraving.
grillé [grije], *adj.*; **pain —,** toast.
gris [gri], *adj.*, gray.
gros [gro] (*f.* **grosse** [gro:s]), *adj.*, big, large, fat.
groupe [grup], *m.*, group, party.
guère [gɛ:r], *adv.*, hardly, scarcely.
guéridon [geridɔ̃], *m.*, small round table.
guerre [gɛ:r], *f.*, war.
guichet [giʃɛ], *m.*, ticket-window.
guillotiner [gijɔtine], to guillotine.

H

habiller [abije]; **s'—,** to dress (one's self), to get dressed.
habit [abi], *m.*, coat, dress-coat.
habiter [abite], to live in.
habitude [abityd], *f.*, habit; **d'—,** generally, usually.
'haut [o], *adj.*, high, loud; **à —e voix,** aloud.
'Havre [a:vr], *m.*, Havre, le **Havre** (*city in France*).
heure [œ:r], *f.*, hour, time, o'clock; **de bonne —,** early; **à l'—,** on time.
heureusement [œrøzmɑ̃], *adv.*, fortunately, happily.
heureux [œrø], *adj.*, happy, glad, fortunate.
hier [jɛ:r], *adv.*, yesterday; **— soir,** last evening (night).
histoire [istwa:r], *f.*, history.
hiver [ivɛ:r], *m.*, winter.
homme [ɔm], *m.*, man; **— d'état,** statesman.
honnête [ɔnɛ:t], *adj.*, honest, well-bred; **— homme,** gentleman.
honneur [ɔnœ:r], *m.*, honor; **garçon d'—,** best man (*at a wedding*); **parole d'—,** on my word of honnor.
'honte [ɔ̃:t], *f.*, shame; **avoir —,** to be ashamed.
'hors-d'œuvre [ɔrdœ:vr], *m.*, hors-d'œuvre, appetizer.
hospitalier [ɔspitalje], *adj.*, hospitable.
hôtel [ɔtɛl], *m.*, hotel.
'huit [ɥit, ɥi], *adj.*, eight.
humeur [ymœ:r], *f.*, humor; **de bonne —,** in a good humor.

I

ici [isi], *adv.*, here.
idée [ide], *f.*, idea
il [il], *pers. pron. m.*, he, it.
ils [il], *pers. pron. m. pl.*, they.
importance [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃:s], *f.*, importance.
important [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃], *adj.*, important.
importer [ɛ̃pɔrte], to be of importance, to matter; **n'importe,** it doesn't matter, no matter.

impossible [ẽpɔsibl], *adj.*, impossible.
incliner [ẽkline], **s'—,** to bow.
Indes [ẽːd], *f. pl.*, the Indes.
indiquer [ẽdike], to indicate, point out.
inscrire [ẽskriːr], to inscribe, register.
installer [ẽstale], to install, settle.
instruction [ẽstryksjɔ̃], *f.*, instruction.
insulter [ẽsylte], to insult.
intelligent [ẽtɛliʒɑ̃], *adj.*, intelligent.
intention [ẽtɑ̃sjɔ̃], *f.*, intention; **avoir l'— de,** to intend to.
intéressant [ẽteresɑ̃], *adj.*, interesting.
intéresser [ẽterɛse], to interest; **s'— à,** to be interested in.
intérêt [ẽterɛ], *m.*, interest.
intérieur [ẽterjœːr], *m.*, interior; **à l'—,** inside.
invitation [ẽvitɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, invitation.
invité [ẽvite], *m.*, guest.
inviter [ẽvite], to invite.
irrespectueux [irɛspɛktɥø], *adj.*, disrespectful.
Italie [itali], *f.*, Italy.
italien [italjẽ], *adj.*, Italian.
Italien [italjẽ], *m.*, Italian.
itinéraire [itinerɛːr], *m.*, itinerary.

J

jamais [ʒamɛ], *adv.*, never, ever.
janvier [ʒɑ̃vje], *m.*, January.
Japon [ʒapɔ̃], *m.*, Japan.
jardin [ʒardẽ], *m.*, garden.
je [ʒə], *pers. pron.*, I.
Jean [ʒɑ̃], *m.*, John.
jeter [ʒɔte], to throw.
jeu [ʒø], *m.*, play, game.
jeudi [ʒødi], *m.*, Thursday.
jeune [ʒœn], *adj.*, young.
joie [ʒwɑ], *f.*, joy.
joli [ʒɔli], *adj.*, pretty.
jouer [ʒwe], to play; **— du piano,** to play the piano; **— au tennis,** to play tennis.
joueur [ʒwœːr], *m.*, player.
jouir [ʒwiːr], to enjoy.
jour [ʒuːr], *m.*, day; **faire —,** to be light (*of day*); **— de l'an,** New Year's Day; **de nos —s,** nowadays, in our time; **tous les —s,** every day.
journal [ʒurnal], *m.*, newspaper.
journée [ʒurne], *f.*, day (*from sun-rise to sun-set, not 24 hours*).
juillet [ʒyjɛ], *m.*, July.
juin [ʒɥɛ̃], *m.*, June.
jumelles [ʒymɛl], *f. pl.*, opera-glasses.
jusque [ʒysk], *prep.*; **jusqu'à,** as far as, to, up to; **jusqu'ici,** as far as here, up to here, until now; **jusqu'à ce que,** *conj.*, as far as, until.
juste [ʒyst], *adj.*, just, right, exact; **au —,** exactly.
justement [ʒystəmɑ̃], *adv.*, exactly.

L

l' [l], *see* **le** *or* **la.**
la [la], *def. art. f.*, the.
la [la], *pers. pron. f.*, her, it.
là [la], *adv.*, there; **—-dedans,** *adv.*, in, inside, within.
là-bas [labɑ], *adv.*, yonder, over there.
lac [lak], *m.*, lake.
laine [lɛn], *f.*, wool.
laisser [lɛse], to leave, let, allow, permit; **— tomber,** to drop, let fall.
lait [lɛ], *m.*, milk.
laitue [lɛty], *f.*, lettuce.
langue [lɑ̃ːg], *f.*, language.

laquelle [lakɛl], *rel. and int. pron. f.*, which, that, who, whom.
latin [latɛ̃], *adj.*, Latin; **Quartier —,** Latin Quarter.
laver [lave], to wash; **se —,** to wash one's self.
le [lə, l], *def. art. m.*, the.
le [lə, l], *pers. pron. m.*, him, it.
leçon [ləsɔ̃], *f.*, lesson.
lecture [lɛktyːr], *f.*, reading; **exercice de —,** reading exercise.
léger [leʒe], *adj.*, light.
légume [legym], *m.*, vegetable.
Le Mans [lə mɑ̃], *m.*, Le Mans (*city in France*).
lendemain [lɑ̃dmɛ̃], *m.*, next day, day after.
lequel [ləkɛl], *rel. and int. pron. m.*, which, that, who, whom.
les [le], *def. art. pl. m. or f.*, the.
les [le], *pers. pron. pl. m. or f.*, them.
lesquelles [lekɛl], *pl. of* **laquelle** *and* **lequel.**
lettre [lɛtr], *f.*, letter.
leur [lœːr], *poss. adj. and pron.*, their, theirs.
leur [lœːr], *pers. pron.*, to them, them.
lever [ləve], to raise; **se —,** to rise, get up.
lever [ləve], *m.*, rising; **au — du soleil,** at sun-rise.
liberté [libɛrte], *f.*, liberty.
libraire [librɛːr], *m.*, book-seller.
libre [libr], *adj.*, free.
lieu [ljø], *m.*, place; **avoir —,** to take place; **au — de,** *prep.*, instead of.
ligne [liɲ], *f.*, line; **pêcher à la —,** to fish (*with rod and line*).
linge [lɛ̃ːʒ], *m.*, linen (goods).
lire [liːr], to read.
lit [li], *m.*, bed.
livre [liːvr], *m.*, book.
loge [lɔːʒ], *f.*, box (*in a theatre*).
loger [lɔʒe], to lodge, keep.
loin [lwɛ̃], *adv.*, far, far off.
Londres [lɔ̃ːdr], *m.*, London.
long [lɔ̃] (*f.* **longue** [lɔ̃ːg]), *adj.*, long; **le — de,** along.
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃], *adv.*, long, a long time *or* while.
lorsque [lɔrskə, lɔrsk], *conj.*, when.
louer [lwe], to rent, let.
lui [lɥi], *pers. pron. m. or f.*, he, him, to him; her, to her; it, to it.
lui-même [lɥi mɛːm], *pers. pron. m.*, himself.
lundi [lœ̃di], *m.*, Monday.
lune [lyn], *f.*, moon; **faire clair de —,** to be moonlight.
lunettes [lynɛt], *f. pl.*, spectacles.
lustre [lystr], *m.*, chandelier.
luxe [lyks], *m.*, luxury.
lycée [lise], *m.*, lycée (*approximately like our Junior College*).
lycéen [liseɛ̃], *m.*, student of a lycée.

M

m' [m], *see* **me.**
ma [ma], *poss. adj. f.*, *see* **mon.**
machine [maʃin], *f.*, machine; **— à écrire,** typewriter.
madame [madam], *f.*, madame, Mrs.
mademoiselle [madmwazɛl], *f.*, Miss.
magasin [magazɛ̃], *m.*, store, shop; **— de nouveautés,** dry-goods store, department store.
magnifique [maɲifik], *adj.*, magnificent.
mai [mɛ], *m.*, May.
main [mɛ̃], *f.*, hand; **à la —,** in the hand.
maintenant [mɛ̃tnɑ̃], *adv.*, now.
mais [mɛ], *conj.*, but.

maison [mezɔ̃], *f.*, house; **à la —,** at home.
mal [mal], *adv.*, badly, ill.
mal [mal], *m.*; **— de mer,** seasickness.
malade [malad], *adj.*, sick, ill.
maladie [maladi], *f.*, illness, sickness.
malheur [malœːr], *m.*, misfortune.
malheureux [malœrø], *adj.*, unhappy, unfortunate.
malle [mal], *f.*, trunk; **faire une —,** to pack a trunk.
manchette [mɑ̃ʃɛt], *f.*, cuff.
manger [mɑ̃ʒe], to eat; **salle à —,** dining-room.
manière [manjɛːr], *f.*, manner, way; **de — que,** so that.
manquer [mɑ̃ke], to be lacking, miss, fail.
marché [marʃe], *m.*, market; **(à) bon —,** cheap.
marcher [marʃe], to march, walk.
mardi [mardi], *m.*, Tuesday.
mari [mari], *m.*, husband.
mariage [marjaːʒ], *m.*, marriage, wedding.
Marie [mari], *f.*, Mary.
marier [marje], to marry (give in marriage); **se — à (avec),** to marry, be married to, wed.
marquer [marke], to mark.
mars [mars], *m.*, March.
match [matʃ], *m.*, match (*of sports*).
matériel [materjɛl], *m.*, material.
mathématiques [matematik], *f. pl.*, mathematics.
matin [matɛ̃], *m.*, morning; **du —,** in the morning, A.M.
matinée [matine], *f.*, matinée, morning.
mauvais [mɔvɛ], *adj.*, bad, poor; **faire —,** to be bad (*of weather*).
me [mə, m], *pers. pron.*, me, to me.
mécanisme [mekanism], *m.*, mechanism, attachment.
meilleur [mɛjœːr], *adj.*, better.
membre [mɑ̃ːbr], *m.*, member.
même [mɛːm], *adj.*, self, same.
même [mɛːm], *adv.*, even.
mener [məne], to lead, take.
mer [mɛːr], *f.*, sea, ocean; **mal de —,** seasickness.
merci [mɛrsi], *adv.*, thanks, no thank you.
mercredi [mɛrkrədi], *m.*, Wednesday.
mère [mɛːr], *f.*, mother.
méridional [meridjɔnal], *adj.*, southern.
merveille [mɛrvɛːj], wonder, marvel; **à —,** marvellously.
mes [me], *poss. adj. pl. m. and f.*, *see* **mon.**
messe [mɛs], *f.*, mass (*church service*).
mesure [məzyːr], *f.*, measure; **sur —,** to order, to measure.
mesurer [məzyre], to measure.
métropolitain [metrɔpɔlitɛ̃], *m.*, subway (*usually called* **métro**).
mettre [mɛtr], to put, put on, place; **se — à,** to begin to; **— le couvert,** to set the table; **— à la poste,** to mail (*of letters*).
meuble [mœbl], *m.*, piece of furniture.
meubler [mœble], to furnish.
Mexique [mɛksik], *m.*, Mexico.
midi [midi], *m.*, south.
midi [midi], *adv.*, noon.
mien [mjɛ̃], *poss. pron. m.*, mine, my own.
mienne [mjɛn], *poss. pron. f.*, mine, my own.
mieux [mjø], *adv.*, better; **aimer —,** to prefer; **faire de son —,** to do one's best; **tant —,** so much the better.
mil [mil], *adj.*, thousand.

milieu [milјø], *m.*, middle, center; **au — de,** in the midst of.
mille [mil], *adj.*, thousand.
million [miljɔ̃], *m.*, million.
ministre [ministr], *m.*, minister.
minuit [minɥi], *adv.*, midnight.
minute [minyt], *f.*, minute.
misère [mizɛːr], *f.*, wretchedness, misery.
mode [mɔd], *f.*, fashion, mode, style; **à la —,** fashionable.
moderne [mɔdɛrn], *adj.*, modern.
modeste [mɔdɛst], *adj.*, modest.
modiste [mɔdist], *f.*, hatter (*for women*).
mœurs [mœrs], *f. pl.*, manners, habits.
moi [mwa], *pers. pron.*, I, me, to me.
moi-même [mwa mɛːm], *pers. pron.*, myself.
moindre [mwɛ̃ːdr], *adj.*, less, lesser.
moins [mwɛ̃], *adv.*, less; **au —,** at least; **à — que,** *conj.*, unless.
mois [mwa], *m.*, month.
moitié [mwatje], *f.*, half.
moment [mɔmɑ̃], *m.*, moment.
mon [mɔ̃], *poss. adj. m.*, my.
monarque [mɔnark], *m.*, monarch.
monde [mɔ̃ːd], *m.*, world, people; **tout le —,** everybody, everyone; **beau —,** society.
monsieur [məsjø, msjø], *m.*, Mr., sir; gentleman.
monter [mɔ̃te], to go up, mount; carry up.
montre [mɔ̃ːtr], *f.*, watch.
montrer [mɔ̃tre], to show.
morceau [mɔrso], *m.*, piece, selection (*of music*).
mort [mɔːr], *f.*, death.
mortel [mɔrtɛl], *adj.*, mortal.
mot [mo], *m.*, word.
mou [mu] (**mol** [mɔl], *f.*, **molle** (mɔl]), *adj.*, soft.
mouchoir [muʃwaːr], *m.*, handkerchief.
mourir [muriːr], to die.
moyen [mwajɛ̃], *m.*, means.
mur [myːr], *m.*, wall.
mûr [myːr], *adj.*, ripe.
mûrir [myriːr], to ripen.
musée [myze], *m.*, museum.
musique [myzik], *f.*, music.

N

nager [naʒe], to swim.
naître [nɛːtr], to be born.
nappe [nap], *f.*, table-cloth.
nation [nɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, nation.
national [nasjɔnal], *adj.*, national.
naturel [natyrɛl], *adj.*, natural, clear (*of coffee*).
naturellement [natyrɛlmɑ̃], *adv.*, naturally, of course.
ne [nə], *adv.*, not; **— . . . aucun,** not any, no; **— . . . guère,** scarcely, hardly; **— . . . jamais,** never; **— . . . ni . . . ni,** neither . . . nor; **— . . . nul,** not any; **— . . . pas,** not, no; **— . . . personne,** nobody, no one; **— . . . plus,** no more, no longer; **— . . . point,** not at all; **— . . . que,** only; **— . . . rien,** nothing.
néanmoins [neɑ̃mwɛ̃], *adv.*, nevertheless.
nécessaire [neseseːr], *adj.*, necessary.
neige [nɛːʒ], *f.*, snow.
neiger [nɛʒe], to snow.
nettoyer [nɛtwaje], to clean.
neuf [nœf], *adj.*, new.
neuf [nœf], *adj.*, nine.
neveu [nəvø], *m.*, nephew.
nez [ne], *m.*, nose.
ni [ni], *conj.*, neither, nor.
nièce [njɛs], *f.*, niece.
nier [nje], to deny.
noces [nɔs], *f. pl.*, wedding; **ca-**

deau de —, wedding present, gift; **voyage de —**, wedding trip.
Noël [nɔɛl], *m.*, Christmas.
noir [nwaːr], *adj.*, black; **tableau —**, blackboard.
nom [nɔ̃], *m.*, name, noun.
nombreux [nɔ̃brø], *adj.*, numerous.
nommer [nɔme], to name, call.
non [nɔ̃], *adv.*, no.
nos [no], *poss. adj. pl.*, *see* **notre.**
note [nɔt], *f.*, bill.
notre [nɔtrə, nɔtr], *poss. adj.*, our.
nôtre [noːtr], *poss. pron.*, ours, our own.
nous [nu], *pers. pron. pl.*, we, us, to us.
nous-mêmes [nu mɛːm], *pers. pron. pl.*, ourselves.
nouveau [nuvo], (**nouvel** [nuvɛl], *f.* **nouvelle** [nuvɛl]), *adj.*, new, recent, another; **de —**, again.
nouveauté [nuvote], *f.*, novelty; **magasin de —s**, dry-goods store, department store.
Nouvelle Orléans [nuvɛl ɔrleɑ̃], *f.*, New Orleans.
nouvelles [nuvɛl], *f. pl.*, news.
novembre [nɔvɑ̃ːbr], *m.*, November.
nuance [nɥɑ̃ːs], *f.*, shade (*of meaning, color*, etc.).
nuit [nɥi], *f.*, night.
nul [nyl], *adj. pron.*, no, not any.
numéro [nymero], *m.*, number.

O

obéir [ɔbeiːr], to obey.
obligatoire [ɔbligatwaːr], *adj.*, obligatory.
obliger [ɔbliʒe], to oblige, compel.
observer [ɔpsɛrve], to observe.
occasion [ɔkɑzjɔ̃], *f.*, occasion, opportunity.
occupé [ɔkype], *adj.*, busy.
occuper [ɔkype], to occupy, busy; **s'— de**, to be occupied with, busy with, look after.
octobre [ɔktɔbr], *m.*, October.
odeur [ɔdœːr], *f.*, smell, odor.
œil [œːj], *m.*, eye.
œuf [œf], *m.*, egg.
oie [wɑ], *f.*, goose.
oiseau [wazo], *m.*, bird.
olive [ɔliːv], *f.*, olive.
omettre [ɔmɛtr], to omit.
on [ɔ̃], *indef. pron.*, one, they, people.
oncle [ɔ̃ːkl], *m.*, uncle.
onze [ɔ̃ːz], *adj.*, eleven.
opéra [ɔpera], *m.*, opera.
or [ɔːr], *m.*, gold.
orange [ɔrɑ̃ːʒ], *f.*, orange.
orchestre [ɔrkɛstr], *m.*, orchestra.
ordonner [ɔrdɔne], to command, order.
ordre [ɔrdr], *m.*, order.
organiser [ɔrganize], to organize.
original [ɔriʒinal], *m.*, queer person.
ôter [ote], to remove, take off.
ou [u], *conj.*, or.
où [u], *adv.*, where, in which.
oublier [ublie], to forget.
oui [wi], *adv.*, yes.
ouvert [uvɛːr], *adj.*, open, opened.
ouvrage [uvraːʒ], *m.*, work.
ouvrir [uvriːr], to open.

P

page [paːʒ], *f.*, page (*of a book*).
pain [pɛ̃], *m.*, bread, loaf; **— grillé**, toast.
paire [pɛːr], *f.*, pair.
pancarte [pɑ̃kart], *f.*, sign, placard.
panier [panje], *m.*, basket; **— à ouvrage**, sewing-(work-)basket.
pantalon [pɑ̃talɔ̃], *m.*, trousers.
papier [papje], *m.*, paper; **— à let-**

tre, letter-paper, writing-paper; —**buvard,** blotting-paper, blotter.

Pâques [pɑːk], *m.*, Easter.

par [paːr], *prep.*, by, through; — **ci — là,** here and there, this way and that way.

paradis [paradi], *m.*, paradise, 'coop,' upper gallery (*of a theatre*).

paraître [parɛːtr], to appear, seem.

parc [park], *m.*, park.

parce que [parsə kə, pars kə], *conj.*, because.

parcourir [parkuriːr], to traverse.

pardessus [pardəsy], *m.*, overcoat.

pardonner [pardɔne], to pardon.

parent [parɑ̃], *m.*, relative; *pl.*, parents.

Paris [pari], *m.*, Paris.

parler [parle], to speak.

parmi [parmi], *prep.*, among.

parole [parɔl], *f.*, word; — **d'honneur,** on my word of honor.

part [paːr], *f.*, part, share; **à —,** aside, apart; **d'autre —,** on the other hand; **de ma (sa, leur,** etc.) **—,** from me (her *or* him, them, etc.).

parterre [partɛːr], *m.*, pit, lower floor (*of a theatre*).

participe [partisip], *m.*, participle.

particulier [partikylje], *adj.*, private.

partie [parti], *f.*, part, party, game.

partir [partiːr], to depart, leave, set out.

partout [partu], *adv.*, everywhere.

pas [pɑ], *adv.*, not, no.

passé [pɑse], *adj.*, past, last.

passeport [pɑspɔːr], *m.*, passport.

passer [pɑse], to pass, spend; — **un examen,** to take (have, stand) an examination.

patience [pasjɑ̃s], *f.*, patience.

pâtisserie [pɑtisri], *f.*, pastry.

patrie [patri], *f.*, fatherland, country.

pauvre [poːvr], *adj.*, poor.

payer [pɛje], to pay, pay for.

pays [pei], *m.*, country.

paysage [peizaːʒ], *m.*, landscape, country (side).

pêcher [pɛʃe], to fish; — **à la ligne,** to fish with rod and line.

peigner [pɛɲe], to comb; **se —,** to comb one's hair.

peine [pɛn], *f.*, trouble; **ce n'est pas la —, ça ne vaut pas la —,** it isn't worth the trouble (while); **à —,** hardly, scarcely.

peinture [pɛ̃tyːr], *f.*, painting.

pendant [pɑ̃dɑ̃], *prep.*, during, for; — **que,** *conj.*, while.

penser [pɑ̃se], to think; — **à,** to think of.

pension [pɑ̃sjɔ̃], *f.*, boarding-house, pension.

perdre [pɛrdr], to lose.

père [pɛːr], *m.*, father.

perfectionner [pɛrfɛksjɔne], to perfect.

période [perjɔd], *f.*, period.

permettre [pɛrmɛtr], to permit.

permission [pɛrmisjɔ̃], *f.*, permission.

personne [pɛrsɔn], *indef. pron.*, nobody, no one.

personne [pɛrsɔn], *f.*, person.

personnel [pɛrsɔnɛl], *adj.*, personal.

persévérer [pɛrsevɛre], to persevere.

peser [pəze], to weigh.

petit [pəti,pti], *adj.*, small, little.

petite-fille [p(ə)tit fiːj], *f.*, granddaughter.

petit-fils [p(ə)ti fis], *m.*, grandson.

petits pois [p(ə)ti pwɑ], *m. pl.*, (green) peas.

peu [pø], *adv.*, little, few; — **à —,** little by little.
peuple [pœpl], *m.*, people, lower classes.
peupler [pœple], to people.
peur [pœːr], *f.*, fear; **avoir —** (**de**), to be afraid (of), fear; **de — que,** for fear that, lest.
peut-être [pətɛːtr], *adv.*, perhaps, may be.
phrase [frɑːz], *f.*, sentence, phrase.
piano [pjano], *m.*, piano.
pièce [pjɛs], *f.*, piece, room.
pied [pje], *m.*, foot; **à —,** on foot.
pion [pjɔ̃], *m.*, proctor (*student slang*).
pipe [pip], *f.*, pipe.
pique-nique [pik nik], *m.*, picnic; **faire un —,** to go picnicking.
pire [piːr], *adj.*, worse.
pis [pi], *adv.*, worse.
place [plas], *f.*, place, seat, room.
placard [plakaːr], *m.*, cupboard, closet (*built in*).
placer [plase], to place, put.
plaindre [plɛ̃ːdr], to pity; **se —,** to complain.
plaine [plɛn], *f.*, plain.
plaire [plɛːr], to please; **s'il vous plaît,** if you please.
plaisir [pleziːr], *m.*, pleasure.
plan [plɑ̃], *m.*, plan, project.
plancher [plɑ̃ʃe], *m.*, floor.
plat [pla], *m.*, dish.
plate-forme [platfɔrm], *f.*, platform.
plein [plɛ̃], *adj.*, full.
pleuvoir [plœvwaːr], to rain.
pluie [plɥi], *f.*, rain.
plume [plym], *f.*, pen.
plupart [plypaːr], *f.*, most, greater part.
plus [ply], *adv.*, more; **de — en —,** more and more; **de —,** besides, in addition.
plusieurs [plyzjœːr], *adj. and pron.*, several.
plutôt [plyto], *adv.*, sooner, rather.
poche [pɔʃ], *f.*, pocket.
poignée [pwaɲe], *f.*, hand-shake.
point [pwɛ̃], *adv.*, no, not, not at all.
point [pwɛ̃], *m.*, point.
pointure [pwɛ̃tyːr], *f.*, size (*of shoes or gloves*).
poivre [pwaːvr], *m.*, pepper.
poli [pɔli], *adj.*, polite.
politesse [pɔlitɛs], *f.*, politeness.
pomme [pɔm], *f.*, apple.
pomme de terre [pɔm də tɛːr], *f.*, potato.
pommier [pɔmje], *m.*, apple tree.
populaire [pɔpylɛːr], *adj.*, popular.
port [pɔːr], *m.*, port, harbor.
portatif [pɔrtatif], *adj.*, portable.
porte [pɔrt], *f.*, door, gate.
porte-monnaie [pɔrtmɔnɛ], *m.*, purse.
porter [pɔrte], to carry, wear; **se —,** to be (*of health*).
Portugal [pɔrtygal], *m.*, Portugal.
poser [poze], to put; — **des questions,** to ask questions.
possible [pɔsibl], *adj.*, possible; **faire son —,** to do all one can.
poste [pɔst], *f.*, Post Office; **bureau de —,** Post Office.
potage [pɔtaːʒ], *m.*, soup.
poulailler [pulaje], *m.*, chicken-house; 'coop,' upper gallery (*of a theatre*).
poule [pul], *f.*, hen, chicken.
poulet [pulɛ], *m.*, chicken.
pour [puːr], *prep.*, for, to, in order to; — **que,** *conj.*, in order that, so that.
pourboire [purbwaːr], *m.*, tip.
pourquoi [purkwa], *conj.*, why.
poursuivre [pursɥiːvr], to pursue, follow.
pourtant [purtɑ̃], *adv.*, however, nevertheless.

pourvu que [purvy kə], *conj.*, provided that.
pousser [puse], to grow, sprout, bud.
poussière [pusjɛːr], *f.*, dust.
pouvoir [puvwaːr], to be able, can, may; **il se peut,** it may be.
précis [presi], *adj.*, precise, exact, sharp.
préférer [prefɛre], to prefer.
premier [prəmje], *adj.*, first.
prendre [prɑ̃ːdr], to take, get; — **un billet,** to buy a ticket; — **en location,** to buy a (theatre) ticket ahead of time, to reserve; **s'en — à quelqu'un,** to blame some one; **s'y —,** to manage it, go about it; — **garde,** to take care, look out.
préparatif [preparatif], *m.*, preparation.
préparation [preparɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, preparation.
préparer [prepare], to prepare.
près [prɛ], *adv.*, near; — **de,** *prep.*, near; **à peu —,** nearly.
présent [prezɑ̃], *adj.*, present.
présent [prezɑ̃], *m.*, present (*time or tense*); **à —,** at present, now.
présentation [prezɑ̃tɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, introduction.
présenter [prezɑ̃te], to introduce.
président [prezidɑ̃], *m.*, president.
presque [prɛskə, prɛsk], *adv.*, almost, nearly.
pressé [prɛse], *adj.*, in a hurry, hurried.
prêt [prɛ] **à,** *adj.*, ready to.
prêter [prɛte], to lend.
prier [prie], to pray, ask, beg.
principal [prɛ̃sipal], *adj.*, principal.
printemps [prɛ̃tɑ̃], *m.*, spring.
prise [priːz], *f.*, capture, fall.
prix [pri], *m.*, price.
probable [prɔbabl], *adj.*, probable.
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃], *adj.*, next.
proclamer [prɔklɑme], to proclaim.
professeur [prɔfɛsœːr], *m.*, teacher, professor.
profession [prɔfɛsjɔ̃], *f.*, profession.
profiter [prɔfite], to profit; — **de,** to profit by.
progrès [prɔgrɛ], *m.*, progress.
promenade [prɔmnad], *f.*, walk; **faire une —,** to take a walk; **une — en automobile,** an automobile ride; **une — en bateau,** a boat ride.
promener [prɔmne]; **se —,** to walk, take a walk.
promettre [prɔmɛtr], to promise.
prononciation [prɔnɔ̃sjɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, pronunciation.
propos [prɔpo]; **à —,** *adv.*, by the way.
propre [prɔpr], *adj.*, own, clean.
protéger [prɔteʒe], to protect.
protestation [prɔtɛstɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, protestation, protest.
province [prɔvɛ̃s], *f.*, province.
provisions [prɔvizjɔ̃], *f. pl.*, provisions, supplies.
public [pyblik], (*f.* **publique** [pyblik]), *adj.*, public.
puis [pɥi], *adv.*, then, next, afterwards.
puisque [pɥiskə, pɥisk], *conj.*, since, as.
pupitre [pypitr], *m.*, desk.
pur [pyːr], *adj.*, pure.

Q

quai [ke], *m.*, quay, dock.
quand [kɑ̃], *adv. or conj.*, when; **depuis —,** how long.
quant à [kɑ̃t a], *adv.*, with regard to, as for, as to.
quantité [kɑ̃tite], *f.*, quantity.
quarante [karɑ̃ːt], *adj.*, forty.
quart [kaːr], *m.*, quarter, fourth.

quartier [kartje], *m.*, quarter; — **latin,** Latin Quarter.
quatorze [katɔrz], *adj.*, fourteen.
quatre [katrə, katr], *adj.*, four.
quatre-vingt-dix [katrə vɛ̃ dis, katrə vɛ̃ di], *adj.*, ninety.
quatre-vingt-onze [katrə vɛ̃ ɔ̃:z], *adj.*, ninety-one.
quatre-vingts [katrə vɛ̃], *adj.*, eighty.
quatre-vingt-un [katrə vɛ̃ œ̃], *adj.*, eighty-one.
que [kə, k], *conj.*, that, than, as, for; **ne . . . —,** only, but, not until.
que [kə, k], *int. pron.*, what, how; **qu'est-ce —,** what (*object, referring to things*); **qu'est-ce qui,** what (*subject, referring to things*).
que [kə, k], *rel. pron.*, whom, which, that.
quel [kɛl], *int. adj.*, what, which, what a.
quelque [kɛlkə, kɛlk], *adj.*, some; *pl.*, a few; — **chose,** something, anything; — **. . . que,** whatever, however.
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa], *adv.*, sometimes.
quelqu'un [kɛlkœ̃], *indef. pron. m.*, somebody, some one, anybody, any one.
quelqu'une [kɛlkyn], *indef. pron. f.*, somebody, some one, anybody, any one.
question [kɛstjɔ̃], *f.*, question.
questionner [kɛstjɔne], to question.
queue [kø], *f.*, tail, cue; **faire —,** to stand in line.
qui [ki], *rel. and int. pron.*, who, whom, which, that; — **que ce soit,** whoever (it may be).
quiconque [kikɔ̃:k], *indef. pron.*, whoever, whosoever, whomsoever.
quinzaine [kɛ̃zɛn], *f.*, about fifteen, fortnight.
quinze [kɛ̃:z], *adj.*, fifteen.
quitter [kite], to leave.
quoi [kwa], *rel. pron.*, what, which; — **que ce soit,** whatever.
quoi [kwa], *int. pron.*, what.
quoique [kwakə, kwak], *conj.*, although.

R

raccommodage [rakɔmɔda:ʒ], *m.*, mending.
raccommoder [rakɔmɔde], to mend.
raconter [rakɔ̃te], to relate.
radis [radi], *m.*, radish.
raffoler [rafɔle]; — **de,** to be fond of, crazy about.
rafraîchissement [rafrɛʃismɑ̃], *m.*, refreshment.
raisin [rezɛ̃], *m.*, grape.
raison [rɛzɔ̃], *f.*, reason; **avoir —,** to be right.
rapide, *adj.*, fast, swift.
rapidement [rapidmɑ̃], *adv.*, rapidly.
rappeler [raple], to call back, recall; **se —,** to recollect, remember (*of things*).
rayon [rɛjɔ̃], *m.*, ray, shelf, department (*in a store*).
récepteur [resɛptœ:r], *m.*, receiver (*telephone*).
receveur [rəsvœ:r], *m.*, conductor (*street car*).
recevoir [rəsəvwa:r], to receive.
rédacteur [redaktœ:r], *m.*, editor (*newspaper*).
refuser [rəfyze], to refuse.
regarder [rəgarde], to regard, look at.
région [reʒjɔ̃], *f.*, region.
registre [rəgistr], *m.*, register.
règle [rɛgl], *f.*, rule.
règne [rɛɲ], *m.*, reign.

régner [reɲe], to reign.
regretter [rəgrete], to regret.
remarquable [rəmarkabl], *adj.*, remarkable.
remarquer [rəmarke], to notice.
remercier [rəmɛrsje], to thank; — **de,** to thank for.
remettre [rəmɛːtr], to postpone.
remonter [rəmɔ̃te], to reascend; wind (*watches*, etc.).
remplir [rɑ̃pliːr], to fill.
rencontre [rɑ̃kɔ̃ːtr], *f.*, meeting; aller **à la — de,** to go to meet.
rencontrer [rɑ̃kɔ̃tre], to meet, find.
rendez-vous [rɑ̃devu], *m.*, appointment, date, engagement.
rendre [rɑ̃ːdr], to return, give back; — **visite,** to pay a visit. **se —,** to go.
renoncer [rənɔ̃se], to renounce, give up.
renseignement [rɑ̃sɛɲmɑ̃], *m.*, information.
rentrer [rɑ̃tre], to reënter, return, come back home.
repas [rəpɑ], *m.*, meal.
répéter [repete], to repeat.
répétiteur [repetitœːr], *m.*, quiz master.
répétition [repetisjɔ̃], *f.*, private lesson, rehearsal.
répondre [repɔ̃ːdr], to answer, reply, respond.
reposer [rəpoze]; **se —,** to rest one's self.
représentation [rəprezɑ̃tɑsjɔ̃], *f.*, representation, performance.
représenter [rəprezɑ̃te], to represent, play, perform.
repriser [rəprize], to darn, mend.
république [repyblik], *f.*, republic.
réserver [rezɛrve], to reserve.
résident [rezidɑ̃], *m.*, resident.
respectueux [rɛspɛktɥø], *adj.*, respectful.
respirer [rɛspire], to breathe.
ressembler [rəsɑ̃ble], to resemble.
rester [rɛste], to remain, stay.
retard [rətaːr], *m.*, delay; **être en —,** to be late.
retarder [rətarde], to delay, be slow, lose time, be late.
retour [rətuːr], *m.*, return; **de —,** at home, back; **aller et —,** round-trip (ticket).
retourner [rəturne], to return, go back.
retrouver [rətruve], to find again.
réunion [reynjɔ̃], *f.*, meeting.
réussi [reysi], *adj.*, successful.
réussir [reysiːr], to succeed; — **à un examen,** to pass an examination.
réveiller [revɛje], to awaken; **se —,** to wake up.
revenir [rəvniːr], to return, come back.
révolution [revɔlysjɔ̃], *f.*, revolution.
rez-de-chaussée [re d ʃose], *m.*, ground floor.
riche [riʃ], *adj.*, rich.
rideau [rido], *m.*, curtain.
ridicule [ridikyl], *m.*, ridicule.
rien [rjɛ̃], *m.*, nothing.
rigolo [rigɔlo], *adj.*, amusing, funny (*slang*).
rigueur [rigœːr]; **de —,** obligatory, indispensable, necessary.
rire [riːr], to laugh.
ris de veau [ri də vo], *m.*, sweetbreads.
rive [riːv], *f.*, shore, bank.
rivière [rivjɛːr], *f.*, stream, river.
rôder [rode], to roam.
roi [rwɑ], *m.*, king.
rôle [roːl], *m.*, rôle.
roman [rɔmɑ̃], *m.*, novel.
roquefort [rɔkfɔːr], *m.*, Roquefort cheese.
rose [roːz], *adj.*, pink.
rose [roːz], *f.*, rose.

rôti [rɔti], *adj.*, roasted.
route [rut], *f.*, route, road; **en — pour,** on the way to.
rue [ry], *f.*, street.

S

sa [sa], *poss. adj. f., see* **son.**
sage [saːʒ], wise, good.
saison [sɛzɔ̃], *f.*, season.
salade [salad], *f.*, salad.
salle [sal], *f.*, (large) room, hall; **— à manger,** dining-room; **— de classe,** class-room; **— de bains,** bath room.
salon [salɔ̃], *m.*, drawing-room, living-room.
saluer [salɥe], to greet, speak to.
samedi [samdi], *m.*, Saturday.
sandwich [sɑ̃dwitʃ], *m.*, sandwich.
sans [sɑ̃], *prep.*, without; **— que,** *conj.*, without.
sauter [sote], to jump, hop.
savoir [savwaːr], to know.
scène [sɛːn], *f.*, scene, stage.
science [sjɑ̃ːs], *f.*, science.
scolaire [skɔlɛːr], *adj.*, of (the) school, scholarly.
se [sə, s], *pers. pron. m. or f.*, oneself, himself, herself, itself, to oneself, etc.; *pl.*, themselves, one another, each other.
second [səgɔ̃], *adj.*, second.
secrétaire [səkreteːr], *m.*, secretary, desk.
section [sɛksjɔ̃], *f.*, section.
seize [sɛːz], *adj.*, sixteen.
séjour [seʒuːr], *m.*, sojourn, stay.
sel [sɛl], *m.*, salt.
selon [səlɔ̃, slɔ̃], *prep.*, according to.
semaine [səmɛn], *f.*, week.
sembler [sɑ̃ble], to seem, appear.
sentier [sɑ̃tje], *m.*, path.
sentir [sɑ̃tiːr], to feel; **se —,** to feel (*of health*).
séparer [separe], to separate.
sept [sɛt, sɛ], *adj.*, seven.
septembre [sɛptɑ̃ːbr], *m.*, September.
serge [sɛrʒ], *m.*, serge.
sérieux [sɛrjø], *adj.*, serious.
service [sɛrvis], *m.*, service, course (*at dinner*).
serviette [sɛrvjɛt], *f.*, napkin, towel.
servir [sɛrviːr], to serve.
ses [se], *poss. adj. pl. m. and f., see* **son.**
seul [sœl], *adj.*, alone, only.
seulement [sœlmɑ̃], *adv.*, only; **aller —,** one way (ticket).
si [si], *adv.*, yes; so; **— . . . que,** *conj.*, so . . . that.
si [si], *conj.*, if, whether.
siècle [sjɛkl], *m.*, century.
sien [sjɛ̃], *poss. pron. m.*, his, hers, its, one's own.
sienne [sjɛn], *poss. pron. f.*, his, hers, its, one's own.
sieste [sjɛst], *f.*, siesta, nap; **faire une —,** to take a nap.
signaler [siɲale], to point out, indicate.
simple [sɛ̃ːpl], *adj.*, simple.
simplement [sɛ̃pləmɑ̃], *adv.*, simply.
sinon [sinɔ̃], *conj.*, if not.
situé [sitɥe], *adj.*, situated.
six [sis, si], *adj.*, six.
smoking [smɔking], *m.*, dinner-coat, tuxedo.
société [sɔsjete], *f.*, society, company.
sœur [sœːr], *f.*, sister.
sofa [sɔfa], *m.*, sofa, davenport.
soi [swa], *pers. pron.*, oneself, self, itself.
soie [swɑ], *f.*, silk.
soif [swaf], *f.*, thirst; **avoir —,** to be thirsty.
soin [swɛ̃], *m.*, care; **aux —s de,** in care of.

soir [swaːr], *m.*, evening night; **du —,** in the evening, P.M.; **hier —,** last night.
soirée [sware], *f.*, evening, evening party (*dancing*, etc.).
soixante [swasãːt], *adj.*, sixty.
soixante-dix [swasãt dis, swasãt diˈ], *adj.*, seventy.
soleil [sɔlɛːj], *m.*, sun.
somme [sɔm], *f.*, sum, amount.
sommeil [sɔmɛːj], *m.*, sleep; **avoir —,** to be sleepy.
son [sɔ̃], *poss. adj. m.*, his, her, its, one's.
sonner [sɔne], to sound, ring.
sorte [sɔrt], *f.*, sort, kind, class; **de — que,** *conj.*, so that.
sortir [sɔrtiːr], to go out.
sou [su], *m.*, cent.
souffrant [sufrã], *adj.*, sick, indisposed.
soulier [sulje], *m.*, (low) shoe; **— de bal,** (ladies') slipper.
souper [supe], *m.*, supper.
souper [supe], to sup.
sous [su], *prep.*, under, beneath.
souterrain [sutɛrɛ̃], *adj.*, underground.
souvenir [suvniːr]; **se — (de),** to remember (*of persons or things*).
souvent [suvã], *adv.*, often, frequently.
spectacle [spɛktakl], *m.*, spectacle, play.
sport [spɔːr], *m.*, sport.
station [stasjɔ̃], *f.*, station.
stationner [stasjɔne], to be parked (*automobiles*, etc.).
stopper [stɔpe], to stop.
store [stɔːr], *m.*, shade (*windows*, etc.).
subventionner [sybvãsjɔne], to subsidize, subvention.
succéder [syksede], to succeed, follow.
succès [syksɛ], *m.*, success.
successeur [syksɛsœːr], *m.*, successor.
sucre [sykr], *m.*, sugar.
sud [syd], *m.*, south.
suite [sɥit]; **tout de —,** immediately, at once; **ainsi de —,** and so forth.
suivre [sɥiːvr], to follow.
sujet [syʒɛ], *m.*, subject; **au — de,** about, concerning, on the subject of.
superbe [sypɛrb], *adj.*, superb.
supporter [sypɔrte], to stand, suffer, endure.
supposer [sypoze], to suppose.
sur [syːr], *adv.*, on, upon.
sûr [syːr], *adj.*, sure, certain.
surplomber [syrplɔ̃be], to overhang.
surtout [syrtu], *adv.*, above all, especially.
surveillance [syrvɛjãːs], *f.*, surveillance.
surveiller [syrvɛje], to watch over, look over.
sympathique [sɛ̃patik], *adj.*, sympathetic, congenial.
système [sistɛm], *m.*, system.

T

t' [t], *see* **te.**
ta [ta], *poss. adj. f.*, *see* **ton.**
tabac [taba], *m.*, tobacco; **bureau de —,** tobacco shop.
table [tabl], *f.*, table.
tableau [tablo], *m.*, blackboard; picture; **— noir,** blackboard.
tabouret [taburɛ], *m.*, stool.
tâcher [taʃe], to try.
tailleur [tajœːr], *m.*, tailor.
tant [tã], *adv.*, so much, so many; **— mieux,** so much the better; **— bien que mal,** fairly well.
tante [tãːt], *f.*, aunt.
tapis [taˈpi], *m.*, carpet, rug.

tapisser [tapise], to paper, hang, hang tapestry (on).
tard [taːr], *adv.*, late.
tarif [tarif], *m.*, rate, fare.
tasse [taːs], *f.*, cup.
taxi [taksi], *m.*, taxi, taxi-cab.
te [tə, t], *pers. pron.*, thee, to thee, you, to you.
tel [tɛl], *adj.*, such, like, similar; **un —,** such a one.
téléphone [telefoːn], *m.*, telephone.
téléphoner [telefɔne], to telephone.
téléphoniste [telefɔnist], *f.*, telephone operator.
tellement [tɛlmɑ̃], *adv.*, so, so much, in such a manner; **— . . . que,** *conj.*, so . . . that.
temps [tɑ̃], *m.*, time (*duration*), while, weather; **de — en —,** from time to time; **à —,** in time.
tendre [tɑ̃ːdr], *adj.*, tender.
tenir [tənirr], to hold, resist; **— à,** to insist on.
tennis [tɛnis], *m.*, tennis.
terminer [tɛrmine], to terminate, end, finish.
terrain [tɛrɛ̃], court (*tennis*).
terre [tɛːr], *f.*, earth, land.
tes [te], *poss. adj. pl.*, *see* **ton.**
tête [tɛːt], *f.*, head.
texte [tɛkst], *m.*, text, textbook.
thé [te], *m.*, tea.
théâtral [teatral], *adj.*, theatrical.
théâtre [teaːtr], *m.*, theatre.
thème [tɛːm], *m.*, composition, theme.
tien [tjɛ̃], *poss. pron. m.*, thine, yours, thine own, your own.
tienne [tjɛn], *poss. pron. f.*, thine, yours, thine own, your own.
tiens [tjɛ̃], *interj.*, well!
timbre [tɛ̃ːbr], *m.*, stamp, postage stamp; **—-poste,** postage stamp.
tiroir [tirwaːr], *m.*, drawer.
toi [twa], *pers. pron.*, thee, thyself, you, thou, yourself.
toilette [twalɛt], *f.*, toilette, dress, costume; **— de bal,** ball dress, evening gown.
toi-même [twa mɛm], *pers. pron.*, thyself.
tomber [tɔ̃be], to fall.
ton [tɔ̃], *poss. adj. m.*, thy, your.
tort [tɔːr], *m.*, wrong; **avoir —,** to be wrong.
tôt [to], *adv.*, soon.
toujours [tuʒuːr], *adv.*, always, ever, still.
tour [tuːr], *m.*, turn.
tourangeau [turɑ̃ʒo], *m.*, person living in Touraine.
touriste [turist], *m.*, tourist.
tourner [turne], to turn.
tout [tu], *adv.*, wholly, quite; **— à coup,** suddenly; **— à fait,** quite, wholly; **— de suite,** immediately, at once, right away; **— fait,** ready-made (*of clothes*).
tout [tu], *adj. and pron.*, all, every, whole, entire; **pas du —,** not at all.
traduire [tradɥiːr], to translate.
train, [trɛ̃], *m.*, train; **être en — de,** to be busy with (at); **— de vie,** sort of life, way of living.
traîneau [trɛno], *m.*, sleigh.
trajet [traʒɛ], *m.*, passage, journey, trip.
tramway [tramwe], *m.*, street-car, tramway; **— à vapeur,** steam street-car.
transport [trɑ̃spɔr], *m.*, transportation.
travail [travaːj], *m.*, work, task; **cabinet de —,** study.
travailler [travaje], to work.
traversée [travɛrse], *f.*, passage, crossing.
treize [trɛːz], *adj.*, thirteen.

trente [trɑ̃:t], *adj.*, thirty.
très [trɛ], *adv.*, very.
triste [trist], *adj.*, sad.
trois [trwɑ], *adj.*, three.
troisième [trwɑzjɛm], *adj.*, third.
tromper [trɔ̃pe], to deceive; **se —,** to be mistaken.
trop [trɔ], *adv.*, too much, too many.
trottoir [trɔtwɑ:r], *m.*, sidewalk, pavement.
trouver [truve], to find, like; **se —,** to be found, located, to be.
trône [tro:n], *m.*, throne.
tu [ty], *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

U

un [œ̃], *indef. art. m.*, a, an.
un [œ̃], *adj.*, one; **l'— l'autre,** each one, one another; **l'— et l'autre,** both; **l'— à l'autre,** to each other; **les —s les autres,** one another; **l'— ou l'autre,** either; **ni l'— ni l'autre,** neither.
une [yn], *see* **un.**
université [yniversite], *f.*, university.
usage [yza:ʒ], *m.*, custom, usage, practice, use.
usuel [yzɥɛl], *adj.*, usual.

V

vacances [vakɑ̃:s], *f. pl.*, vacation, holidays.
vacarme [vakarm], *m.*, noise.
vache [vaʃ], *f.*, cow.
vaisselle [vɛsɛl], *f.*, plates and dishes.
valise [vali:z], *f.*, valise, satchel.
vallon [valɔ̃], *m.*, valley.
valoir [valwa:r], to be worth; **— la peine,** to be worth while; **— mieux,** to be better.
vapeur [vapœ:r], *f.*, steam; **tramway à —,** steam street-car.
varier [varje], to vary.
vaudeville [vodvil], *m.*, vaudeville.
veau [vo], *m.*, calf, veal; **ris de —,** sweet-breads.
veine [vɛ:n], *f.*, luck, chance.
vendre [vɑ̃:dr], to sell.
vendredi [vɑ̃drədi], *m.*, Friday.
venir [vəni:r], to come; **— à,** to happen; **— de,** to have just.
vent [vɑ̃], *m.*, wind; **faire du —,** to be windy.
vente [vɑ̃:t], *f.*, sale; **en —,** on sale.
verbe [vɛrb], *m.*, verb.
verdoyant [vɛrdwajɑ̃], *adj.*, verdant, green.
verre [vɛ:r], *m.*, glass.
vers [vɛ:r], *adv.* about, approximately, toward.
vert [vɛ:r], *adj.*, green.
veston [vɛstɔ̃], *m.*, jacket, sack-coat.
vêtement [vɛtmɑ̃], *m.*, garment; *pl.*, clothes, clothing.
viande [vjɑ̃:d], *f.*, meat.
victoire [viktwa:r], *f.*, victory.
vie [vi], *f.*, life.
vieux [vjø], (**vieil** [vjɛ:j]), *f.*, **vieille** [vjɛ:j]), *adj.*, old.
vigne [viɲ], *m.*, vine.
vilain [vilɛ̃], *adj.*, ugly.
village [vila:ʒ], *m.*, village.
ville [vil], *f.*, city; **en —,** in town.
vin [vɛ̃], *m.*, wine.
vingt [vɛ̃], *adj.*, twenty.
vingt et un [vɛ̃t e œ̃], *adj.*, twenty-one.
visite [vizit], *f.*, visit, inspection; **faire (rendre) —,** to visit, pay a call.
visiter [vizite], to visit, inspect.
vite [vit], *adv.*, quickly, fast.
vivre [vi:vr], to live.

voici [vwasi], *adv.*, here is, here are.
voilà [vwala], *adv.*, there is, there are.
voir [vwaːr], to see.
voisin [vwazɛ̃], *m.*, neighbor.
voix [vwa], *f.*, voice; **à haute —,** aloud.
volaille [vɔlɑːj],*f.*, poultry.
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje], *adv.*, willingly, gladly, with pleasure.
vos [vo], *poss. adj. pl.*, *see* **votre.**
votre [vɔtrə, vɔtr], *poss. adj.*, your.
vôtre [voːtr], *poss. pron.*, yours, your own.
vouloir [vulwaːr], to wish, will, desire, want; — **dire,** to mean.
vous [vu], *pers. pron.*, you, to you.
vous-même [vu mɛːm], *pers. pron.*, yourself.
voyage [vwajaːʒ], *m.*, journey, trip; — **de noces,** wedding trip.
voyager [vwajaʒe], to travel.
voyageur [vwajaʒœːr], *m.*, traveler, passenger.
vrai [vrɛ], *adj.*, true, real.
vraiment [vrɛmɑ̃], *adv.*, really, truly.
vue [vy], *f.*, **connaître de —,** to know by sight.

W

wagon [vagɔ̃], *m.*, (railway) car, coach.

Y

y [i], *pron. adv.*, to (at, on, in, etc.) it (*or* them), there.
yeux [jø], *m. pl.*, *of* **œil,** eyes.

ENGLISH–FRENCH

A

a, *indef. art.*, un (*f.* une).
able; be —, pouvoir *v.*
about, *adv.*, environ, vers; *prep.*, de, au sujet de; — **ten,** une dizaine.
above, *adv.*, au-dessus de; — **all,** surtout.
absolutely, *adv.*, absolument.
accept, *v.*, accepter.
access, *n.*, abord *m.*
accession, *n.*, avènement *m.*
accompany, *v.*, accompagner.
accomplish, *v.*, accomplir.
according to, *prep.*, selon.
accost, *v.*, aborder.
acquaintance, *n.*, connaissance *f.*
acquainted; become acquainted with, connaître *v.*
acte, *n.*, acte *m.*; **interval between —s,** entr'acte *m.*
addition, *n.*; **in —,** de plus.
address, *n.*, adresse *f.*
admire, *v.*, admirer.
admit, *v.*, admettre.
adopt, *v.*, adopter.
advance, *v.*, avancer.
advance, *n.*, avance *f.*; **in —,** d'avance.
advice, *n.*, conseil *m.*
advise, *v.*, conseiller, engager.
affair, *n.*, affaire *f.*
afraid; be — (of), avoir peur (de), craindre.
after, *prep.*, après, dans, au bout de, et (*of the hour*); *conj.*, après que.
afternoon, *n.*, après-midi *m.*
afterwards, *adv.*, après, ensuite, puis.
again, *adv.*, encore, de nouveau.
against, *prep.*, contre.
age, *n.*, âge *m.*
ago, *adv.*, il y a.
agreeable, *adj.*, agréable.
aid, *v.*, aider, assister.
aim, *n.*, but *m.*
air, *n.*, air *m.*; **in the open —,** en plein air.
Algiers, *n.*, Algérie *f.*
all, *adj.*, tout *m.*, toute *f.*, tous *m. pl.*, toutes *f. pl.*
allies, *n.*, alliés *m. pl.*
allow, *v.*, permettre, laisser.
almost, *adv.*, presque, à peu près.
along, le long de.
aloud, *adv.*, à haute voix.
already, *adv.*, déjà.
also, *adv.*, aussi.
although, *conj.*, bien que, quoique.
always, *adv.*, toujours.
A.M., du matin.
ambassador, *n.*, ambassadeur *m.*
American, *n.*, Américan *m.*
among, *prep.*, parmi.
amount, *n.*, somme *f.*
amuse, *v.*; — **oneself,** s'amuser se divertir.
amusing, *adj.*, rigolo (*slang*).
an, *indef. art.*, un (*f.* une).
and, *conj.*, et; — **so forth,** ainsi de suite.
angry, *adj.*, fâché; **to be —,** être fâché.
animal, *n.*, animal *m.*
announce, *v.*, annoncer.
answer, *v.*, répondre.
any, *adj.*, *pron.*, aucun (*f.* aucune); — **(one),** personne, quelqu'un

(*f.* quelqu'une), quelques-uns (*pl. f.* quelques-unes).
any, *pron. adv.*, en.
anybody, *indef. pron.*, personne, quelqu'un (*f.* quelqu'une).
anything, *indef. pron.*, quelque chose.
apart, *adv.*, à part.
apartment, *n.*, appartement *m.*
apparatus (*phonc*), *n.*, appareil *m.*
appear, *v.*, paraître, sembler.
appearance, *n.*, air *m.*
appetite, *n.*, appétit *m.*
appetizer, *n.*, hors-d'œuvre *m.*
apple, *n.*, pomme *f.*; — **tree,** pommier *m.*
apply, *v.*, appliquer; **to — oneself,** *v.*, s'appliquer.
appoint, *v.*, fixer.
appointed, *adj.*, fixe.
appointment, *n.*, rendez-vous *m.*
approach, *n.*, abord *m.*
approximately, *adv.*, environ, vers.
April, *n.*, avril *m.*
Argentine, *n.*, Argentine *f.*
arise, *v.*, se lever.
arm, *n.*; — **chair,** *n.*, fauteuil *m.*
arrange, *v.*, arranger.
arrival, *n.*, arrivée *f.*
arrive, *v.*, arriver.
artichoke, *n.*, artichaut *m.*
as, *conj.*, aussi, comme, puisque, que; — **far —,** jusqu'à; — **many —,** autant; — **much —,** autant; — **soon —,** aussitôt que; — **(for),** quant (à); — **(to),** quant (à)
ashamed; be — (of), avoir honte (de).
aside, *adv.*, à part.
ask, *v.*, demander, prier; — **questions of,** poser des questions à.
assembly, *n.*, réunion *f.*
assist, *v.*, assister, aider.
assure, *v.*, assurer.
at, *prep.*, à; — **first,** d'abord; — **once,** aussitôt; tout de suite; — **the house of,** chez.
attach, *v.*, attacher.
attachment, *n.*, mécanisme *m.*
attend, *v.*, assister à; — **to,** s'occuper de.
August, *n.*, août *m.*
aunt, *n.*, tante *f.*
author, *n.*, auteur *m.*
autobus, *n.*, autobus *m.*
automatic, *adj.*, automatique.
automobile, *n.*, automobile *f.*; — **ride,** *n.*, promenade en auto. *f.*
autumn, *n.*, automne *m.*
avoid, *v.*, éviter.
await, *v.*, attendre.
awake, *v.*, se réveiller.
awaken, *v.*, réveiller.
aware; to be — of, s'apercevoir.
away; right —, tout de suite.

B

bachelor, *n.*, garçon *m.*
bachelor, *n.*, (*a degree*) bachelier *m.*; —**'s degree,** baccalauréat *m.*; (*slang*) bachot *m.*
back, *adv.*, de retour.
back, *n.*, fond *m.*
bad, *adj.*, mauvais; **to be —,** (*of weather*) faire mauvais.
badly, *adv.*, mal.
baggage, *n.*, bagage *m.* (*usually used in plural*).
balcony, *n.*, balcon *m.*
ball, *n.*, (*dance*) bal *m.*; — **dress,** toilette de bal.
ballet, *n.*, ballet *m.*
banana, *n.*, banane *f.*
bank, *n.*, rive *f.*
barnyard, *n.*, basse-cour *f.*
basket, *n.*, panier *m.*; **sewing —,** panier à ouvrage.
bath, *n.*, bain *m.*
bathroom, *n.*, salle de bains *f.*; — **-tub,** *n.*, baignoire *f.*

battle, *n.*, bataille *f.*
be, *v.*, être, (*with regard to health*) aller, se porter; (*speaking of situation*) se trouver; — **fast,** (*of timepieces*) avancer; — **fine,** (*of weather*) faire beau; — **necessary,** falloir; — **present at,** assister à; — **situated,** se trouver; — **slow,** (*of timepieces*) retarder; — **to,** devoir; — **that as it may,** quoi qu'il en soit.
beautiful, *adj.*, beau (*before vowels* bel, *f.* belle); **to be —,** (*of weather*) faire beau.
because, *conj.*, car, parce que; — **of,** à cause de.
become, *v.*, convenir, devenir; — **acquainted with,** connaître.
bed, *n.*, lit *m.*; **to go to —,** se coucher.
bedroom, *n.*, chambre à coucher *f.*
beef, *n.*, bœuf *m.*
before, *adv.*, avant, devant; — **time,** en avance.
before, *conj.*, avant que.
before, *prep.*, (*in place*) devant, (*in time*) avant (de), (*of the hour*) moins.
beforehand, *adv.*, d'avance.
beg, *v.*, prier.
begin, *v.*, commencer; **to — to,** se mettre à.
beginning, *n.*, commencement *f.*
behind, *prep.*, derrière.
believe, *v.*, croire.
bell-boy ('buttons'), *n.*, chasseur *m*
belong; to — to, être à.
below, *adv.*, en bas.
beneath, *prep.*, sous.
berth, *n.*, couchette *f.*
beside, *prep.*, à côté de.
besides, *adv.*, d'ailleurs, de plus.
best; — man, *n.*, garçon d'honneur *m.*
better, *adj.*, meilleur.
better, *adv.*, mieux; **be —,** valoir mieux; **so much the —,** tant mieux.
between, *prep.*, entre.
big, *adj.*, gros (*f.* grosse).
bill, *n.*, note *f.*
bird, *n.*, oiseau *m.*
black, *adj.*, noir.
blackboard, *n.*, tableau (noir) *m.*
blame, *v.*, s'en prendre à.
bless, *v.*, bénir.
bloom; in —, en fleur.
blotter, *n.*, papier buvard *m.*
blotting-paper, *n.*, papier buvard *m.*
blow, *n.*, coup *m.*
board; on —, à bord.
boarding-house, *n.*, pension *f.*
boat, *n.*, bateau *m.*; — **ride,** promenade en bateau.
book, *n.*, livre *m.*, texte *m.*; — **shelf (case),** bibliothèque *f.*
bookseller, *n.*, libraire *m.*
bore, *v.*, ennuyer
bored, *adj.*, ennuyé; **to be —,** s'ennuyer.
born; be —, *v.*, naître.
both, *adj.*, *pron.*, l'un et l'autre, tous les deux.
bottom, *n.*, fond *m.*
bow, *v.*, s'incliner.
box, *n.*, boîte *f.*; (*in a theatre*) loge, *f.*, baignoire *f.*, avant-scène, *f.*
boy, *n.*, garçon *m.*
branch, *n.*, branche *f.*
bread, *n.*, pain *m.*
break *v.*; — **forth,** éclater; — **out,** éclater.
breakfast, *n.*, petit déjeuner *m.*
breakfast, *v.*, déjeuner.
breathe, *v.*, respirer.
bring, *v.*, apporter, amener; — **down,** descendre; — **up,** élever; monter.
Brittany, *n.*, Bretagne *f.*
brother, *n.*, frère *m.*
bud, *v.*, pousser.
build, *v.*, construire.

building, *n.*, édifice *m.*
butcher, *n.*, boucher *m.*
bus, *n.*, autobus *m.*
business, *n.*, affaire(s) *f.*
busy, *adj.*, occupé; **be — with** (at), être en train de.
busy, *v.*, occuper; **to be — with,** s'occuper de, être en train de.
but, *conj.*, mais.
butter, *n.*, beurre *m.*
' buttons,' *n.*, chasseur *m.*
buy, *v.*, acheter; **— a ticket,** prendre un billet.
by, *prep.*, de, par, en + *present part.*
by the way, à propos.

C

cabin, *n.*, cabine *f.*
café, *n.*, café *m.*
cake, *n.*, gâteau *m.*
calf, *n.*, veau *m.*
call; pay a —, faire une visite; **telephone —,** coup de téléphone.
call, *v.*, appeler, nommer.
called, *pp.*, appelé; **be —,** s'appeler.
calm, *adj.*, calme.
can, *v.*, pouvoir.
Canada, *n.*, Canada *m.*
capital, *n.*, capitale *f.*
capture, *n.*, prise *f.*
car (*railway*), *n.*, wagon *m.*; tramway, *m.*; **steam street- —,** tramway à vapeur.
care, *n.*; **take —,** prendre garde; **in — of,** aux soins de.
career, *n.*, carrière *f.*
carpet, *n.*, tapis, *m.*
carry, *v.*, porter.
case, *n.*, cas *m.*; **in — that,** au cas que; **in that** (this) **—,** dans ce cas; **whatever the — may be,** quoi qu'il en soit.
casket, *n.*, cercueil *m.*
cat, *n.*, chat *m.*
cause, *n.*, cause *f.*
cause, *v.*, causer, faire.
cease, *v.*, cesser.
celery, *n.*, céleri *m.*
cent, *n.*, sou *m.*
center, *n.*, milieu *m.*
century, *n.*, siècle *m.*
ceremony, *n.*, cérémonie *f.*; **without —,** sans cérémonie.
certain, *adj.*, certain, sûr, fixe.
certainly, *adv.*, certainement.
chair, *n.*, chaise *f.*; **rocking- —,** chaise à bascule; **arm —,** fauteuil *m.*
chalk, *n.*, craie *f.*
chance, *n.*, veine *f*, chance, *f.*
chandelier, *n.*, lustre *m.*
change, *v.*, changer; **to — one's mind,** changer d'avis.
character, *n.*, caractère *m.*
charge, *v.*, charger; **to take — of,** se charger de.
charming, *adj.*, charmant.
chat, *v.*, causer.
château, *n.*, château *m.*
cheap, *adj.*, (à) bon marché.
check, *n.*, chèque *m.*; (*of baggage*) bulletin *m.*
check (*of baggage*), *v.*, enregistrer.
cheese, *n.*, fromage *m.*
chicken, *n.*, poule *f.*, poulet *m.*; **— -house,** poulailler *m.*
child, *n.*, enfant *m. or f.*
chimney, *n.*, cheminée *f.*
China, *n.*, Chine *f.*
chocolate, *n.*, chocolat *m.*
choice, *n.*, choix *m.*
choose, *v.*, choisir.
chop, *n.*, côtelette *f.*
Christmas, *n.*, Noël *m.*
church, *n.*, église *f.*; **at —,** à l'église.
cigar, *n.*, cigare *m.*
cigarette, *n.*, cigarette *f.*
city, *n.*, ville *f.*
civilization, *n.*, civilisation *f.*

class, *n.*, classe *f.;* **lower —es,** *n.*, peuple *m.;* **— -mate,** camarade de classe; **— -room,** *n.*, classe, salle de classe.
classic, *adj.*, classique; *n.*, classique *m.*
clean, *adj.*, propre.
clean, *v.*, nettoyer.
clear, *adj.*, clair.
clear, *v.*, (*of table*) desservir.
clientèle, *n.*, clientèle *m.*
clients, *n. pl.*, clientèle.
close, *v.*, fermer.
closet, *n.*, placard *m.*
clothes, *n.*, vêtements *m. pl.*
club (*society*), *n.*, club *m.*
coach, *n.*, wagon *m.*
coat, *n.;* **dress- —,** habit (noir) *m.;* **dinner- —,** smoking *m.*
coffee, *n.*, café *m.;* **— with milk,** café au lait.
coffin, *n.*, cercueil *m.*
coincidence, *n.*, coïncidence *f.*
cold; be —, (*of persons*) avoir froid, (*of the weather*) faire froid.
collar, *n.*, col *m.;* **detachable —,** faux col.
college, *n.*, collège *m.;* **— mate,** camarade de collège.
color, *n.*, couleur *f.*
comb, *v.*, peigner; **— one's hair,** se peigner.
come, *v.*, venir; **— in,** entrer (dans *is required before a following noun*); **— back,** revenir; **— back home,** rentrer.
comedy, *n.;* **light —,** vaudeville *m.*
comfortable, *adj.*, commode, comfortable; **to be —,** être à l'aise.
command, *v.*, commander, ordonner.
commence, *v.*, commencer, se mettre à.
companion, *n.*, compagnon *m.*
company, *n.*, monde *m.*, compagnie *f.*
compartment, *n.*, compartiment *m.*
compel, *v.*, obliger.
complain, *v.*, se plaindre.
complete, *adj.*, complet (*f.* complète).
complete, *v.*, compléter.
completely, *adv.*, complètement.
complicated, *pp.*, compliqué.
compose, *v.*, composer; **to be —ed of,** se composer de.
composition, *n.*, thème *m.*
comprehend, *v.*, comprendre.
concerning, *prep.*, au sujet de.
conduct, *v.*, conduire.
conductor, *n.*, receveur *m.*
congenial, *adj.*, sympathique.
conjugate, *v.*, conjuguer.
consecrate, *v.*, consacrer.
consequence, *n.*, conséquent *m.*
consequently, *adv.*, par conséquent.
considerable, *adj.*, considérable.
consist, *v.*, consister; **to — of,** consister en, dans; se composer de.
construct, *v.*, construire.
content; to be —, être content.
contented, *adj.*, content.
continue, *v.*, continuer, durer.
contrary, *n.*, contraire *m.;* **on the —,** au contraire.
convenient, *adj.*, commode.
cook, *v.*, faire la cuisine.
cooking, *n.*, cuisine *f.;* **do the —,** faire la cuisine.
cool, *adj.*, frais; **to be —,** (*of weather*), faire frais.
'coop,' *n.*, (*upper gallery in a theatre*) paradis *m.*, poulailler *m.*
copy, *n.*, (*of exam. papers*, etc.) copie *f.*
correct, *v.*, corriger.
correctly, *adv.*, correctement.
corridor, *n.*, couloir *m.*
costly *adj.*, cher (*f.* chère), coûteux (*f.* coûteuse).
costume, *n.*, toilette *f.*, costume *m.*
count, *v.*, compter.

country, *n.*, campagne *f.*, patrie *f.*, pays *m.;* **in the —,** à la campagne; **—side,** paysage *m.*
courage, *n.*, courage *m.*
course, *n.*, cours *m.;* (*of dinner*) service *m.;* **of —,** naturellement.
court, *n.*, cour; (*of tennis*) terrain *m.*
cousin, *n.*, cousin *m.*, cousine *f.*
cover, *n.*, (*of place at table*) couvert *m.*
cover, *v.*, couvrir.
covered, *pp.*, couvert.
cow, *n.*, vache *f.*
cradle, *n.*, berceau *m.*
cravat, *n.*, cravate *f.*
crazy; to be — about, raffoler de.
crêpe, *n.*, crêpe *m.*
cross, *v.*, croiser, se croiser.
crossing, *n.*, traversée *f.*
crowd, *n.*, foule *f.*
cue, *n.*, queue *f.*
cuff, *n.*, manchette *f.*
cup, *n.*, tasse *f.*
cupboard, *n.*, placard *m.*
curious, *adj.*, curieux.
curtain, *n.*, rideau *m.*
custom, *n.*, usage, *m.*, douane *f.*, coutume *f.*
custom-house, *n.*, douane *f.;* **— officer,** douanier *m.*
cut, *v.;* **— a class,** manquer.

D

dance, *n.*, danse *f.*, soirée *f.*
dance, *v.*, danser.
darn, *v.*, repriser.
date, *n.*, date *f.*, (*engagement*) rendez-vous *m.*
date, *v.*, dater.
davenport, *n.*, sofa *m.*
daughter, *n.*, fille *f.*
day, *n.*, jour *m.;* journée *f.;* **— after tomorrow,** après-demain; **— before yesterday,** avant-hier; **good —,** bon jour; **— after,** lendemain *m.;* **be — light,** faire jour.
deal; a great —, *adv.*, beaucoup.
dear, *adj.*, cher (*f.* chère).
death, *n.*, mort *f.*
debark, *v.*, débarquer.
deceive, *v.*, tromper.
December, *n.*, décembre *m.*
decide (to), *v.*, décider (de), se décider à.
declare, *v.*, déclarer.
delay, *v.*, retarder.
delicate, *adj.*, délicat.
delicious, *adj.*, délicieux (*f.* délicieuse), délicat.
delighted, *adj.*, enchanté.
delightful, *adj.*, agréable, délicieux; **to be —,** faire bon.
demand, *n.*, demande *f.*
Denmark, *n.*, Danemark *m.*
deny, *v.*, nier.
depart, *v.*, partir.
department (*in a store*), *n.*, rayon *m.;* **— store,** magasin de nouveautés.
departure, *n.*, départ *m.*
descend, *v.*, descendre.
describe, *v.*, décrire.
description, *n.*, description *f.*
desire, *v.*, vouloir, désirer, avoir envie de.
desk, *n.*, bureau, secrétaire *m.;* **small school —,** pupitre *m.*
dessert, *n.*, dessert *m.*
destination, *n.*, destination *f.*
develop, *v.*, développer.
devoted, *adj.*, dévoué.
die, *v.*, mourir.
difference, *n.*, différence *f.;* **makes no —,** cela ne fait rien; **makes no — to me,** cela (ça) m'est égal.
different, *adj.*, différent.
difficult, *adj.*, difficile.
difficulty, *n.*, difficulté *f.*
dine, *v.*, dîner.

dining-room, *n.*, salle à manger *f.*
dinner, *n.*, dîner *m.*; — **-coat,** smoking *m.*
diploma, *n.*, diplôme *m.*
direct, *v.*, braquer.
direction, *n.*, côté *m.*, direction *f.*
disagreeable, *adj.*, désagréable.
disastrous, *adj.*, désastreux.
disease, *n.*, maladie *f.*
discuss, *v.*, discuter.
dish, *n.*, plat *m.*
dishes, *n.*, vaisselle *f.*
disk, *n.*, disque *m.*
disorganize, *v.*, désorganiser.
disposal, *n.*, disposition *f.*
disrespectful, *adj.*, irrespectueux.
distance, *n.*, distance *f.*
distraction, *n.*, distraction *f.*
disturb, *v.*, déranger.
divan, *n.*, divan *m.*
divert, *v.*, divertir.
divide, *v.*, diviser.
do, *v.*, faire, (*manage*) s'y prendre; — **the cooking,** faire la cuisine; — **the best (all) one can,** faire de son mieux, tout son possible.
dock, *n.*, quai *m.*
dog, *n.*, chien *m.*
door, *n.*, porte *f.*
dormitory, *n.*, dortoir *m.*
doubt, *n.*, doute *m.*
doubt, *v.*, douter.
down-stairs, *adv.*, en bas.
dozen, *n.*, douzaine *f.*
drawer, *n.*, tiroir *m.*
drawing-room, *n.*, salon *m.*
dress, *n.*, toilette *f.*; —**-coat,** habit (noir).
dress, *v.*, habiller; — **oneself,** s'habiller; **get —ed,** s'habiller.
dressmaker, *n.*, couturière *f.*
drive, *v.*, conduire, mener.
drop, *v.*, laisser tomber.
duck, *n.*, canard *m.*
during, *prep.*, pendant, en.
dust, *v.*, épousseter.

E

each, *adj.*, chaque.
each, *indef. pron.*, chacun (*f.* chacune); — **one,** *indef. pron.*, chacun (*f.* chacune); — **other,** *adj. pron.*, l'un l'autre, se; **to** — **other,** l'un à l'autre, se.
early, *adv.*, de bonne heure, en avance.
earn, *v.*, gagner.
ease, *adj.*; **to be at one's** —, être à son aise.
easily, *adv.*, facilement.
Easter, *n.*, Pâques *m.*
easy, *adj.*, facile.
eat, *v.*, manger.
edge, *n.*, (*of sidewalk*) bord *m.*
editor, *n.*, rédacteur *m.*
editorial, *n.*, article de fond, *m.*
education, *n.*, éducation *f.*
egg, *n.*, œuf *m.*
eight, *adj.*, huit.
eighteen, *adj.*, dix-huit.
eighty, *adj.*, quatre-vingts.
eighty-one, *adj.*, quatre-vingt-un.
elder, *adj.*, aîné.
eldest, *adj.*, aîné.
elevator, *n.*, ascenseur *m.*
elsewhere, *adv.*, ailleurs.
embark, *v.*, embarquer.
embarrass, *v.*, embarasser.
emperor, *n.*, empereur *m.*
empire, *n.*, empire *m.*
employ, *v.*, employer.
employé, *n.*, employé *m.*
end, *n.*, bout *m.*, but *m.*, fin *f.*; **at the** — **of,** au bout de.
end, *v.*, terminer, finir.
endure, *v.*, supporter.
engagement, *n.*, rendez-vous *m.*
England, *n.*, Angleterre *f.*
English, *adj.*, anglais.
Englishman, *n.*, Anglais *m.*
engraving, *n.*, gravure *f.*
enjoy, *v.*, jouir (de).

enough, *adv.*, assez.
enter, *v.*, entrer (dans *is required before a following noun*).
entertain, *v.*, divertir.
enthusiasm, *n.*, enthousiasme *m.*
enthusiastic, *adj.*, enthousiaste.
entire, *adj.*, tout (*f.* toute; *pl. m.* tous; *pl. f.* toutes), entier.
entrance, *n.*, entrée *f.*
entrée, *n.*, entrée *f.*
envelope, *n.*, enveloppe *f.*
epoch, *n.*, époque *f.*
equality, *n.*, égalité *f.*
errand, *n.*, course *f.;* **to go on —s, do —,** faire des courses.
especially, *adv.*, surtout.
et cetera, ainsi de suite.
even, *adv.*, même.
evening, *n.*, soir *m.*, soirée *f.;* **— party,** soirée *f.;* **— gown,** toilette de bal; **in the —,** du soir; **good —,** bonsoir; **yesterday —,** hier soir.
ever, *adv.*, toujours, jamais.
every, *adj.*, chaque, tout (*f.* toute; *pl. m.* tous; *pl. f.* toutes); **— one,** *indef. pron.*, chacun (*f.* chacune), tout le monde; **— day,** tous les jours.
everybody, tout le monde.
everywhere, *adv.*, partout.
exact, *adj.*, précis, juste.
exactly, *adv.*, exactement, justement, au juste.
examination, *n.*, examen *m.;* **to take (stand) an —,** passer un examen; **to pass an —,** réussir à un examen; **to fail in an —,** échouer à un examen, être collé.
examine, *v.*, visiter.
example, *n.*, exemple *m.;* **for —,** par exemple.
excellent, *adj.*, excellent; **to be — in,** être fort en.
except, *prep.*, excepté.
excursion, *n.*, excursion *f.*
excuse, *n.*, excuse *f.*
exercise, *n.*, exercice *m.*
expect, *v.*, attendre, s'attendre à.
expenditure, *n.*, dépense *f.*
expensive, *adj.*, cher (*f.* chère), coûteux (*f.* coûteuse).
explain, expliquer.
exterior, *n.*, extérieur *m.*
eye, *n.*, œil *m.*

F

fact, *n.;* **in —,** en effet.
fail, *v.*, manquer; **— in an examination,** échouer à un examen, être collé.
fairly, *adv.*, assez; **— well,** tant bien que mal; comme ci comme ça.
fall, *n.*, automne *m.;* prise *f.*
fall, *v.*, tomber; **let —,** laisser tomber.
family, *n.*, famille *f.*
famous, *adj.*, fameux (*f.* fameuse).
far, *adv.*, loin; **as — as,** jusqu'à; **— off,** *adv.*, loin.
fare, *n.*, tarif *m.*
farm, *n.*, ferme *f.;* **on the —,** à (dans) la ferme; **—house (-buildings),** ferme *f.*
fashion, *n.*, mode *f.*
fashionable, *adj.*, à la mode.
fast, *adv.*, vite, rapide; **be —,** (*of timepieces*) avancer.
fat, *adj.*, gros.
father, *n.*, père *m.*
fatherland, *n.*, patrie *f.*
fatiguing, *adj.*, fatigant.
fault, *n.*, faute *f.*
fear, *n.*, crainte *f.;* **for — that,** de crainte que, de peur que.
fear, *v.*, craindre, avoir peur.
February, *n.*, février *m.*
feel, *v.*, éprouver, sentir, se sentir.
felt, *n.*, feutre *m.*
festival, jour de fête *m.*

festivity, *n.*, fête *f.*
fête, *n.*, fête *f.*
few, *adv.*, peu; *adj.*, quelques; *pron.*, quelques-uns (unes).
fiber, *n.*, fibre *m.*
field, *n.*, champ *m.*
fifteen, *adj.*, quinze; **about —,** une quinzaine.
fifty, *adj.*, cinquante.
fill, *v.*, remplir.
film, *n.*, film *m.*
finally, *adv.*, enfin, à la fin.
find, *v.*, rencontrer, trouver; **— again,** retrouver; **— oneself,** se trouver.
fine, *adj.*, beau (*before vowels* bel, *f.* belle); **to be —,** (*of weather*) faire beau.
finish, *v.*, compléter, finir, terminer.
fire, *n.*, feu *m.*
fireplace, *n.*, cheminée *f.*
first, *adj.*, premier (*f.* première).
first, *adv.*, d'abord.
fish, *v.*, pêcher (à la ligne).
fitting, *adj.*, convenable.
five, *adj.*, cinq.
fix, *v.*, fixer.
fixed, *adj.*, fixe.
flatter, *v.*, flatter.
floor, *n.*, plancher *m.*; **ground —,** rez-de-chaussée *m.*
flower, *n.*, fleur *f.*; **in —,** en fleur.
flunk, *v.*, coller; **be —ed,** être collé.
follow, *v.*, suivre, poursuivre.
fond; be — of, aimer, raffoler de.
fooling, *n.*, blague *f.*
foot, *n.*, pied, *m.*; **—wear,** *n.*, chaussure *f.*, **on —,** à pied.
for, *conj.*, car, parce que.
for, *prep.*, pour, pendant, depuis.
forbid, *v.*, défendre.
forbidden, *adj.*, défendu.
foreign, *adj.*, étranger.
forget, *v.*, oublier.
fork, *n.*, fourchette *f.*
former, *adj.*, ancien (*f.* ancienne); **the —,** *dem. pron.*, celui-là (*f.* celle-là).
formerly, *adv.*, autrefois.
formula, *n.*, formule *m.*
forth; and so —, ainsi de suite.
fortnight, *n.*, quinze jours.
fortunate, *adj.*, heureux (*f.* heureuse).
fortunately, *adv.*, heureusement.
forty, *adj.*, quarante.
forward, *adv.*, en avant.
four, *adj.*, quatre.
fourteen, *adj.*, quatorze.
fourth, *adj.*, quart.
fox-trot, *n.*, fox-trot *m.*
foyer, *n.*, foyer *m.*
franc, *n.*, franc *m.*
France, *n.*, France *f.*
frank, *adj.*, franc.
frankly, *adv.*, franchement.
free, *adj.*, libre.
freeze, *v.*, geler.
French, *adj.*, français *m.*
Frenchman, *n.*, Français *m.*
frequent, *v.*, fréquenter.
frequently, *adv.*, souvent.
Friday, *n.*, vendredi *m.*
friend, *n.*, ami *m.*, amie *f.*
from, *prep.*, de.
front, *n.*, front *m.*; **in — of,** devant; **in —,** à l'avant.
fruit, *n.*, fruits *m. pl.*
full, *adj.*, plein, complet.
funny, *adj.*, rigolo (*slang*).
furnish, *v.*, meubler, fournir.
furnishing, *n.*, fourniture, *f.*, ameublement *m.*
furniture, *n.*; **piece of —,** meuble *m.*

G

gain, *v.*, gagner.
gain (time), (*of timepieces*) avancer.
gait, *n.*, allure *f.*

gallery, *n.*, galerie *f.*
game, *n.*, partie *f.*
garden, *n.*, jardin *m.*
garment, *n.*, vêtement *m.*
gay, *adj.*, brilliant, gai.
gender, *n.*, genre *m.*
general, *adj.*, général; **in —,** en général.
generally, *adv.*, généralement.
gentle, *adj.*, doux (*f.* douce).
gentleman, *n.*, monsieur (*pl.* messieurs), honnête homme.
geography, géographie *f.*
Germany, *n.*, Allemagne *f.*
get, *v.*, prendre; — **ready,** se préparer; — **up,** se lever.
gift, *n.*, cadeau *m.;* **give a —,** faire un cadeau.
girl, *n.*, fille *f.* (*used in this sense some adjective such as* jeune *or* petite *should precede*).
give, *v.*, donner; — **back,** rendre; — **on,** donner sur; — **up,** renoncer; — **a gift, present,** faire un cadeau.
glad, *adj.*, content, heureux (*f.* heureuse).
gladly, *adv.*, volontiers.
glass, *n.*, verre *m.*
glasses, *n.*, lunettes *f. pl.;* **opera —,** jumelles *f. pl.*
glove, *n.*, gant *m.*
glue, *v.*, coller.
go, *v.*, aller, marcher, se rendre; — **about it,** s'y prendre; — **down,** descendre; — **in,** entrer (dans *is required before a following noun*); — **on a wedding trip,** faire un voyage de noces; — **out,** sortir; — **up,** monter; — **with,** accompagner; — **with,** (*to match of colors*) aller avec; — **picnicking,** faire un pique-nique.
goal, *n.*, but *m.*
God, *n.*, Dieu *m.*
gold, *n.*, or *m.;* — **-piece,** pièce d'or.
good, *adj.*, bon (*f.* bonne), sage; — **day,** bonjour; — **evening,** bonsoir *m.;* **have a — time,** s'amuser; — **morning,** bonjour; **to be — at,** être fort en; **pretty —,** comme ci comme ça.
goods, *n.*, étoffe *f.*
goose, *n.*, oie *f.*
government, *n.*, gouvernement *m.*
gown; evening —, toilette de bal.
grammar, *n.*, grammaire *f.*
granddaughter, *n.*, petite-fille *f.*
grandfather, *n.*, grand-père *m.*
grandmother, *n.*, grand'mère *f.*
grandson, *n.*, petit-fils *m.*
grape, *n.*, raisin *m.;* — **-vine,** vigne *f.*
grass, *n.*, gazon *m.*
gray, *adj.*, gris.
great, *adj.*, grand; (**a**) — **deal,** beaucoup; — **granddaughter,** *n.*, arrière-petite-fille *f.;* — **grandson,** *n.*, arrière-petit-fils *m.*
green, *adj.*, vert, verdoyant.
greet, *v.*, saluer.
grocer, *n.*, épicier *m.*
ground, *n.*, terrain *m.*
ground-floor, rez-de-chaussée *m.*
group, *n.*, groupe *m.*
grow, *v.*, pousser.
guest, *n.*, invité *m.*
guillotine, *v.*, guillotiner.

H

half, *n.*, moitié *f.*, demi *m.*
hall, *n.*, salle.
hand, *n.*, main *f.;* **on the other —,** d'autre part; **shake —s,** se donner la main; **—shake,** *n.*, poignée (de main) *f.;* **in the —,** à la main.
handkerchief, *n.*, mouchoir *m.*
handsome, *adj.*, beau (*before vowels* bel, *f.* belle).

hang, *v.*, (*of tapestry*) tapisser; — **up,** *v.*, accrocher.
happen, *v.*, arriver, venir (à).
happily, *adv.*, heureusement.
happy, *adj.*, heureux (*f.* heureuse).
harbor, *n.*, port *m.*
hard, *adj.*, difficile, fort.
hardly, *adv.*, à peine, ne . . . guère.
hasten, *v.*, (se) dépêcher.
hat, *n.*, chapeau; **put on one's —,** se couvrir.
hatter, *n.*, (*for women*) modiste *f.*
have, *v.*, avoir, tenir, faire; — **just,** venir de + *inf.*; — **to,** falloir; — **an examination,** passer un examen.
Havre, *n.*, le Havre *m.*
he, *pers. pron.*, il, lui *m.*
he, *dem. pron.*, ce, celui, *m.*
hear, *v.*, entendre.
heart, *n.*, cœur *m.*
heat, *n.*, chaleur, *f.*, chaud *m*
hello, allo (*telephone*).
help, *v.*, aider.
hen, *n.*, poule *f.*
her, *dem. pron.*, celle *f.*
her, *pers. pron.*, elle, la, lui *f.*
her, *poss. adj.*, son (*f.* sa, *pl.* ses).
here, *adv.*, ici; — **and there,** par ci par là; — **is (are),** voici.
hers, *poss. pron.*, le sien (*f.* la sienne); **this is —,** ceci est à elle.
hill, *n.*, coteau *m.*
his, *poss. adj.*, son, (*f.* sa, *pl.* ses).
his, *poss. pron.*, le sien (*f.* la sienne); — **own,** le sien (*f.* la sienne); **this is —,** ceci est à lui.
history, *n.*, histoire *f.*
hold, *v.*, tenir.
hold, *n.*, (*of a ship*) cale, *f.*
holiday, *n.*, fête *f.*, jour de fête, congé *m.*
home, *n.*, maison *f.*; **at —,** à la maison; de retour; **at the — of,** chez; **at —** (*informally*), en famille.
honest, *adj.*, honnête.
honor, *n.*, honneur *m.*
hop, *v.*, sauter.
hope (for), *v.*, espérer.
hors-d'œuvre, *n.*, hors-d'œuvre *m.*
horse, *n.*, cheval *m.*; —**back,** à cheval.
hospitable, *adj.*, hospitalier.
hotel, *n.*, hôtel *m.*
hour, *n.*, heure *f.*
house, *n.*, maison *f.*; **at (to, in) the — of,** chez; **chicken- —,** *n.*, poulailler *m.*
how, *adv.*, comment; que; — **long,** combien de temps, depuis quand; — **many,** combien; — **much,** combien; — **are you?,** comment vous portez-vous? comment allez-vous? comment ça va?
however, *adv.*, cependant, pourtant, quelque . . . que.
humor; in a good —, de bonne humeur.
hundred, *adj.*, cent; **about a —,** une centaine (de) *f.*
hundred, *n.*, centaine (de) *f.*
hungry; be —, avoir faim.
hurried, *adj.*, pressé.
hurry, *v.*, (se) dépêcher; **be in a —,** être pressé.
husband, *n.*, mari *m.*

I

ice, *n.*, glace (*ice-cream*), *f.*
ice-cream, *n.*, glace, *f.*
idea, *n.*, idée *f.*
if, *conj.*, si; **if not,** sinon.
ill, *adv.*, mal.
ill, *adj.*, malade, souffrant.
illness, *m.*, maladie *f.*

imagine, *v.;* **to — to oneself,** se figurer.
immediately, *adv.*, aussitôt, tout de suite.
importance, *n.*, importance *f.;* **to be of —,** importer.
important, *adj.*, important.
impossible, *adj.*, impossible.
in, *prep.*, dans, en, à, de; *adv.*, là-dedans; — **order to,** pour.
India, *n.*, Indes *f. pl.*
indicate, *v.*, indiquer, signaler.
indispensable, *adj.*, de rigueur.
indisposed, *adj.*, souffrant.
informally, *adv.*, sans cérémonie, en famille.
information, *n.*, renseignements *m. pl.*
ink, *n.*, encre *f.*
inscribe, *v.*, inscrire.
inside; on the —, à l'interieur, là-dedans.
insist, *v.*, tenir à.
inspect, *v.*, visiter.
inspection, *n.*, visite *f.*
install, *v.*, installer.
instance; for —, par exemple.
instead of, *prep.*, au lieu de.
instruction, *m.*, instruction *f.*, enseignement, *m.*
insult, *v.*, insulter.
intelligent, *adj.*, intelligent.
intend, *v.*, avoir l'intention, compter.
intention, *n.*, intention *f.*
interest, *n.*, intérêt *m.*
interest, *v.*, intéresser; **be —ed in,** s'intéresser à.
interesting, *adj.*, intéressant.
interior, *n.*, intérieur *m.*
intermission, *n.*, entr'acte *m.*
into, *prep.*, dans (*used in a more specific sense than* en).
introduce, *v.*, présenter.
introduction, *n.*, présentation *f.*, introduction *f.*
invitation, *n.*, invitation *f*
invite, *v.*, inviter.
iron, *n.*, fer *m.*
it, *pers. pron.*, ce, il *m.*, elle *f.*, le *m.*, la *f.*, lui *m. and f.*
it, *dem. pron.*, ce.
Italian, *adj.*, italien (*f.* italienne).
Italian, *n.*, Italien *m.*, (*f.* Italienne).
Italy, *n.*, Italie *f.*
itinerary, *n.*, itinéraire *m.*
its, *poss. adj.*, son (*f.* sa, *pl.* ses).
its, *poss. pron.*, le sien (*f.* la sienne).

J

jacket, *n.*, veston *m.*
January, *n.*, janvier *m.*
Japan, *n.*, Japon *m.*
John, *n.*, Jean *m.*
joke; you are —ing, c'est de la blague.
journey, *n.*, voyage *m.*
joy, *n.*, joie *f.*
July, *n.*, juillet *m.*
jump, *v.*, sauter.
June, *n.*, juin *m.*
just, *adj.*, juste.
just; to have —, venir de + *inf.*

K

keep, *v.*, conserver, loger; — **up,** entretenir.
key, *n.*, clef *f.*
kind, *adj.*, bon (*f.* bonne), gentil (*f.* gentille).
kind, *n.*, classe *f.*, espèce *f.*, genre *m.*, sorte *f.*
kindness, *n.*, bonté *f.*
king, *n.*, roi *m.*
kitchen, *n.*, cuisine *f.*
knee, *n.*, genou *m.*
knife, *n.*, couteau *m.*
knock, *v.*, frapper.

know, *v.*, connaître, savoir; — **how,** savoir; — **by sight,** connaître de vue.
knowledge, *n.*, connaissance *f.*

L

lack, *v.*, manquer.
lacking; be —, manquer.
lady, *n.*, dame *f.*; **young —,** demoiselle, jeune fille.
land, *n.*, terre *f.*
land, *v.*, débarquer.
landscape, *n.*, paysage *m.*
language, *n.*, langue *f.*
lake, *n.*, lac *m.*
large, *adj.*, grand, gros (*f.* grosse).
last, *adj.*, dernier, passé; **at —,** enfin, à la fin.
last, *v.*, durer.
late, *adv.*, tard, en retard; **be —,** (*of timepieces*) retarder.
Latin, *adj.*; — **Quarter,** Quartier Latin.
latter; the —, *dem. pron.*, celui-ci *m.*, celle-ci *f.*, (*pl. m.* ceux-ci, *pl. f.* celles-ci).
laugh, *v.*, rire.
law, *n.*, droit *m.*; — **School,** *n.*, École de Droit.
lawyer, *n.*, avocat *m.*
lead, *v.*, conduire, mener.
leaf, *n.*, feuille *f.*
learn, *v.*, apprendre.
least, *adj.*, (le) moindre; **at —,** au moins.
leave, *n.*, congé *m.*
leave, *v.*, quitter, partir.
lecture, *n.*, conférence *f.*
left, *adj.*, gauche; **at (to) the —,** à gauche.
Le Mans, *n.*, Le Mans *m.*
lend, *v.*, prêter.
length, *n.*, longueur *f.*
less, *adj.*, moindre.
less, *adv.*, moins.
lesson, *n.*, leçon *f.*; **private —,** répétition *f.*
lest, *conj.*, de crainte que, de peur que, à moins que.
let, *v.*, laisser, permettre, louer; — **fall,** laisser tomber.
letter, (*in all senses*), *n.*, lettre *f.*; — **of introduction,** lettre d'introduction; — **-paper,** papier à lettre.
lettuce, *n.*, laitue *f.*
liberty, *n.*, liberté *f.*
library, *n.*, bibliothèque *f.*
life, *n.*, vie *f.*; **sort of —,** train de vie.
light (*of colors*), clair; léger; — **comedy,** vaudeville *m.*
like, *adj.*, tel (*f.* telle).
like, *v.*, aimer, désirer, trouver.
line, *n.*, ligne *f.*; **to fish with a —,** pêcher à la ligne; **to stand in —,** faire queue.
linen goods, linge *m.*
listen, *v.*, écouter.
little, *adj.*, petit.
little, *adv.*, peu; — **by —,** peu à peu.
live, *v.*, vivre, demeurer; **long live . . . !,** vive . . . !; — **in,** habiter.
lively, *adj.*, gai.
living-room, *n.*, salon *m.*
load, *v.*, charger.
loaf, *n.*, pain *m.*
lobby, *n.*, foyer *m.*, couloir *m.*
located; be —, se trouver.
lodge, *v.*, loger.
London, *n.*, Londres *m.*
long, *adj.*, long (*f.* longue); **a — while,** longtemps; **a — time,** longtemps.
long, *adv.*, longtemps; **how —,** depuis quand.
look, *v.*, regarder, avoir l'air; — **at,** regarder; — **at fixedly,** braquer; — **for,** chercher; —!,

tiens!; — **after,** s'occuper de, se charger de; — **as if,** avoir l'air de; — **out,** prendre garde; — **over,** surveiller.
lose, *v.*, perdre; — **time** (*of a timepiece*), retarder.
lost; to get —, s'égarer.
lot; a —, beaucoup *adv.*
love, *n.*, amour *m.*
love, *v.*, aimer.
lower, *adj.;* — **classes,** peuple *m.*
luck, *n.*, veine *f.*, chance *f.*
lunch, *n.*, déjeuner *m.*
lunch, *v.*, déjeuner.
luncheon, *n.*, déjeuner *m.*
luxury, *n.*, luxe *m.*
lycée, *n.*, lycée *m.*

M

machine, *n.*, machine *f.*
magnificent, *adj.*, magnifique.
mahogany, *n.*, acajou *m.*
maid, *n.*, bonne *f.*
mail, *v.*, mettre à la poste.
make, *v.*, faire.
man, *n.*, homme *m.*
manage, *v.*, s'y prendre.
manner, *n.*, façon *f.*, manière *f.*
manners, *n.*, mœurs *f. pl.*
many, *adv.*, beaucoup; **as —,** autant; **how —,** combien; **so —,** tant; **too —,** trop.
map, *n.*, carte *f.*
March, *n.*, mars *m.*
mark, *v.*, marquer.
market, *n.*, marché *m.*
marriage, *n.*, mariage *m.;* **to give in —,** marier.
married; get —, se marier.
marry, *v.*, se marier avec, épouser.
marvelous, *adj.*, superbe.
marvelously, *adv.*, à merveille.
Mary, *n.*, Marie *f.*
mass, *n.*, messe *f.* (*church*).
match, *n.*, (*of sports*), match *m.*
match, *v.*, (*of colors*), aller.
material, *n.*, matériel *m.*, étoffe *f.*
mathematics, *n.*, mathématiques *f. pl.*
matinée, *n.*, matinée *f.*
matter, *v.*, importer; **it doesn't —, no —,** n'importe.
May, *n.*, mai *m.*
may, *v.*, pouvoir.
maybe, *adv.*, peut-être.
me, *pers. pron.*, me, moi; **to —,** me, moi.
meal, *n.*, repas *m.*
mean, *n.*, moyen *m.;* **—s,** moyens *m. pl.*
mean, *v.*, vouloir dire; **what does . . . —?,** que veut dire . . . ?
meanwhile, *adv.*, en attendant.
measure, *v.*, mesurer; **to —,** sur mesure.
meat, *n.*, viande *f.*
mechanism, *n.*, mécanisme *m.*
meet, *v.*, rencontrer, aller à la rencontre de.
meeting, *n.*, réunion *f.*, rendez-vous *m.*
member, *n.*, membre *m.*
mend, *v.*, repriser, raccommoder.
mending, *n.*, raccommodage *m.*
merry, *adj.*, gai.
metropolitan, *n.*, métropolitain *m.*
Mexico, *n.*, le Mexique *m.*
middle, *n.*, milieu *m.*
midnight, *n.*, minuit *m.*
mild, *adj.*, doux (*f.* douce).
milk, *n.*, lait *m.*
million, *n.*, million *m.*
mind; change one's —, changer d'avis.
mine, *poss. pron.*, le mien (*f.* la mienne).
minister, *n.*, ministre *m.;* — **of Public Instruction,** Ministre de l'Instruction publique.
minute, *n.*, minute *f.*
misery, *n.*, misère *f.*

misfortune, *n.*, malheur *m.*
mislay, *v.*, égarer.
misplace, *v.*, égarer.
miss, *n.*, mademoiselle.
miss, *v.*, manquer.
mistake, *n.*, faute *f.*; **to make a —**, se tromper, faire une faute.
mistaken; be —, se tromper.
mister, *n.*, monsieur *m.*
mode, *n.*, mode *f.*
modern, *adj.*, moderne.
modest, *adj.*, modeste.
moment, *n.*, moment *m.*
monarch, *n.*, monarque *m.*
Monday, *n.*, lundi *m.*
money, *n.*, argent *m.*
month, *n.*, mois *m.*; **in the — of**, au mois de.
moon, *n.*, lune *f.*, **—light**, clair de lune.
moonlight; to be —, faire clair de lune.
more, *adv.*, plus, encore, davantage; **— and —**, de plus en plus.
moreover, *adv.*, d'ailleurs, de plus.
morning, *n.*, matin *m.*, matinée *f.*, **in the —**, du matin.
mortal, *adj.*, mortel.
most; the —, *n.*, la plupart *f.*; **make the — of**, profiter de.
mother, *n.*, mère *f.*
mount, *v.*, monter.
movie, *n.*, cinéma *m.*
moving picture theatre, *n.*, cinéma *m.*
Mr., Monsieur.
much, *adv.*, beaucoup, bien; **as —**, autant; **how —**, combien; **so —**, tant; **so — the better**, tant mieux; **so — the worse**, tant pis; **too —**, trop; **very —**, beaucoup.
museum, *n.*, musée *m.*
music, *n.*, musique *f.*
must, *v.*, devoir, falloir.
my, *poss. adj.*, mon (*f.* ma, *pl.* mes).

N

name, *n.*, nom *m.*
name, *v.*, nommer, appeler.
named; be —, s'appeler.
nap, *n.*; **take a —**, faire une sieste.
napkin, *n.*, serviette *f.*
narrate, *v.*, raconter.
nation, *n.*, nation *f.*
national, *adj.*, national.
near, *adv.*, près.
near, *prep.*, près de.
nearly, *adv.*, à peu près, presque.
necessary; *adj.*, nécessaire, de rigueur.
necessary; be —, falloir.
need, *n.*, besoin *m.*
need, *v.*, avoir besoin (de).
needle, *n.*, aiguille *f.*
neighbor, *n.*, voisin *m.*
neither, *adj. pron.*, ni l'un ni l'autre.
neither, *conj.*, ni; **— . . . nor**, ne . . . ni . . . ni.
nephew, *n.*, neveu *m.*
never, *adv.*, jamais.
nevertheless, *adv.*, cependant, néanmoins, pourtant.
new, *adj.*, nouveau (*before vowels* nouvel, *f.* nouvelle); (*in the sense of recently made*) neuf (*f.* neuve).
New Orleans, *n.*, La Nouvelle Orléans *f.*
New Year's, *n.*, Jour de l'An.
news, *n.*, nouvelles *f. pl.*
newspaper, *n.*, journal *m.*
next, *adj.*, prochain; **— day**, lendemain *m.*
next, *adv.*, puis, ensuite.
nice, *adj.*, gentil (*f.* gentille); **to be —**, (*impers.*) faire bon.
niece, *n.*, nièce *f.*
night, *n.*, nuit, *f.*, soir *m.*; **last —**, hier soir.
nine, *adj.*, neuf.
nineteen, *adj.*, dix-neuf.

ninety, *adj.*, quatre-vingt-dix.
no, *adj. pron.*, aucun (*f.* aucune), nul (*f.* nulle); — **one,** personne, ne . . . personne.
no, *adv.*, non, pas, point, ne . . . pas; — **longer,** ne . . . plus; — **more,** ne . . . plus; — **thank you,** merci.
nobody, *indef. pron.*, personne, ne . . . personne.
noise, *n.*, vacarme *m.*
noon, *n.*, midi *m.*
nor, *conj.*, ni; **neither . . . —,** ne . . . ni . . . ni.
nose, *n.*, nez *m.*
not, *adv.*, ne, ne . . . pas; — **at all,** ne . . . point.
not any, *adj. pron.*, aucun (*f.* aucune), ne . . . aucun (*f.* aucune), nul (*f.* nulle), ne . . . nul (*f.* nulle), n'en . . . pas.
note, *n.*, billet *m.*
note-book, *n.*, cahier *m.*
nothing, *adv.*, rien, ne . . . rien.
notice, *n.*, avis *m.*
notice, *v.*, remarquer.
novel, *n.*, roman *m.*
November, *n.*, novembre *m.*
now, *adv.*, maintenant, à présent, en ce moment; —**adays,** de nos jours.
number, numéro *f.*, quantité *f.*
numerous, *adj.*, nombreux.

O

obey, *v.*, obéir.
obligatory, *adj.*, obligatoire, de rigueur.
oblige, *v.*, obliger.
observe, *v.*, observer.
occasion, *n.*, occasion *f.*
occupy, *v.*, occuper; **to be —ed with,** s'occuper de.
ocean, *n.*, mer *f.*
o'clock, *n.*, heure *f.*
October, *n.*, octobre *m.*
of, *prep.*, de, moins (*of the hour*).
office, *n.*, bureau *m.*, cabinet, *m.*; **post- —,** bureau de poste.
office-desk, bureau *m.*
often, *adv.*, souvent.
old, *adj.*, âgé (de), ancien (*f.* ancienne), vieux (*before vowels* vieil, *f.* vieille); **how — is he?,** quel âge a-t-il?
olive, *n.*, olive *f.*
omit, *v.*, omettre.
on, *prep.*, sur, à, en + *pres. part.*
once, *adv.*, autrefois, une fois; **at —,** aussitôt, tout de suite; — **more,** encore une fois.
one, *adj. pron.*, un (*f.* une).
one, *indef. pron.* (*often rendered in English by* ' you, " we,' ' they,' ' people,' *or by the passive construction*) on; — **another,** l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, se; **that —,** celui-là (*f.* celle-là); **this —,** celui-ci (*f.* celle-ci).
one's, *poss. adj.*, son (*f.* sa, *pl.* ses); — **own,** le sien (*f.* la sienne).
only, *adj.*, seul.
only, *adv.*, seulement, ne . . . que.
open, *v.*, ouvrir; — **upon,** donner sur.
open, *adj.*, ouvert; **in the — air,** en plein air.
opera, *n.*, opéra *m.*; —**-glasses,** jumelles, *f. pl.*
operator, *n.*, téléphoniste *f.*
opinion, *n.*, avis *m.*
opportunity, *n.*, occasion *f.*
opposite, *prep.*, en face (de).
optional, *adj.*, facultatif.
or, *conj.*, ou.
orange, *n.*, orange *f.*
orchestra, *n.*, orchestre *m.*
order, *n.*, ordre *m.*; **in — that,** pour que, afin que; **in— to,** pour.
order, *v.*, commander, ordonner; **to —,** sur mesure.

organise, *v.*, organiser.
other, *adj.*, autre; **each —,** l'un l'autre, se; **to each —,** l'un à l'autre, se.
otherwise, *adv.*, autrement.
ought, *v.*, devoir.
our, *poss. adj.*, notre (*pl.* nos).
ours, *poss. pron.*, le nôtre (*f.* la nôtre).
out; outside, dehors; — **doors,** en plein air.
outside, *n.*, extérieur; **on the —,** à l'extérieur.
over, *adv.*, au-dessus de; — **there,** là-bas.
overcoat, *n.*, pardessus *m.*
overhang, *v.*, surplomber.
oversee, *v.*, surveiller.
owe, *v.*, devoir.
own, *adj.*, propre.

P

pack, *v.*, (*a trunk*), faire une malle.
package, *n.*, colis *m.*
painting, *n.*, peinture *f.*
pair, *n.*, paire *f.*
paper, *n.*, papier *m.*, copie *f.*; **blotting-—,** papier buvard *m.*; **letter-—,** papier à lettre *m.*; **news—,** journal *m.*; **writing-—,** papier à lettre *m.*
paper, *v.*, tapisser.
paradise, *n.*, paradis *m.*
parcel, *n.*; — **post,** *n.*, colis postal *m.*
pardon, *v.*, pardonner.
parent(s), *n.*, parent(s) *m.*
Paris, *n.*, Paris *m.*
park, *v.*; **to be —ed,** (*of autos, etc.*) stationner.
part, *n.*, partie *f.*, part *f.*; **for my —,** de ma part.
party, *n.*, partie *f.*, groupe *f.*; **evening —,** soirée *f.*
pass, *v.*, passer; — **an examination,** réussir à un examen.
passage, *n.*, traversée *f.*
passenger, *n.*, voyageur *m.*
passive, *adj.*, passif (*f.* passive).
passport, *n.*, passeport *m.*
past, *adj.*, dernier (*f.* dernière), passé, et (*of the hour*).
pastry, *n.*, pâtisserie *f.*
path, *n.*, sentier *m.*
patience, *n.*, patience *f.*
pavement, *n.*, trottoir *m.*
pay, *v.*, payer; — **a visit, call,** faire une visite, rendre une visite; — **for,** payer.
peas, *n. pl.*, petits pois *m. pl.*
pedant, *n.*, cuistre *m.*
pen, *n.*, plume *f.*
pencil, *n.*, crayon *m.*
pension, *n.*, pension *f.*
people, *n.*, on, gens *m. pl.* (*may be f. pl. when variable adjective precedes*), monde *m.*, peuple *m.*; **young —,** jeunes gens.
people, *v.*, peupler.
pepper, *n.*, poivre *m.*
perceive, *v.*, sentir, apercevoir, s'apercevoir.
perfect, *v.*, perfectionner.
perform, *v.*, représenter.
performance, *n.*, représentation *f.*
perhaps, *adv.*, peut-être.
period, *n.*, période *f.*
permission, *n.*, permission *f.*
permit, *v.*, permettre, laisser.
persevere, *v.*, persévérer.
person, *n.*, personne *f.*
personal, *adj.*, personnel (*f.* personnelle).
phonograph, *n.*, gramophone *m.*
phrase, *n.*, phrase *f.*
piano, *n.*, piano *m.*
picnic, *n.*, pique-nique *m.*; **to go —king, have a —,** faire un piquenique.
picture, *n.*, tableau *m.*

piece, *n.*, morceau *m.*, pièce *f.*; — **of advice,** conseil *m.*; — **of furniture,** meuble *m.*
pineapple, *n.*, ananas *m.*
pink, *adj.*, rose.
pipe, *n.*, pipe *f.*
pit, *n.*, parterre *m.*
pity; it is a —, il (*or* c')est dommage.
pity, *v.*, plaindre.
placard, *n.*, affiche *f.*, pancarte *f.*
place, *n.*, endroit *m.*, lieu *m.*, place *f.*, — **at table,** couvert *m.*, **take —,** avoir lieu; **in — of,** au lieu de.
place, *v.*, mettre, placer, situer.
plain, *n.*, plaine *f.*
plan, *n.*, plan *m.*
plate, *n.*, assiette *f.*, **—s,** vaisselle *f.*
platform, *n.*, plate-forme *f.*
play, *n.*, spectacle *m.*, représentation *f.*
play, *v.*, jouer, représenter; (*of musical instruments*) jouer de + *article*, (*of games*) jouer à + *article*.
player, *n.*, joueur *m.*
pleasant, *adj.*, agréable; **to be —,** (*impers.*) faire bon.
please, *v.*, plaire; **if you —,** s'il vous plaît.
pleased, *adj.*, content, heureux (*f.*, heureuse).
pleasure, *n.*, plaisir, *m.*, **with —,** volontiers, avec plaisir.
P.M., *adv.*, du soir.
pocket, *n.*, poche *f.*
point, *n.*, point *m.*
point, *v.*, braquer.
point out, *v.*, indiquer, signaler.
polite, *adj.*, poli.
politeness, *n.*, politesse *f.*
poor, *adj.*, pauvre, mauvais.
popular, *adj.*, populaire.
port, *n.*, port *m.*
portable, *adj.*, portatif.
porter, *n.*, facteur *m.*
Portugal, *n.*, Portugal *m.*
possible, *adj.*, possible.
postage-stamp, *n.*, timbre *m.*, timbre-poste *m.*
post-office, *n.*, bureau de poste *m.*
poster, *n.*, affiche *f.*
postpone, *v.*, remettre.
potato, *n.*, pomme de terre *f.*
poultry, *n.*, volaille *f.*
poultry-yard, *n.*, basse-cour *f.*
practice, *n.*, usage *m.*
pray, *v.*, prier.
precise, *adj.*, précis.
prefer, *v.*, aimer mieux, préférer.
preparation, *n.*, préparation *f.*, préparatif *m.*
prepare, *v.*, préparer; — **oneself,** se préparer.
present, *adj.*, présent; **be — at,** assister à.
present, *n.*, cadeau; (*time or tense*) présent *m.*; **at —,** à présent, en ce moment; **to make a —,** faire un cadeau.
present, *v.*, présenter.
preserves, *n.*, confitures *f. pl.*
president, *n.*, président *m.*
pretty, *adj.*, gentil (*f.*, gentille), joli; — **good,** comme ci comme ça.
price, *n.*, prix *m.*
principal, *adj.*, principal.
private, *adj.*, particulier.
probable, *adj.*, probable.
proclaim, *v.*, proclamer.
proctor, *n.*, 'pion' *m.*
profession, *n.*, profession *f.*
professor, *n.*, professeur *m.*
profit (by), *v.*, profiter (de).
progress, *n.*, progrès *m.*
prohibited, *adj.*, défendu.
project, *n.*, plan *m.*
promenade, *n.*, promenade *f.*
promenade, *v.*, se promener.

promise, *v.*, promettre.
pronunciation, *n.*, prononciation *f.*
proper, *adj.*, convenable.
protect, *v.*, protéger.
protest, *n.*, protestation *f.*
Protestant, *adj.*, protestant.
protestantism, *n.*, protestantisme *m.*
protestation, *n.*, protestation *f.*
proud, *adj.*, fier.
province, *n.*, province *f.*
provided that, *conj.*, pourvu que.
provisions, *n.*, provisions *f. pl.*
public, *adj.*, public (*f.* publique).
publisher, *n.*, éditeur *m.*
pump, *n.*, (*shoe*) escarpin *m.*
pupil, *n.*, élève *m. or f.*
purchase, *n.*, achat *m.*
pure, *adj.*, pur.
purse, *n.*, porte-monnaie *m.*
pursue, *v.*, poursuivre.
put, *v.*, mettre, placer; — **on** (**of hat**), se couvrir; — **on,** mettre; **to — questions to,** poser des questions à.

Q

quantity, *n.*, quantité *f.*
quarter, *n.*, quart *m.*, quartier *m.*
quay, *n.*, quai *m.*
queer; a — person, original *m.*
question, *v.*, questionner, poser des questions.
question, *n.*; **it is a — of,** il s'agit de.
quiet, *adj.*, calme.
quickly, *adv.*, vite, rapidement.
quite, *adv.*, assez, tout, tout à fait.
quiz, *n.*, examen *m.*; — **master,** *n.*, répétiteur.
quiz, *v.*, questionner.

R

radish, *n.*, radis *m.*
railroad, *n.*, chemin de fer *m.*
rain, *n.*, pluie *f.*
rain, *v.*, pleuvoir.
raise, *v.*, lever, élever.
rapidly, *adv.*, rapidement, vite.
rate, *n.*, tarif *m.*; (*of speed*) allure *f.*
rather, *adv.*, assez, plutôt.
ray, *n.*, rayon *m.*
read, *v.*, lire.
ready, *adj.*, prêt; **to get —,** se préparer; — **-made** (*of clothes*), tout fait.
real, *adj.*, vrai.
really, *adv.*, vraiment.
reascend, *v.*, remonter.
reason, *n.*, raison *f.*
receive, *v.*, recevoir.
receiver, *n.*, (*of telephone*) récepteur *m.*
recent, *adj.*, nouveau.
record, *n.*, (*of phonograph*) disque *m.*
reënter, *v.*, rentrer.
refreshment, *n.*, rafraîchissement *m.*
refuse, *v.*, refuser.
regard; with — (to), *prep.*, quant à.
regard, *v.*, regarder.
region, *n.*, région *f.*
register, *n.*, registre *m.*
regret, *v.*, regretter.
rehearsal, *n.*, répétition *f.*
reign, *n.*, règne *m.*
reign, *v.*, régner.
relate, *v.*, raconter.
relative, *n.*, parent, *m.*
remain, *v.*, rester, demeurer.
remember, *v.*, se souvenir (de), se rappeler.
remount, *v.*, remonter.
remove, *v.*, enlever, ôter.
renounce, *v.*, renoncer.
rent, *v.*, louer.
repair, *v.*, raccommoder.
repast, *n.*, repas *m.*
repeat, *v.*, répéter.
repertory, *n.*, répertoire *m.*
reply, *v.*, répondre.

represent, *v.*, représenter.
representation, *n.*, représentation *f.*
republic, *n.*, république.
request, *n.*, demande *f.*
resemble, *v.*, ressembler.
reserve, *v.*, reserver.
reside, *v.*, demeurer.
resident, *n.*, résident *m.*
respectful, *adj.*, respectueux.
respond, *v.*, répondre.
rest, *v.*, se reposer.
return, *n.*, retour *m.*
return, *v.*, rentrer, revenir, retourner, rendre.
revolution, *n.*, révolution *f.*
rich, *adj.*, riche.
ride, *n.*, promenade *f.*; **take a —,** faire une promenade; **automobile —,** promenade en auto; **boat —,** promenade en bateau; **horseback —,** promenade à cheval; **sleigh —,** promenade en traîneau.
ridicule, *n.*, ridicule *m.*
right, *adj.*, droit, juste; **be —,** avoir raison; **— away,** tout de suite.
right, *n.*, raison *f.*
ring, *v.*, sonner.
ripe, *adj.*, mûr.
ripen, *v.*, mûrir.
rise, *v.*, se lever; **sun—,** lever du soleil.
rising, *n.*, lever *m.*
river, *n.*, rivière *f.*
road, *n.*, chemin *m.*, route *f.*
roam, *v.*, rôder.
roast, *n.*, rôti *m.*
rocking-chair, *n.*, chaise à bascule *f.*
room, *n.*, chambre *f.*, pièce *f.*, place *f.*, **class- —,** salle de classe *f.*; **large —,** salle *f.*; **—mate,** compagnon de chambre *m.*
rose, *n.*, rose *f.*
round; — trip ticket, billet d'aller et retour.
route, *n.*, route *f.*, chemin *m.*
rug, *n.*, tapis *m.*
roquefort, *n.*, roquefort *m.*
run, *v.*, courir.

S

sack-coat, *n.*, veston *m.*
sad, *adj.*, triste.
salad, *n.*, salade *f.*
sale, *n.*, vente *f.*, **on —,** en vente.
salt, *n.*, sel *m.*
same, *adj.*, même; **all the — to me,** cela (ça) m'est égal.
sandwich, *n.*, sandwich *m.*
satchel, *n.*, valise *f.*
Saturday, *n.*, samedi *m.*
say, *v.*, dire.
scarcely, *adv.*, ne . . . guère, à peine.
scene, *n.*, scène *f.*
scholarly, *adj.*, scolaire.
school, *n.*, école *f.*, collège *m.*; **at —,** à l'école; **of (the) —,** scolaire.
science, *n.*, science *f.*
score, *n.*, vingtaine *f.*
scratch, *v.*, gratter.
sea, *n.*, mer.
seasickness, *n.*, mal de mer *m.*
season, *n.*, saison *f.*
seat, *n.*, place *f.*
seated, *p.p.*, assis.
second, *adj.*, second, deuxième.
secretary, *n.*, secrétaire *m.*
section, *n.*, section *f.*
see, *v.*, voir.
seek, *v.*, chercher.
seem, *v.*, paraître, sembler.
select, *v.*, choisir.
selection, *n.*, choix *m.*; (*of music*) morceau *m.*
self, *adj.*, même.
sell, *v.*, vendre.
send, *v.*, envoyer, expédier.
sentence, *n.*, phrase *f.*
September, *n.*, septembre *m.*

serge, *n.*, serge *f.*
serious, *adj.*, sérieux (*f.* sérieuse).
serve, *v.*, servir.
service, *n.*, disposition *f.*, service *m.*
set, *v.;* — **the table,** mettre le couvert; — **out,** partir; — (*of sun*) se coucher.
settle, *v.*, installer.
seven, *adj.*, sept.
seventeen, *adj.*, dix-sept.
seventy, *adj.*, soixante-dix.
seventy-one, *adj.*, soixante (et) onze.
several, *adj. pron.*, plusieurs.
sewing; —-basket, panier à ouvrage *m.*
shade, *n.*, store *m.;* (*of meaning, color*, etc.) nuance *f.*
shake; — hands, se donner la main.
share, *n.*, part *f.*
sharp, *adj.*, (*of the hour*) précis(e).
she, *dem. pron.*, ce, celle.
she, *pers. pron.*, elle.
shelf, *n.*, rayon *m.*, (*of books*) bibliothèque *f.*
shelter, *v.*, abriter.
shirt, *n.*, chemise *f.*
shoe, *n.;* **low —,** soulier *m.;* **high —,** bottine *f.;* — **store,** magasin de chaussures.
shop, *n.*, magasin *m.*
shop, *v.*, faire des emplettes.
shore, *n.*, rive *f.*, bord *m.*
short, *adj.*, court.
show, *v.*, montrer.
shower-bath, *n.*, douche *f.*
shut, *v.*, fermer.
sick, *adj.*, souffrant, malade.
sickness, *n.*, maladie *f.;* **sea—,** mal de mer.
side, *n.*, côté *m.*, (*of street*) bord *m.*
sidewalk, *n.*, trottoir *m.*
sight, *n.*, vue; **know by —,** connaître de vue.
sign, *n.*, pancarte *f.*
silent; to be —, se taire.
silk, *n.*, soie *f.*
silver, *n.*, argent *m.*
similar, *adj.*, tel (*f.* telle).
simple, *adj.*, simple.
simply, *adv.*, simplement.
since, *adv.*, depuis.
since, *conj.*, depuis que, puisque.
since, *prep.*, depuis.
sing, *v.*, chanter.
sir, *n.*, monsieur *m.*, (*pl.* messieurs).
sister, *n.*, sœur *f.*
sister-in-law, *n.*, belle-sœur *f.*
sit, *v.;* — **down,** s'asseoir.
situated, *adj.*, situé; **be —,** être situé, se trouver.
six, *adj.*, six.
sixteen, *adj.*, seize.
sixty, *adj.*, soixante.
size, *n.*, (*of gloves, shoes*, etc.) pointure *f.*
slang, *n.*, argot *m.;* **in —,** en argot.
sleep, *v.*, dormir; **to fall (go) to —,** s'endormir.
sleepy; be —, avoir sommeil.
sleigh, *n.*, traîneau *m.*
slipper, *n.;* **ladies' evening —,** soulier de bal.
slow, *adj.*, lent; **be —,** (*of time-pieces*) retarder.
small, *adj.*, petit.
smoke, *v.*, fumer.
smoker, *n.*, fumeur *m.*
smoking-room, *n.*, fumoir *m.*
smoking; no —, défense de fumer.
snow, *n.*, neige *f.*
snow, *v.*, neiger.
so, *adv.*, ainsi, par conséquent, si, tellement; — **many,** tant; — **much,** tant, tellement; — **that,** afin que, de façon que, de manière que, de sorte que, pour que; — **. . . that,** si . . . que, tellement . . . que.

sock, *n.*, chaussette *f.*
society, *n.*, beau monde *m.*
soft, *adj.*, mou *m.*, (mol *m.*, molle *f.*).
sojourn, *n.*, séjour *m.*
some, *pron. adv.*, en.
some, *part. art.*, des.
some, *adj. pron.*, quelque, en; — **where,** quelque part; — **one,** quelqu'un (*pl.* quelques-uns, *f.* quelqu'une, *pl. f.* quelques-unes).
somebody, *indef. pron.*, quelqu'un (*pl.* quelques-uns, *f.* quelqu'une, *pl. f.* quelques-unes).
something, *indef. pron.*, quelque chose.
sometimes, *adv.*, quelquefois.
son, *n.*, fils *m.*
song, *n.*, chant *m.*
soon, *adv.*, bientôt, tôt; **as — as,** aussitôt que.
sooner, *adv.*, plutôt, plus tôt.
sorry, *adj.*, fâché; **be —,** regretter, être fâché.
sort, *n.*, espèce *f.*, sorte *f.*
sound, *v.*, sonner.
soup, *n.*, potage *m.*
south, *n.*, midi *m.*
Spain, *n.*, Espagne *f.*
Spaniard, *n.*, Espagnol *m.*
Spanish, *adj.*, espagnol.
speak, *v.*, parler; — **to,** saluer, aborder.
spectacle, *n.*, spectacle *m.*, représentation *f.*
spectacles, *n.*, lunettes *f. pl.*
speed, *n.*, (*rate of*), allure *f.*
spend, *v.*, passer.
spool, *n.*, bobine *f.*
spoon, *n.*, cuiller *f.*
sport, *n.*, sport *m.*
spot, *n.*, endroit *m.*
spring, *n.*, printemps *m.*
sprout, *v.*, pousser.
square, *adj.*, carré.
stable, *n.*, (*for horses*) écurie *f.*, (*for cows*) étable *f.*
stage, *n.*, scène *f.*
stamp, *n.*, timbre *m.*, timbre-poste *m.*
stand, *v.*, supporter; — **in line,** faire queue; — **an examination,** passer un examen.
standing, *adv.*, debout.
state, *n.*, état *m.*, **stroke of —,** coup d'état *m.*
statesman, *n.*, homme d'état *m.*
stateroom, *n.*, cabine *f.*
station, *n.*, gare *f.*
stay, *n.*, séjour *m.*
stay, *v.*, rester, demeurer.
steam, *n.*, vapeur *f.* — **street-car,** tramway à vapeur.
steel, *n.*, acier *m.*
stick, *v.*, coller.
still, *adv.*, encore, toujours; **to be —,** se taire.
stocking, *n.*, bas *m.*
stool, *n.*, tabouret *m.*
stop, *n.*, arrêt *m.*
stop, *v.*, cesser, arrêter, s'arrêter.
store, *n.*, magasin *m.;* **dry-goods —,** magasin de nouveautés *m.*
story, *n.*, histoire *f.*
strawberry, *n.*, fraise *f.*
stream, *n.*, rivière *f.*
street, *n.*, rue *f.*
street-car, *n.*, tramway *m.* **steam —,** tramway à vapeur.
strike, *v.*, frapper.
stroke, *n.*, coup *m.;* — **of state,** coup d'état *m.*
strong, *adj.*, fort.
student *n.*, (*of a secondary school*) élève *m. or f.;* (*of a college or university*) étudiant *m.*, étudiante *f.;* (*of a lycée*) lycéen *m.*
study, *n.*, étude *f.;* cabinet de travail *m.*, bureau *m.*
study, *v.*, étudier.
style, *n.*, mode *f.;* **in —,** à la mode; **out of —,** démodé.
subject; on the — of, au sujet de.

subsidize, *v.*, subventionner.
suburbs, *n. pl.*, banlieue *f.*
subvention, *v.*, subventionner.
subway, *n.*, métropolitain *m.*, métro *m.*
succeed, *v.*, réussir; succéder.
success, *n.*, succès *m.*
successful, *adj.*, réussi.
successor, *n.*, successeur *m.*
such, *adj.*, tel (*f.* telle); — **a one,** un tel; **in — a manner,** tellement.
sudden; all of a —, tout d'un coup.
suddenly, *adv.*, tout à coup.
suffer, *v.*, supporter.
sugar, *n.*, sucre *m.*
suit, *n.*, vêtement *m.*; (*for men*) complet *m.*; (*for women*) costume *m.*
suit, *v.*, convenir.
suitable, *adj.*, convenable.
sum, *n.*, somme *f.*
summer, *n.*, été *m.*
sun, *n.*, soleil *m.*; — **-rise,** lever du soleil *m.*
sup, *v.*, souper.
superb, *adj.*, superbe.
supper, *n.*, souper *m.*
supplies, *n.*, provisions *f.*
suppose, *v.*, supposer.
sure, *adj.*, certain, sûr.
surveillance, *n.*, surveillance *f.*
sweep, *v.*, balayer.
sweet, *adj.*, doux (*f.* douce).
sweetbread, *n.*, ris de veau *m.*
swift, *adj.*, rapide.
sympathetic, *adj.*, sympathique.
system, *n.*, système *m.*

T

table, *n.*, table *f.* **small round —,** guéridon *m.*; **set the —,** mettre le couvert; **place at —,** couvert *m.*
table-cloth, *n.*, nappe *f.*
tail, *n.*, queue *f.*
tailor, *n.*, tailleur *m.*
take, *v.*, conduire, mener, prendre; — **off,** ôter; — **a nap,** faire une sieste; — **an examination,** passer un examen; — **a walk,** faire une promenade (à pied), se promener; — **away,** enlever; — **place,** avoir lieu; — **a wedding trip,** faire un voyage de noces; — **charge of,** se charger de.
tale, *n.*, histoire *f.*
talk, *v.*, causer.
tall, *adj.*, grand.
task, *n.*, travail *m.*, devoir *m.*
taste, *n.*, goût *m.*
taxi, *n.*, taxi *m.*
taxi-cab, *n.*, taxi *m.*
tea, *n.*, thé *m.*
teacher, *n.*, professeur *m.*
telephone, *n.*, téléphone *m.*, appareil *m.*; — **ring,** coup de téléphone; — **bell,** coup de téléphone; — **operator,** téléphoniste *f.*
telephone, *v.*, téléphoner, donner un coup de téléphone.
tell, *v.*, dire; — **of,** raconter.
ten, *adj.*, dix.
ten, *n.*, dizaine *f.* **set of —,** dizaine *f.*
tender, *adj.*, tendre.
tennis, *n.*, tennis *m.*
terminate, *v.*, terminer.
text, *n.*, texte *m.*
than, *conj.*, que.
than, *prep.*, (*before a numeral*) de.
thank (for), *v.*, remercier (de); **no — you,** merci.
thanks, *adv.*, merci.
that, *conj.*, que; **so —,** afin que, de façon que, de manière que, de sorte que, pour que, si . . . que, tellement . . . que.

that, *dem. adj.*, ce (*before vowels* cet, *f.* cette).
that, *dem. pron.*, ça, ce, cela, celui, celle; — **one,** celui-là, celle-là; celui (*f.* celle); — **is to say,** c'est-à-dire.
that, *rel. pron.*, qui, que, lequel (*f.* laquelle, *pl. m.* lesquels, *pl. f.* lesquelles); — **which,** ce qui, ce que.
the, *def. art.*, le *m.*, la *f.*, les *pl. m. and f.*; — **one,** celui (*f.* celle).
theatre, *n.*, théâtre *m.*
theatrical, *adj.*, théâtral.
their, *poss. adj.*, leur.
theirs, *poss. pron.*, le leur (*f.* la leur).
theme, *n.*, thème *m.*
then, *adv.*, alors, ensuite, puis.
then, *conj.*, donc.
there, *adv.*, y, là; **from —,** en; — **is (or are)** (*states a fact but does not point out*) il y a; — **is (or are)** (*points out*) voilà; **over —,** là-bas.
there, *pron. adv.*, y.
therefore, *conj.*, donc.
these, *dem. adj. pl.*, ces.
these, *dem. pron.*, ce, ceux(-ci), celles(-ci).
they, *dem. pron.*, ce, ceux, celles.
they, *pers. pron.*, ils, elles, eux.
thine, *poss. pron.*, le tien (*f.* la tienne).
thing, *n.*, chose, *f.*, affaire *f.*
think, *v.*, croire, penser; — **of,** penser à.
third, *adj.*, troisième.
thirsty; be —, avoir soif.
thirteen, *adj.*, treize.
thirty, *adj.*, trente.
this, *dem. adj.*, ce (*before vowels* cet, *f.* cette).
this, *dem. pron.*, ce, ceci, celui, celle; — **one,** celui-ci, celle-ci; — **one,** celui (*f.* celle).
those, *dem. adj. pl.*, ces.
those, *dem. pron.*, ce, ceux(-là), celles(-là).
thousand, *adj.*, mil, mille; **one —,** mil, mille.
thread, *n.*, fil *m.*
thread, *v.*, enfiler.
three, *adj.*, trois.
throne, *n.*, trône *m.*
through, *prep.*, par.
throw, *v.*, jeter.
Thursday, *n.*, jeudi *m.*
thus, *adv.*, ainsi.
thy, *poss. adj.*, ton (*f.* ta, *pl.* tes).
ticket, *n.*, billet *m.*; **one way —,** aller seulement; **round trip —,** aller et retour; **to buy a —,** prendre un billet.
ticket-window, *m.*, guichet *m.*
tie, *n.*, cravate *f.*
time, heure *f.*, (*duration*) temps *m.*, (*recurrence*) fois *f.*; **from — to —,** de temps en temps; **in —,** à temps; **before —,** en avance; **on —,** à l'heure; **in our —,** de nos jours; **gain —** (*of timepieces*) avancer; **have a good —,** s'amuser; **lose —** (*of timepieces*) retarder.
tip, *n.*, pourboire *m.*
tired, *adj.*, fatigué.
tiring, *adj.*, fatigant.
to, *prep.*, à, en, envers.
toast, *n.*, pain grillé *m.*
tobacco, *n.*, tabac *m.*
today, *adv.*, aujourd'hui.
toilet, *n.*, toilette *f.*
tomorrow, *adv.*, demain.
too, *adv.*, aussi; — **many,** trop; — **much,** trop.
Touraine, *n.*, Touraine *f.*, **person from —,** Tourangeau (*f.* Tourangelle).
tourist, *n.*, touriste *m.*
toward, *prep.*, envers.
towards, *prep.*, vers.
towel, *n.*, serviette *f.*

town, *n.*, ville *f.;* **in (down) —,** en ville.
train, *n.*, train *m.*
translate, *v.*, traduire.
transportation, transport *m.*
travel, *v.*, voyager.
traveler, *n.*, voyageur *m.*
traverse, *v.*, parcourir.
tree, *n.*, arbre *m.*
trip, *n.*, voyage *m.*
trouble, *n.*, peine *f.;* **be worth the —,** être (valoir) la peine.
trousers, *n.*, pantalon *m.*
true, *adj.*, vrai.
truly, *adv.*, vraiment.
trunk, *n.*, malle *f.;* **pack a —,** faire une malle.
try, *v.*, essayer, tâcher; **— on,** essayer.
Tuesday, *n.*, mardi *m.*
turf, *n.*, gazon *m.*
turn, *n.*, tour *m.*
turn, *v.*, tourner.
tuxedo, *n.*, smoking *m.*
twelve, *adj.*, douze.
twenty, *adj.*, vingt; **about —,** une vingtaine.
two, *adj.*, deux.
typewriter, *n.*, machine à écrire *f.*

U

ugly, *adj.*, vilain.
uncle, *n.*, oncle *m.*
under, *prep.*, sous.
underground, *adj.*, souterrain.
understand, *v.*, comprendre.
undertake, *v.*, entreprendre.
unfortunate, *adj.*, malheureux (*f.* malheureuse).
unfortunately, *adv.*, malheureusement.
unhappily, *adv.*, malheureusement.
unhappy, *adj.*, malheureux (*f.* malheureuse).
United States, *n.*, États-Unis *m. pl.*
university, *n.*, université *f.*
unless, *conj.*, à moins que.
until, *conj.*, jusqu'à ce que; **— now,** jusqu'ici; *prep.*, jusqu'à.
up, *adv.*, haut, en haut; **— to,** jusqu'à; **— to here,** jusqu'ici.
upon, *adv.*, sur, en + *pres. part.*
upright, *adj.*, droit.
urge, *v.*, engager.
usage, *n.*, usage *m.*
use, *n.*, usage *m.;* **make — of,** se servir de.
usual, *adj.;* **as —,** comme d'habitude.
usually, *adv.*, généralement, comme d'habitude.

V

vacation, *n.*, vacances *f. pl.*
vain; to do anything in —, avoir beau + *inf.*
valley, *n.*, vallon *m.*
valise, *n.*, valise *f.*
various, *adj.*, différent.
vary, *v.*, varier.
veal, *n.*, veau *m.*
vegetable, *n.*, légume *m.*
verb, *n.*, verbe *m.*
verdant, *adj.*, verdoyant.
very, *adv.*, très; **— much,** beaucoup.
vest, *n.*, gilet *m.*
victory, *n.*, victoire *f.*
village, *n.*, village *m.*
vine, *n.*, vigne *f.*
visit, *n.*, visite *f.;* **pay a —,** rendre (faire) visite.
visit, *v.* faire une visite.
voice, *n.*, voix *f.*

W

wait (for), *v.*, attendre.
waiter, *n.*, garçon *m.*
waitress, *n.*, bonne *f.*

wake, *v.;* — **up,** (se) réveiller.
walk, *n.*, promenade *f.;* **take a —,** faire une promenade, se promener.
walk, *v.*, se promener.
wall, *n.*, mur *m.*
want, *v.*, vouloir; **just what I —,** mon affaire.
war, *n.*, guerre *f.*
warm, *adj.;* **be —,** (*of persons*) avoir chaud; (*of the weather*) faire chaud.
wash, *v.*, laver; — **oneself,** se laver.
watch, *n.*, montre *f.*
watch over, *v.*, surveiller.
water, *n.*, eau *f.*
way, *n.*, chemin *m.*, façon *f.*, manière *f.;* **in this —,** de cette façon (manière); **on the —,** en route; **on the — to,** en route pour; **that —,** par là; **this —,** par ci; **one — (ticket),** aller seulement; **by the —,** à propos.
wear, *v.*, porter.
weary, *v.*, ennuyer.
weary, *adj.*, fatigué, ennuyé.
weather, *n.*, temps *m.*
wed, *v.*, se marier avec, épouser.
wedding, *n.*, mariage *m.;* — **present,** cadeau de noces.
wedding trip; to take a —, faire un voyage de noces.
Wednesday, *n.*, mercredi *m.*
week, *n.*, semaine.
weigh, *v.*, peser.
well, *adv.*, bien; **fairly —,** tant bien que mal, comme ci comme ça.
well! *interj.*, tiens!
well-bred, *adj.*, honnête, bien élevé.
what, *int. adj.*, quel (*f.* quelle).
what, *int. pron.*, que, qui, qu'est-ce qui, qu'est-ce que, quoi (*used particularly after prepositions*).
what, *rel. pron.*, ce qui, ce que, quoi.
whatever, *comp. rel. pron.*, ce que, quoi que (ce soit), quelque . . . que; — **the case may be,** quoi qu'il en soit.
when, *adv.*, quand.
when, *conj.*, lorsque, quand.
whenever, *conj.*, quand.
where, *adv.*, où.
whether, *conj.*, si.
which, *int. adj.*, quel (*f.* quelle).
which, *rel. pron.*, lequel (*f.* laquelle, *pl. m.* lesquels, *pl. f.* lesquelles), qui, que; **at (in, to** etc.) —, où; **of —,** dont; **that —,** ce qui, ce que.
which, *int. pron.*, lequel (*f.* laquelle, *pl. m.*, lesquels, *pl. f.* lesquelles).
while, *n.*, temps *m.;* **be worth —,** être (valoir) la peine.
while, *conj.*, pendant que, en + *pres. part.*
white, *adj.*, blanc (*f.*, blanche).
who, *rel. pron.*, qui, lequel (*f.* laquelle, *pl. m.* lesquels, *pl. f.* lesquelles).
who, *int. pron.*, qui, lequel (*f.* laquelle, *pl. m.* lesquels, *pl. f.* lesquelles).
whoever, *rel. pron.*, qui que (ce soit).
whoever, *indef. pron.*, quiconque.
whole, *adj.*, tout (*f.* toute, *pl. m.* tous, *pl. f.* toutes), entier (*f.* entière); **the — class,** toute la classe.
wholly, *adv.*, tout, tout à fait.
whom, *int. pron.*, qui.
whom, *rel. pron.*, que, lequel (*f.* laquelle, *pl. m.* lesquels, *pl. f.* lesquelles); **of —,** dont.
whomsoever, *indef. pron.*, quiconque.
whose, *rel. pron.*, dont.

whose, *int. pron.*, à (de) qui.
whosoever, *indef. pron.*, quiconque.
why, *conj.*, pourquoi.
wife, femme *f.*
will, *v.*, vouloir.
willingly, *adv.*, volontiers.
win, *v.*, gagner.
wind, *v.*, remonter.
window, *n.*, fenêtre *f.*; **ticket- —,** guichet *m.*
window-shade, *n.*, store *m.*
windy; be —, faire du vent.
wine, *n.*, vin *m.*
winter, *n.*, hiver *m.*
wire, *n.*, fil *m.*
wise, *adj.*, sage.
wish, *v.*, désirer, vouloir.
with, *prep.*, avec, chez; — **pleasure,** volontiers.
within, *adv.*, là-dedans.
without, *conj.*, sans que.
without, *prep.*, sans.
woman, *n.*, femme *f.*
wood, *n.*, bois *m.*; **in the —s,** dans les bois; **to the —s,** aux bois.
wool, *n.*, laine *f.*
word, *n.*, parole *f.*, mot *m.*
work, *n.*, travail *m.*
work, *v.*, travailler.
worse, *adj.*, pire.
worse, *adv.*, pis.
worst, *adj.*, le pire.
worst, *adv.*, le pis.
worth; be — while, être (valoir) la peine.
wretchedness, *n.*, misère *f.*
write, *v.*, écrire.
wrong, *n.*, tort *m.*; **be —,** avoir tort.

Y

yard, *n.*, cour *f.*
year, *n.*, an *m.*, année *f.*
yes, *adv.*, oui, si (*always used in reply to negative questions*).
yesterday, *adv.*, hier (*preceding elision and liasion optional*).
yet, *adv.*, encore.
yield, *v.*, céder.
yonder, *adv.*, là-bas.
you, *pers. pron.*, vous, tu, te, toi; **to —,** vous, te, toi.
young, *adj.*, jeune; — **lady** demoiselle.
younger, *adj.*, cadet (*f.* cadette).
your, *poss. adj.*, ton (*f.* ta, *pl.* tes), votre (*pl.* vos).
yours, *poss. pron.*, le tien (*f.* la tienne), le vôtre (*f.* la vôtre).

INDEX

References are to Paragraphs

A

à, with indirect object, 39.
  contracts with def. art., 40.
  before inf., 117, 162, 217.
  with countries, 189.
  with cities, 190.
  inf. + **à,** 214, 217, 219, 466, 467.
  obéir à, etc., 347.
  with trans. verbs, 347.
accent, acute, grave, circumflex, 2.
  tonic, 17.
address, pronoun of, 44.
adjectival phrases, 102, 308.
adjectives, gender, 72, 73.
  number, 74.
  agreement, 75.
  position, 76.
  of nationality, 76 note.
  demonstrative, 96.
    with **-ci, -là,** 97.
  comparison, 111, 113.
  possessive, 92.
  superlative of, 112.
  à + inf., 117.
  de + inf., 123.
  indef. rel., 340.
  interrogative, 295, 296.
adverbial clauses with subjunctive, 248, 324.
adverbs, formation of, 120.
  of quantity, 79.
  comparison of, 121, 122.
  superlative of, 121, 122.
  pronominal, 166, 167.
  indef. rel., 341.
age, expressed XIV, Idioms.
agent, after passive, 160.
aller, pres., 82.
  imptv., 83.
  impf., 132.
  fut., 174.
  cond., 238.
  pres. subj., 259.
  synopsis, 398.
alphabet, 1.
'any', 78, 84.
après, governing perfect inf., 164.
articles, see definite, indefinite.
aussi, in comparisons, 111.
  replaced by **si,** 115.
aussitôt que with future, 173, 298.
autre, l'un l'autre, 150.
auxiliary, **avoir** as, 60, 137, 138, 141.
  être as, 137, 139, 140, 147.
avoir, pres., 58.
  imptv., 58.
  impf., 131.
  fut., 171.
  cond., 237.
  pres. subj., 247.
  past def., 228.
  impf. subj., 334.
  idioms with, 99.
  as aux., 60, 137, 138, 141.
  agreement of pp. after, 141, 148.
  il y a with pres., 298.
  il y a and **voilà,** 59.
  synopsis, 389.

B

beaucoup, as adv. of quantity, 79.
  comparison of, 122.
bien, as adv. of quantity, 79.
  comparison of, 122.

bien que, 248, 324.
bon, comparison of, 113.

C

capitals, use, 32.
cardinal numbers, see numerals.
ce (dem. pron.), 208, 210.
ce and **il** as subj. of **être,** 123, 231.
ceci, 211.
ce dont, 269.
cela, 211.
celui, etc., 212.
ce que, 269.
ce qui, 269.
cedilla, use, 2.
added to verb forms, 254.
cent, 276.
c'est and **il est,** 123, 231.
chacun, see indef. pron.
changes, orthographic, in verbs, see orthographic changes.
ci added to noun, 97.
cities, 190.
class-room expressions, 35.
comme with fut., 173.
comparison, see adjective or adverb.
conditional, 240–242.
cond. tense, see tense.
conjugation of verbs, see verbs.
conjunctive pronouns, see pronouns.
connaître, pres., 179.
impf., 180.
imptv., 181.
fut., 178.
cond., 238.
synopsis, 309.
consonants, phonetic symbols, 6, 35.
pronunciation of final, 13–15, 70.
silent, 9–15.
convenir, 204.
countries, 186–189.

D

dans with countries, 189.
dans and **en,** 307.
dates, 279–281.
day, time of, 206.
days of the week, 90.
de, in possessive, 47.
contractions with, 48.
with partitive, 78.
with infinitive, 99, 123, 162, 350.
inf. with **de,** 214, 216, 219, 465, 467.
in adjectival phrases, 102, 308.
for **que** meaning 'than,' 116.
rien, quelque chose de, 158, 313.
venir de, 205, 219.
with trans. verbs, 346.
agent of passive, 160.
definite article, forms, 36.
repeated, 36.
contractions with **à,** 40.
contractions with **de,** 48.
with partitive, 78.
with adverbs of quantity, 79.
with general noun, 80.
with meals, 85.
with superlative of adj., 112.
with cities, see cities.
with countries, see countries.
with days of week, 90.
demi, 206, 288.
demonstrative adjective, see adjective.
demonstrative pronoun, see pronoun.
depuis, with present, 71, 298.
— **quand,** 71.
with imperfect, 298.
meaning 'for,' 306.
devenir, 204.
devoir, 299, 302, 303.
dire, pres., 183.
impf., 184.
imptv., 185.

fut., 182.
cond., 238.
pres. subj., 282.
de, 182.
disjunctive pronoun, see pronoun.
donner, pres., 42.
imptv., 43.
impf., 127.
fut., 168.
cond., 233.
past def., 224.
pres. subj., 243.
impf. subj., 330.
synopsis, 251.
dont, 267.
dormir, 325.

E

e, inserted after **g** in verb forms, 255.
e and **é,** change to **è** in verb forms, 262–263.
écrire, pres., 192.
impf., 193.
imptv., 194.
fut., 191.
cond., 238.
synopsis, 432.
elision, 30.
en, partitive, 84.
pp. agreeing with, 149.
+ pres. part., 163.
pron. adv., 166.
with countries, 189.
en and **dans,** 307.
est-ce-que, 45, 66, 67.
être, pres., 64.
imptv., 65.
impf., 130.
fut., 172.
cond., 236.
past. def., 227.
pres. subj., 246.
impf. subj., 333.
as aux., 137, 139, 140, 147.
agreement of pp. after, 140, 148.
ce and **il** as subject of, 123, 231.
synopsis, 390.
expressions of time, 206.

F

faire, pres., 94.
imptv., 95.
impf., 132.
fut., 174.
cond., 238.
pres. subj., 260.
idioms with, 99.
+ inf., 272, 273, 342–344.
falloir, pres., impf., fut., past indef., 207.
+ subj., 248, 250, 317, 338.
finir, pres., 50.
imptv., 51.
impf., 128.
fut., 169.
past def., 225.
cond., 234.
pres. subj., 244.
impf. subj., 331.
synopsis, 251.
'for,' 306.
fractions, 287.
future, see tense.

H

h, aspirate and mute, 7.
liason, 21.

I

i, replacing **y** in verb forms, 256, 257.
il, impersonal, 123, 231.
with time of day, 206.
ce and **il** as subject of **être,** 123, 231.
il y a, with pres., 298.
and **voilà,** 59.

imperfect, see tense.
impersonal **il**, see **il**.
' in,' omitted, 86.
after superlative, 114.
en and **dans**, 307.
with countries, see countries.
with cities, see cities.
with months, see months.
indefinite article, forms, 46.
omitted with **cent** or **mille**, 277.
with **million** and **millard**, 277.
indefinite pronoun, see pronoun.
infinitive, **à** + infinitive, 117, 162.
après + perf. inf., 164.
sans, par, pour + inf., 162.
de + inf., 99, 123, 162.
pure inf., 215, 464, 467.
inf., with prepositions, 214, 216–219, 465, 466.
faire with, 272, 273, 342–344.
for subjunctive, 249, 250, 338.
position of pronouns with, 165.
interrogation, with verbs, 45, 66–68.
interrogative adjective, see adjective.
interrogative pron., see pronoun.
intransitive verbs, see verbs.

L

l, doubled in verb forms, 262.
là added to noun, 97.
là (adv.), 103.
le, invar. pron., 146.
lequel, etc., see relative and interrogative pronouns.
liason, 18–29.
linking, 18–29.
lire, pres., 196.
impf., 197.
imptv., 198.
fut., 195.
cond., 238.
synopsis, 435.
lorsque, with fut., 173, 298.

M

mal, comparison, 122.
mauvais, comparison, 113.
même, with pronouns, 176.
mettre, synopsis, 314.
se mettre à, 314.
mil, 279.
millard, 277.
mille, 277.
million, 277.
moi, becoming **m'**, 165
moins, in comparisons, 111.
with time of day, 206.
moitié, 289.
months, 101.

N

ne, 52, 151.
omitted, 157.
position in compound tense, 62.
with inf., 154.
redundant, 320.
negative, 52, 151.
with compound tenses, 62.
position of, 152–156, 165.
omission of **ne**, 157.
n'est-ce-pas, 68.
nouns, gender, 37.
number, 38, 104–107.
partitive sense, see partitive.
general sense, 80.
proper, plural of, 107.
numbers, see numerals.
numerals, cardinal, 56, 69, 98, 100, 199, 274–276.
use, 278.
with partitive, 84.
indef. art., with, 277.
ordinals, 285, 286.
collective, 290.

O

obéir, 347.
'on,' omitted with days of the week, 90.

on, for passive, 161.
indef. pron., 312.
ordinal numbers, see numerals.
orthographic signs, 2.
orthographic changes in verbs, 254–257, 262, 263.
où, 268.

P

par, agent of passive, 160.
+ inf., 162.
inf. + **par,** 218.
partitive, 77, 78, 83.
pas, 52, 151.
passive voice, 159–161.
past definite, see tense.
past indefinite, see tense.
past part., regular verbs, 61.
agreement of, 140, 141, 148.
with **en,** 149.
pendant, 306.
penser à, de, 271.
perfect cond., see tense.
personal pronouns, see pronouns.
petit, comparison of, 113.
peu, comparison of, 122.
as adverb of quantity, 79.
phonetic symbols, 3–6, 33, 34.
plaire, 347.
redundant **ne,** 320.
pleuvoir, pres., impf., fut., past. indef., 213.
cond., 238.
plupart, 79.
pluperfect, see tense.
plus, in comparisons, 111.
possessive adj., see adjective.
possessive pron., see pronoun.
pour, 'for,' 306.
+ inf., 162.
pouvoir, pres., 119.
impf., 132.
fut., 174.
cond., 238.
pres. subj., 261.
idiomatic uses, 304.
synopsis, 300.
prendre, synopsis, 315.
s'en prendre à, 315.
s'y prendre, 315.
prepositions, with certain verbs, 214–219, 346, 347.
prepositions, with inf., 159, 214–219.
après with perf. inf., 164.
depuis, 71, 298, 306.
pendant, 306.
pour, 306.
en, 163, 189, 307.
dans, 189, 307.
present part., **en** with, 163.
present subj., see subjunctive.
present tense, see tense.
principal parts, 251–253.
pronominal adverbs, 166, 167.
pronouns, of address, 44.
conjunctive personal, 142–145, 165, 177.
disjunctive personal, 175, 176, 222.
demon., 208–12.
position of, 144, 145, 165.
posses., 220–23.
rel., 264–270.
compound rel., 210, 269, 270.
interr., 291–294.
indef., 312, 313.
invariable **le,** 146.
indef. rel. pron., 339–341.
provinces, 'to, 'in' with, 189.
punctuation, 31.

Q

quand, with future, 173, 298.
quatre-vingt, 276.
que, 'than,' in comparisons, 111.
ne . . . que, 151, 156.
as conj., not omitted, lesson IV.
as rel. pron., not omitted, lesson VI.
+ **de** + inf., 158.

que, see pronoun, relative.
quelque chose, 312, 313.
— **de** + adj., 158, 313.
quelques-unes, 312.
quelques-uns, 312.
quelqu'un, 312.
quelqu'une, 312.
qu'est-ce-que c'est que, 293.
question, to form a, 45, 66–68.
qui, see pronoun, relative.
quiconque, 312, 313.

R

reciprocal use of verbs, see reflexive verbs.
redundant **ne,** 320.
reflexive verbs, 147.
agreement of past participle of, 148.
used reciprocally, 150.
as substitute for passive, 161.
relative pronoun, see pronoun.
revenir, 204.
rien, 151.
rien + **de** + adj., 158, 313.

S

sans, with inf., 162.
savoir, pres., 125.
imptv., 126.
impf., 132.
fut., 174.
cond., 238.
pres. subj., 284.
uses of, 305.
synopsis of, 301.
se, for passive, 161.
seasons, 91.
sequence of tenses, in subjunctive, 321, 322.
— in conditions, 240–242.
si, replacing **aussi,** 115.
' if ' and ' whether,' 173.
in conditions, 240–42.
' some,' 78, 84.
souvenir, se —, 204.
subjunctive, pres., 243–250, 258.
impf., 330–337.
formation of, 336.
avoidance of, 337.
in independent clauses, 248, 316.
in dependent clauses, 248, 316.
in noun clauses, 317–319.
with impersonal verbs, 318.
with ' doubt,' 248, 319.
with ' will,' 248, 319.
with ' emotion,' 248, 319.
redundant **ne,** with, 320.
replaced by indicative with **de ce que** 319.
in adjectival clauses, 323.
in adverbial clauses, 248, 324.
replaced by inf., 249, 250, 338.
sequence of tenses, 321, 322.
synopsis of regular verbs, 251.

T

tenir, synopsis of, 310.
à, 310.
tenses, pres., with **depuis,** 71, 298.
with **si,** 240–242.
pres. subj., 243–250, 258.
impf. indic., 127–135.
with **depuis,** 298.
formation, 132.
use, 133–35.
of verbs denoting mental act, 135.
compared with past indef., 134.
impf. subj., 330–337.
past. def., 224–230.
future, 168–173, 298.
cond., 232–242.
past indef., 60, 134, 297.
pluperf., 136, 297.
future perf., 297, 298.
cond. perf., 297.
compound, 297.
negative with, 62.

idiomatic tense uses, 298.
sequence in subj., 321, 322.
'than' after a comparison, 111, 116.
'than to' + inf', 158.
time of day, 206.
toi, becoming **t',** 165.
tout, idioms with, see Idioms, Lesson XIV.
transitive verbs, auxiliary, 138.
agreement of past part. with, 148.
tu, pron. of address, 44.

U

l'un, l'autre, 150.

V

vendre, pres., 54.
imptv., 55.
impf., 129.
fut., 170.
past def., 226.
cond., 235.
pres. subj., 245.
impf. subj., 332.
synopsis, 251.
venir, pres., 201.
impf., 202.
imptv., 203.
fut., 200.
cond., 238.
synopsis, 310.
— **de,** 205, 219, 311.
— **à,** 219, 311.
verbs, interrogative form, 45.
in **–er,** 45.
in **–cer,** 394.
in **–ger,** 395.
in **–yer,** 396.
change of stem vowels, 397.
regular verbs, see **donner, finir, vendre.**
aux. verbs, see **avoir** and **être.**
irregular verbs, see table of.
indicating mental act, 135.
orthographic changes in, 254–257, 262, 263.
past participle agreement, see past part.
reciprocal, 150.
reflexive verbs, 139, 147.
transitive verbs, 138, 147.
object of, 345–350.
intransitive verbs, 138–141.
synopsis of regular, 251.
principal parts of regular, 252, 253.
prepositions with, 214–219, 465, 466.
list of irregular, 463.
voilà, 59.
with present tense, 298.
voir, pres., 109.
imptv., 110.
impf., 132.
fut., 174.
cond., 238.
pres. subj., 283.
synopsis, 461.
vouloir, pres., 88.
imptv., 89.
impf., 132.
fut., 174.
cond., 238.
synopsis of, 462.
vous, pronoun of address, 44.

W

'when,' with future, 173, 298.
'whenever,' with present, 298.
'whose,' 267, 294.
word order of pronouns, see pronouns, personal.

Y

y, 103, 167.